

HANDBOUND
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation



W. H. Nash.

470

76

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

A NEW FRENCH GRAMMAR—SYNTAX.

RIVINGTONS: LONDON

FRENCH GRAMMAR

ACCIDENCE

2aF.Gr.
P3917ne

A NEW FRENCH GRAMMAR :

ACCIDENCE

AND

ESSENTIALS OF SYNTAX

BY

EUGÈNE PELLISSIER, M.A., B.Sc., LL.B.
(UNIV. GALLIC.)

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE
AND LECTURER AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, BRISTOL

PRESENTATION COPY
FROM THE PUBLISHERS
Published Price
3/6

5107 2
7/9/1

RIVINGTONS
WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

MDCCCLXXXVIII



P R E F A C E

THIS volume contains, combined with the *Accidence*, a selection—from the *Syntax* I have just published for the use of advanced students—of all the rules which seemed to be required for the Lower and Middle Forms of Schools.

Here, as in the *Syntax*, I have spared no trouble to be as complete as possible, and feel confident that many useful details will be found in the following pages, which would be looked for in vain in other works of the same kind. I would, amongst other points, call special attention to the list of nouns having both genders (§§ 45-57), the formation of the feminine of nouns (§§ 59-68), the plural of nouns of foreign origin (§§ 79-81), of compound nouns (§§ 84-90), and of adjectives in *-al* (§ 110), the observations on the personal inflections of verbs (§§ 237-242), the lists of intransitive verbs conjugated with *être*, and with *avoir* or *être* (§§ 259-262), the lists of verbs in *-eler* and *-eter* which do not double the *l* or *t* before a mute termination (§ 286), the notes on the principal parts of irregular verbs (§§ 303-307), the long and important list of adverbial locutions (§ 504), and that of prepositive locutions ending with *de* (§ 510).

A glance at the book will show that the typographical arrangements have been designed so as to ensure the greatest

possible clearness. With the same view, divisions and subdivisions have been freely used in classifying the various subjects, models have been given in full of the negative, interrogative, and negative-interrogative conjugations, and of all the parts of the verbs of the first conjugation which offer any peculiarity, and the English of each tense and person accompanies all the verbs conjugated.

As regards irregular verbs, in some Grammars they are grouped according to their chief irregularities, in others simply given in alphabetical order. I have tried to combine the advantages of both plans by first pointing out the deviations of anomalous verbs from the rules of tense-formation and personal inflections (§§ 232-242), and the peculiarities of the primitive tenses themselves (§§ 303-307), and afterwards placing the verbs of each conjugation alphabetically, so as to facilitate references.

Finally—an important point, especially for students preparing for public examinations—the derivations of all parts of speech have been given throughout the book, and most irregularities in the formation of the feminine and plural of nouns and adjectives, etc., explained on philological grounds.

I have to thank for their kind help two of my colleagues, Mr. R. T. Carter, who looked over most of the MS. with me, and M. C. Bévenot, who assisted me in correcting part of the proof-sheets.

A comprehensive book of *Exercises* is in the press, and will shortly be published, both separately and bound together with the *Accidence*.

E. P.

INTRODUCTION

THE language spoken by the earliest inhabitants of Gaul was the Celtic;¹ but after the conquest of the country by Caesar the conquered race gradually adopted the language of the conquerors, who were far superior in civilisation, and only a few words of the vernacular idiom survived, after having for the most part assumed a Latin form.²

Now there were two sorts of Latin—literary or classical Latin, spoken by the higher classes, and vulgar Latin (*sermo plebeius, rusticus, castrensis*), in use among the common people, husbandmen, and soldiers. Both were introduced into Gaul and spread simultaneously; but, in the latter part of the fifth century, the former disappeared as a spoken language in the wreck of the Roman Empire, whilst the latter not only continued to be used by the Gallo-Romans, but imposed itself upon the Teutonic tribes which had taken possession of their land. The small number of the invaders, the diversity of their idioms, the inferiority of their civilisation, their conversion to Christianity, sufficiently account for this fact. Their own language, however, could not vanish without leaving some trace behind it. Its influence made itself felt in two ways. In the first place, a certain number of Teutonic words, about five hundred, chiefly

¹ From it comes the idiom still used to-day by the natives of Lower Brittany.

² Such are **balai** (=broom), **bruyère** (=heath), **cruche** (pitcher), **harnais** (=harness), **pinson** (=chaffinch), **quai** (=quay), **ruche** (=hive).

relating to war and hunting, were introduced, after having, like the Celtic terms already adopted, assumed a Latin form.¹ In the second place, the bad pronounciation of the Barbarians, and their ignorance of grammar, contributed to hasten the decay of vulgar Latin, and to transform it, towards the ninth century, into a new language, the "*lingua romana*" or "*langue romane*."

This Romance language, the earliest monuments of which are the "gloses de Reichenau"² and the "serments de Strasbourg,"³ after undergoing a series of slow modifications, developed, towards the eleventh century, into two idioms—the *Langue d'oïl* (L. hoc illud) to the north of the Loire, and the *Langue d'oc* (L. hoc)⁴ to the south. Each of these formed four principal dialects: the *Langue d'oïl* gave birth to the *Norman*, the *Picard*, the *Burgundian*, and the dialect of *Ile-de-France*; the *Langue d'oc* to the *Limousin*, the *Gascon*, the *Languedocian*, and the *Provençal*. As the Dukes of France gradually extended their rule and conquered the provinces in which the first three dialects of the *Langue d'oïl* were spoken, these dialects disappeared,⁵ or at any rate, being henceforth used by the common people only, became mere *patois*, and the dialect of *Ile-de-France* was adopted as the language of the upper classes throughout the whole of the North. In the South, the *Langue d'oc*, favoured by the higher

¹ Such are *bande* (=band), *blessier* (=to wound), *brandir* (=to brandish), *briser* (=to break), *éperon* (=spur), *épier* (=to spy), *étrier* (=stirrup), *fief* (=fief), *flèche* (=arrow), *frapper* (=to strike), *garenne* (=warren), *hardi* (=bold), *hérald* (=herald), *maréchal* (=marshal), *meurtre* (=murder), *rang* (=rank), *saisir* (=to seize), *trêve* (=truce), *vacarme* (=uproar).

² A sort of translation of the Latin Bible, in which the Romance equivalents of the Latin words are given opposite (768).

³ The oaths taken by Louis the German and the soldiers of Charles the Bald, when the two brothers allied themselves against the Emperor Lothaire (842).

⁴ They were so called from the various ways of pronouncing the adverb of affirmation (in modern French *oui*, *yes*).

⁵ A few words only may be traced to them, as *attaquer* (=to attack), *caisse* (=box), *carte* (=card).

civilisation of the Southern race, soon produced a brilliant literature, but the terrible war against the Albigenses, in which the Southerners were utterly crushed, brought about in 1271 the annexation of Languedoc to the dominions of the King of France, and, as a natural consequence, the adoption by the conquered country of the idiom of the victors. The Langue d'oc soon degenerated into the Provençal *patois*; and thus it came to pass that, in the fourteenth century, the dialect of *Ile-de-France* prevailed in all the French territory.

The new language, which had little by little replaced the Latin from which it had sprung, differed from it both in its vocabulary and in its analytical character.

Bad pronunciation had altered the form of the Latin words; but the alterations, far from being capricious, had been subject to unconscious but fixed laws, and the vocabulary had thus been regularly and uniformly transformed. The great principle which presided over this transformation was the persistence of the tonic accent on the same syllable as in Latin.¹ From this principle the following phonetic laws may be derived:—

(1) The unaccented vowel in the syllable immediately preceding the accented syllable of a Latin word generally disappeared when short:

Lat. <i>cumŭlāre</i>	Fr. <i>combler</i>	<i>to overwhelm,</i>
Lat. <i>navigāre</i>	Fr. <i>nager</i>	<i>to swim,</i>

but remained when long:

Lat. <i>perēgrīnum</i> ,	Fr. <i>pèlerin</i> ,	<i>pilgrim.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------	-----------------

(2) The unaccented vowel in the syllable not immediately

¹ In Latin, the tonic accent was either on the penultimate when long, or, when short, on the antepenultimate; in French it is on the last syllable when the termination is masculine, and on the penultimate when it is feminine: *prudént*, *prudénce*, *prudemmént*.

preceding the accented syllable generally remained, whether long or short :

Lat. <i>liberáre</i>	Fr. <i>livrer</i>	<i>to give up.</i>
Lat. <i>bonitátém</i>	Fr. <i>bonté</i>	<i>goodness.</i>

(3) The unaccented vowel following the accented syllable disappeared when it was in the penultimate :

Lat. <i>oráculum</i>	Fr. <i>oracle</i>	<i>oracle,</i>
----------------------	-------------------	----------------

and disappeared, or was changed into *e mute*, when it was in the last syllable :

Lat. <i>tempus</i>	Fr. <i>temps</i>	<i>time.</i>
Lat. <i>templum</i>	Fr. <i>temple</i>	<i>temple.</i>

(4) The consonant placed between two vowels was very often dropped :

Lat. <i>ligare</i>	Fr. <i>lier</i>	<i>to tie.</i>
Lat. <i>nativum</i>	Fr. <i>naïf</i>	<i>naïve.</i> ¹

As for the analytical tendency of the new language, it chiefly manifested itself in the gradual disappearance of the declensions and cases.² The five Latin declensions were at first preserved, but as early as the fifth century the six cases were reduced to two—the nominative and accusative. Between the ninth and the twelfth centuries the last two declensions were given up, and between the twelfth and the fourteenth the remaining three were reduced to one, the second, which was the most often used. Finally, the distinction between the two cases was abolished, and nouns had only one form, almost always the form of the accusative, as it was at the same time

¹ The permutation of letters was likewise determined in most cases by fixed rules, one of the most important being that the change—for consonants—took place between consonants of the same class, and that the Latin consonants, when changed, were generally softened in the French words, *c* into *ç*, *t* into *d*, etc.

² Though there are no cases in modern French, the terms *nominative*, *genitive*, etc., have been preserved in the *Accidence* for the sake of convenience.

the most frequently employed and the most sonorous. This adoption of the accusative as the type of French words had a curious consequence : the accusative ending with an *s* in the plural, but not in the singular, the *s* became the mark of the plural—

Lat. <i>digitum</i>	Fr. <i>doigt</i>	<i>finger.</i>
Lat. <i>digitos</i>	Fr. <i>doigts</i>	<i>fingers.</i>

The disappearance of the cases had another and very important result. The relation of nouns could no longer be expressed by their form, as in Latin, since they had but one, but had to be shown by their position in the sentence and by prepositions.

The same analytical tendency produced the formation of the degrees of comparison of adjectives and adverbs by means of the adverb *plus*, that of the compound tenses and the whole of the passive voice by means of auxiliaries, and that of the future and conditional present by affixing to the infinitive the endings of the present and imperfect indicative of *avoir*.

All these changes were accomplished by the beginning of the fifteenth century, and from that time the French language, whatever subsequent alterations it received, may be said to date.

So far its vocabulary was chiefly composed of words derived from popular Latin, with a score borrowed from the Celtic, and a few hundreds imported by the Teutonic tribes and the Normans, to which must be added a small number coming from the various provincial dialects and the *Langue d'oc*,¹ or taken from the Arabic language between the twelfth and fourteenth centuries.²

¹ Such are *ballade* (= *ballad*), *cap* (*cape*), *corsaire* (= *pirate*), *croisade* (= *crusade*), *fat* (= *fop*).

² This importation of Arabic words—*alcool* (= *alcohol*), *alambic* (= *alembic*), *algèbre* (= *algebra*), *sirop* (= *syrup*), *zénith* (= *zenith*), etc.—was chiefly due to the Crusades and the great attainments of the Arabs in alchemy, mathematics, and astronomy. Other Arabic terms have been introduced since by travellers at various times.

But this stock has been, and is still, constantly increasing. Not only new words have been formed from the old ones by composition and derivation, but a great many have been introduced from external sources. These may be divided into three classes according to their origin.

The first class is made up of Latin and Greek terms coined by the *savants*. Their importation began as early as the eleventh century, was especially active in the sixteenth, and slackened considerably in the seventeenth and eighteenth, to receive a fresh impulse in our own times from the progress of science and industry. All these terms differ greatly from those of popular origin, inasmuch as they did not undergo the process of organic formation, but were transported into French very nearly such as they were. The same Latin word thus produced not unfrequently two French words, or *doublets*, and the truncated form of those which underwent the phonetic laws above mentioned is sufficient to distinguish them at once :—

LATIN.	POPULAR WORDS.	LEARNED WORDS.
caritatem	cherté (=dearness)	charité (=charity).
liberare	livrer (=to give up)	libérer (=to liberate).
navigare	nager (=to swim)	naviguer (=to navigate).
separare	sevrer (=to wean)	séparer (=to separate).
simulare	sembler (=to seem)	simuler (=to simulate).

The second class consists of words borrowed from foreign languages—from Italian,¹ principally in the sixteenth century, owing to the expeditions into Italy and the brilliant development of arts and letters in that country ; from Spanish,² in the

¹ *Alarme* (=alarm), *arquebuse* (=arquebuse), *banqueroute* (=bankruptcy), *boussole* (=mariner's compass), *colonel* (=colonel), *escrime* (=fencing), *fantassin* (=foot-soldier), *giberne* (=cartridge-box), *paladin* (=paladin), *vedette* (=vedette), *volcan* (=volcano), etc.

² *Basané* (=swarthy), *bizarre* (=odd), *chocolat* (=chocolate), *jasmin* (=jessamine), *laquais* (=lackey), *matamore* (=bully), *récif* (=reef), *risquer* (=to risk), *soubresaut* (=jolt, shock), etc.

sixteenth and seventeenth, during and after the wars of religion; from German,¹ in the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth, as a consequence of the frequent quarrels of France and Germany; from English,² in the nineteenth especially, the English words introduced referring to parliamentary institutions, manufactories, railways, sports, etc.; lastly, at different epochs, from America, Japan, China, and other countries.³

The third class comprises words of historical origin,⁴ *i.e.* derived from proper names, a few onomatopœias,⁵ and a good many terms the origin of which has not yet been ascertained.⁶

¹ Blocus (=blockade), fifre (=fife), flamberge (=sword), lansquenet (=lansquenet), obus (=shell), renne (=rein-deer), sabre (=sabre), trinquer (=to touch glasses), valser (=to waltz), zinc (=zinc), etc.

² Bill, budget, cabine, coke, cottage, cutter, dock, festival, jockey, jury, lunch, meeting, punch, rail, speech, sport, tilbury, touriste, tunnel, turf, yacht, etc.

³ Acajou (=mahogany), brahme (=brahmin), cornac (=elephant-driver), nabab (=nabob), ouragan (=hurricane), palanquin (=palanquin), paria (=pariah), tapioca (=tapioca), tatouer (=to tattoo), thé (=tea).

⁴ Baïonnette (=bayonet), bougie (=wax-candle), dinde (=turkey), esclave (=slave), fiacre (=cab), guillotine (=guillotine), mansarde (=attic), mousseline (=muslin), robinet (=tap), silhouette (=outline), vandalisme (=vandalism), etc.

⁵ Caqueter (=to cackle), cliquetis (=clashing), craquer (=to crack), marmotter (to mutter), miauler (=to mew), etc.

⁶ Ardoise (slate), balafre (=scar), bourreau (=executioner), charivari (=hubbub), flâner (=to loiter), matelot (=sailor), surnois (=sly), trancher (to cut off), trapu (=thick-set), etc.

CONTENTS

[The numbers refer to the paragraphs.]

INTRODUCTORY.

A.—THE ALPHABET,	1-6
B.—DIVISION OF A WORD INTO SYLLABLES,	7
C.—THE TONIC ACCENT,	8
D.—ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS,	9-22
I. Accents,	10-13
II. The Apostrophe,	14-18
III. The Cedilla,	19
IV. The Diaeresis,	20
V. The Hyphen,	21
VI. The Marks of Punctuation,	22

THE ARTICLE.

INTRODUCTORY,	23-24
I. The Definite Article,	25-28
(a) Repetition of the Definite Article,	26
(b) Chief Uses of the Definite Article,	27-28
II. The Indefinite Article,	29-31
(a) The Indefinite Article replaced by the Definite,	30
(b) Omission of the Indefinite Article,	31
III. The Partitive Article,	32-33
Use and Omission of the Partitive Article,	33

THE NOUN.

A.—GENDER OF NOUNS,	34-57
I. General Rules to ascertain the Gender of Nouns,	35-37
II. Special Rules,	38-44
(a) Gender determined by the termination,	38-39

(b) Gender determined by the meaning,	40-41
(c) Gender of Compound Nouns,	42-43
Summary of Rules of Genders,	44

III. Nouns with both Genders,	45-57
---------------------------------------	-------

B.—FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF

NOUNS,	58-68
(a) General Rule,	58
(b) Special Rules and Exceptions,	59-68
[1] Nouns forming their Feminine by adding <i>-sse</i> ,	59
[2] Nouns ending in <i>-eur</i> in the Masculine,	60
[3] Nouns ending in <i>f</i> in the Masculine,	61
[4] Nouns ending in <i>x</i> in the Masculine,	62
[5] Nouns doubling the final consonant,	63
[6] Nouns shorter in the Feminine than in the Masculine,	64
[7] Various Irregularities,	65
[8] Nouns having altogether distinct forms for the Masculine and Feminine,	66
[9] Nouns which are common,	67
[10] Nouns which cannot be used in the Feminine,	68

C.—PLURAL OF NOUNS,

I. Plural of Ordinary Simple Nouns,	69-78
(a) General Rule,	69
(b) Exceptions,	70-75
[1] Nouns which remain unchanged in the plural,	70

[2] Nouns adding an x to the singular, . . .	71
[3] Nouns changing -al into -aux , . . .	72
[4] Nouns changing -ail into -aux , . . .	73
[5] Noun in -ent dropping the t before adding s , . .	74
[6] Nouns having two forms in the Plural, . . .	75
(c) Nouns only used in the Singular, . . .	76
(d) Nouns only used in the Plural, . . .	77
(e) Nouns having a different Meaning in the Singular and in the Plural, . .	78
II. Plural of Nouns of Foreign Origin, . . .	79-81
III. Plural of Proper Names, . .	82-83
IV. Plural of Compound Nouns, .	84-90
(a) Compound nouns written in one word, . . .	84
(b) Compound nouns written in two or more words, .	85-90
[1] Both components taking the sign of the plural, .	86
[2] The first component only taking the sign of the plural, . . .	87
[3] The last component only taking the sign of the plural, . . .	88
[4] The whole compound remaining invariable, . .	89
[5] Observations, . . .	90
D.—AGREEMENT OF THE NOUN, . .	91
E.—PLACE OF THE NOUN IN ITS RELATIONS TO ANOTHER NOUN, . . .	92
F.—PLACE OF THE NOUN IN ITS RELATIONS TO THE VERB, . .	93-96
(a) The Noun-Subject, . . .	93-94
(b) The Noun-Object, . . .	95-96
G.—GOVERNMENT OF THE NOUN BY A NOUN, . . .	97

THE ADJECTIVE.

A.—FORMATION OF THE FEMININE, .	98-108
(a) General Rule, . . .	98
(b) Special Rules and Exceptions, .	99-108
[1] Adjectives ending in e mute, . . .	99
[2] Adjectives ending in c , . .	100
[3] Adjectives ending in -eur , .	101
[4] Adjectives ending in f , . .	102
[5] Adjectives ending in g , . .	103
[6] Adjectives ending in x , . .	104
[7] Adjectives doubling the final consonant, . . .	105
[8] Various irregularities, . .	106
[9] Adjectives used in the Masculine only, . . .	107
[10] Adjectives unchanged in the Feminine, . . .	108
B.—FORMATION OF THE PLURAL, .	109-110
(a) General Rule, . . .	109
(b) Exceptions, . . .	110
C.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, .	111-114
D.—POSITION OF ADJECTIVES, . .	115-118
E.—COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, .	119-123
(a) Adjectives requiring à , . .	120
(b) Adjectives requiring de , . .	121
(c) Adjectives requiring en , . .	122
(d) Adjectives requiring envers , .	123
F.—COMPARATIVES, . . .	124-128
G.—SUPERLATIVES, . . .	129-132
H.—DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES, .	133-163
I. Numeral Adjectives, . . .	135-141
(a) Remarks on Cardinal Numbers, . . .	136
(b) Ways of expressing the Time of Day, Dimensions, etc., . . .	137
(c) Remarks on Ordinal Numbers, . . .	138
(d) Fractional Numerals, . . .	139
(e) Proportional Numerals, . .	140
(f) Collective Numerals, . . .	141
II. Possessive Adjectives, . . .	142-143
III. Demonstrative Adjectives, .	144-146
IV. Interrogative Adjectives, . .	147-148
V. Indefinite Adjectives, . . .	149-163
(a) Aucun, pas un , . . .	150-151
(b) Ni l'un ni l'autre , . . .	151-153
(c) Nul , . . .	151-152

(d) L'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, . . .	153
(e) Certain, . . .	154
(f) Chaque, . . .	155
(g) Maint, . . .	156
(h) Même, . . .	157
(i) Plusieurs, . . .	158
(j) Quelconque, . . .	159
(k) Quel que, quelque . . . que, . . .	160-161
(l) Tel, . . .	162
(m) Tout, . . .	163

THE PRONOUN.

A.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS, . . .	164-182
I. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, . . .	166-178
(a) Place of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns as Subjects, . . .	167-168
(b) Place of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns as Objects, . . .	169-171
(c) Particular use of the Pronoun <i>le</i> , . . .	172
(d) Chief uses of <i>en</i> , . . .	173
(e) Chief uses of <i>y</i> , . . .	174
(f) Reflexive Conjunctive Pronouns, . . .	175-178
II. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, . . .	179-182
(a) Chief Uses of Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, . . .	180-181
(b) The Reflexive Disjunctive Pronoun <i>soi</i> , . . .	182
B.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, . . .	183-185
C.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, . . .	186-194
(a) Chief uses of <i>ce</i> , . . .	187-191
(b) <i>Ceci</i> and <i>cela</i> , . . .	192
(c) <i>Celui</i> , . . .	193
(d) <i>Celui-ci</i> and <i>celui-là</i> , . . .	194
D.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS, . . .	195-204
(a) General Rules, . . .	196-197
(b) <i>Qui</i> governed by a Preposition, . . .	198
(c) <i>Que</i> , . . .	199
(d) <i>Dont</i> , . . .	200-201
(e) <i>Quoi</i> , . . .	202
(f) <i>Lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> , . . .	203
(g) <i>Ce qui</i> , <i>ce que</i> , . . .	204

E.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, . . .	205-207
(a) <i>Qui? que? quoi?</i> . . .	206
(b) <i>Lequel?</i> . . .	207
F.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, . . .	208-216
(a) Indefinite Pronouns requiring the negative <i>ne</i> , . . .	209
(b) <i>L'un l'autre, autrui</i> , . . .	210
(c) <i>On</i> , . . .	211
(d) <i>Personne, quelque chose, quelqu'un, rien</i> followed by <i>de</i> , . . .	212
(e) <i>Qui que, qui que ce soit qui, quoi que, quoi que ce soit qui</i> , . . .	213
(f) <i>Quiconque</i> , . . .	214
(g) <i>Tel</i> , . . .	215
(h) <i>Tout</i> , . . .	216

THE VERB.

A.—INTRODUCTORY, . . .	217-244
I. Conjugations, . . .	218-222
II. Moods, . . .	223
III. Tenses, . . .	224-236
(a) Tenses of each Mood, . . .	224-230
(b) Principal Parts and Formation of Tenses, . . .	231-236
[1] Present Indicative: examples and exceptions, . . .	232
[2] Preterite or Past Definite, . . .	233
[3] Present Infinitive: examples and exceptions, . . .	234
[4] Present Participle: examples and exceptions, . . .	235
[5] Past Participle, . . .	236
(c) Synoptical Table of the Formation of Tenses, . . .	236
IV. Persons, . . .	237-242
V. Agreement of the Verb with the Subject, . . .	243-244
B.—AUXILIARY VERBS, . . .	245-249
(a) <i>Avoir</i> (conjugation of), . . .	246
(b) <i>Avoir</i> corresponding to the English <i>to be</i> , . . .	247
(c) <i>Être</i> (conjugation of), . . .	248
(d) <i>Aller, devoir, faire, falloir, pouvoir, venir</i> (idiomatic tenses formed with), . . .	249
C.—ACTIVE VERBS, . . .	250-253
I. First Conjugation: <i>aimer</i> , . . .	250

II. Second Conjugation : finir ,	251	K.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION,	285-294
III. Third Conjugation : recevoir ,	252	I. Verbs in -cer ,	285
IV. Fourth Conjugation : vendre ,	253	II. Verbs in -eler and -eter ,	286
D.—PASSIVE VERBS ,	254-256	III. Other Verbs with an e mute in the Penultimate Syllable,	287
(a) Agreement of the Past Participle with the Subject ,	255	IV. Verbs with an é in the Penultimate Syllable,	288
(b) Être aimé (conjugation of),	256	V. Verbs in -ger ,	289
E.—INTRANSITIVE OR NEUTER VERBS ,	257-262	VI. Verbs in -ier ,	290
(a) Model of an Intransitive Verb conjugated with être ,	258	VII. Verbs in -uer ,	291-292
(b) Intransitive Verbs always conjugated with être ,	259-260	VIII. Verbs in -yer ,	293-294
(c) Intransitive Verbs conjugated with avoir or être ,	261-262	L.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION,	295-298
F.—REFLEXIVE VERBS ,	263-267	(a) Bénir ,	295
(a) Verbs Reflexive by nature,	263-264	(b) Fleurir ,	296
(b) Agreement of the Past Participle with the Direct Object ,	265-266	(c) Haïr ,	297
(c) S'amuser (conjugation of),	267	(d) Defective Verbs,	298
G.—IMPERSONAL VERBS ,	268-272	M.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION,	299-301
(a) Neiger (conjugation of),	269	(a) Battre ,	299
(b) Verbs Impersonal by nature,	270	(b) Rompre ,	300
(c) Verbs occasionally Impersonal,	271	(c) Sourdre ,	301
(d) Impersonal Construction,	272	N.—IRREGULAR VERBS ,	302-439
H.—VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY ,	273-276	I. Mnemonical Notes on the Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs,	303-307
(a) Observations,	273-275	(a) Present Indicative,	303
(b) Model of Negative Conjugation= ne pas aimer ,	276	(b) Preterite or Past Definite,	304
I.—VERBS CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY ,	277-281	(c) Present Participle,	305
(a) Observations,	277-280	(d) Past Participle,	306
(b) Model of Interrogative Conjugation : Aimé-je ?	281	(e) Tenses wanting in some Verbs,	307
J.—VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY-INTERROGATIVELY ,	282-284	II. Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation,	308-309
(a) Observations,	282	III. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation,	310-337
(b) Model of Negative-Interrogative Conjugation : n'aimé-je pas ?	283	IV. Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation,	338-357
(c) Examples of Passive and Reflexive Verbs conjugated negatively-interrogatively,	284	V. Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation,	358-439
		O.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS WITH NOUNS ,	440-445
		(a) Preliminary Remarks,	440-442
		(b) Verbs governing a Noun without a Preposition (Accusative),	443
		(c) Verbs governing an Indirect Object with à (Dative),	444
		(d) Verbs governing an Indirect Object with de (Genitive),	445

P.—PRINCIPAL RULES ON MOODS AND TENSES, . . . 446-471

- I. Use of the Tenses of the Indicative,** . . . 447-453
 (a) Present, . . . 447
 (b) Imperfect, . . . 448
 (c) Preterite or Past Definite, 449
 (d) Past Indefinite, . . . 450
 (e) Pluperfect, . . . 451
 (f) Past Anterior, . . . 452
 (g) Future (present and past), 453

II. The Conditional, . . . 454

III. The Imperative, . . . 455

IV. The Subjunctive, . . . 456-465

General Rule, . . . 456

Special Rules, . . . 457-462

- (a) Cases in which the Subjunctive or Indicative may be used according to the Meaning, . . . 457-459

[1] Substantival Clauses, . . . 457

[2] Adjectival Clauses, 458

[3] Adverbial Clauses, 459

- (b) Cases in which the Subjunctive alone is used, 460-462

[1] Substantival Clauses, . . . 460

[2] Adjectival Clauses, 461

[3] Adverbial Clauses, 462

- (c) Independent Use of the Subjunctive, . . . 463

- (d) Tenses of the Subjunctive, . . . 464-465

V. The Infinitive, . . . 466-468

VI. The Present Participle, . . . 469

VII. The Past Participle, . . . 470-471

THE ADVERB.

A.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS, . . . 472-474

I. Place of Adverbs, . . . 472-473

II. Comparison of Adverbs, . . . 474

B.—VARIOUS CLASSES OF ADVERBS, 475-504

I. Adverbs of Manner, . . . 476-483

(a) Adverbs in **-ment**, 476-479

(b) Adjectives used adverbially, . . . 480

(c) Adverbs not derived from Adjectives, . . . 481-483

Comme and comment, . . . 482

Plutôt and plus tôt, . . . 483

II. Adverbs of Time, . . . 484-485

III. Adverbs of Place, . . . 486-487

IV. Adverbs of Quantity, . . . 488-489

V. Adverbs of Interrogation, . . . 490

VI. Adverbs of Affirmation, . . . 491-492

VII. Adverbs of Doubt, . . . 493

VIII. Adverbs of Negation, . . . 494-503

(a) Differences between **pas** and **point**, . . . 495

(b) Principal Cases of Omission of **pas** and **point**, 496-498

(c) **Ne** used without a Negative Meaning, . . . 499-502

(d) Principal uses of **non**, . . . 503

IX. List of Adverbial Locutions, . . . 504

THE PREPOSITION.

A.—SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS, . . . 505-507

B.—PREPOSITIVE LOCUTIONS, . . . 508-511

I. Prepositive Locutions ending with à, . . . 509

II. Prepositive Locutions ending with de, . . . 510

III. Other Prepositive Locutions, 511

C.—PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS, . . . 512

D.—REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS, 513

E.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS BY A PREPOSITION, . . . 514

F.—VARIOUS FUNCTIONS OF THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS, 515-531

À, . . . 515

Après, d'après, . . . 516

À travers, au travers de, . . . 517

Avant, devant, . . . 518

Chez, . . . 519

Contre, . . . 520

Dans, en,	521
De,	522
Entre, parmi,	523
Jusque,	524
Par,	525
Pour,	526
Près de, auprès de,	527
Sous, au-dessous de, par-dessous,	528
Sur, au-dessus de, par-dessus,	529
Vers, envers,	530
Voici, voilà,	531

THE CONJUNCTION.

A.—CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, 532-533

B.—SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, 534-537

I. Requiring the Indicative or Conditional, 534

II. Requiring the Subjunctive, 535

III. Requiring sometimes the Indicative, sometimes the Subjunctive, 536-537

THE INTERJECTION.

INTERJECTIONS AND EXCLAMATIONS, 538

FRENCH ACCIDENCE.

FRENCH ACCIDENCE.

INTRODUCTORY.

A.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. Reckoning *w*, only used in foreign words and their derivatives, the French alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters, which are the same as in English :—

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
named :— <i>a</i>	<i>bé</i>	<i>cé</i>	<i>dé</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>effe</i>	<i>gé</i>	<i>ache</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ji</i>	<i>ka</i>	<i>elle</i>	<i>emme</i>	<i>enne</i>
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z		
<i>o</i>	<i>pé</i>	<i>ku</i>	<i>erre</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>té</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>vé</i>	<i>double vé</i>	<i>ics</i>	<i>i grec</i>	<i>zède</i>		

Obs. 1. The names of all letters, except *f, h, l, m, n, r,* and *s*, are masculine.

Obs. 2. Another appellation for the consonants is *be, ke, de, fe,* etc. These names are all masculine without exception.

Obs. 3. The use of capital letters (*majuscules*) is generally the same in French as in English. Adjectives derived from proper names are, however, written with a small initial letter (*minuscule*): *un Anglais, an Englishman*, but—*la littérature anglaise, English literature*. So are names of days and months: *lundi, Monday; août, August*.

§ 2. The vowels—*a, e, i, o, u, y*—are sometimes long, sometimes short. Thus—

<i>a</i> is long in	<i>pâte</i>	<i>dough,</i>	whilst it is short in	<i>patte</i>	<i>paw.</i>
<i>e</i> "	<i>tête</i>	<i>head,</i>	" "	<i>trompette</i>	<i>trumpet.</i>
<i>i</i> "	<i>île</i>	<i>island,</i>	" "	<i>petite</i>	<i>small.</i>
<i>o</i> "	<i>rose</i>	<i>rose,</i>	" "	<i>robe</i>	<i>dress.</i>
<i>u</i> "	<i>flûte</i>	<i>flute,</i>	" "	<i>cruche</i>	<i>pitcher.</i>
<i>y</i> "	<i>lyre</i>	<i>lyre,</i>	" "	<i>gymnase</i>	<i>gymnasium.</i>

As a rule, vowels followed by a doubled consonant are short : *chasse*, *chase* ; *adresse*, *address*.

All vowels followed by *rr*, and *a* and *o* followed by *ss*, are, however, long : *terre*, *earth* ; *basse*, *low* ; *bosse*, *hump*.

§ 3. The *e* may be “*muet*,” “*fermé*,” or “*ouvert*.”

(1) The *e muet* is so called because it is silent or scarcely audible : *aimable*, *amiable*.

Obs. A syllable is mute not only when it ends with an *e mute*, but also when the *e* is followed by an *s* in the plural of nouns and adjectives¹ and in the second person singular of verbs : *choses*, *things* ; *aimables*, *amiable* ; *tu aimes*, *thou lovest*,—or by *nt* in the third person plural : *ils aiment*, *they love*.

(2) The *e fermé* is so called because it is pronounced with the mouth almost closed. The *e* is *fermé*—

[*a*] In the endings *ed*, *er*, *ez*, when the final consonant is not sounded : *piéd*, *foot* ; *aimer*, *to love* ; *aimez*, *love*.

[*b*] In the conjunction *et*, *and*.

[*c*] When it is marked by an acute accent : *vérité*, *truth* (see § 11).

(3) The *e ouvert* is so called because it is pronounced with the mouth open. The *e* is *ouvert*—

[*a*] Before a doubled consonant : *tonnerre*, *thunder*.

[*b*] Before a sounded consonant belonging to the same syllable : *hiver*, *winter*.

[*c*] Before a silent *s* or *t* belonging to the same syllable : *les*, *the* ; *discret*, *discreet* (see, however, (1) *Obs.*, and (2) [*b*]).

[*d*] When it is marked by a grave or—generally—by a circumflex accent : *règle*, *rule* ; *fête*, *feast* (see §§ 12 and 13).

§ 4. The consonants, to which *ch* may be added, are divided into—

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| (1) <i>Gutturals</i> : c, k, q, g, j, ch. | (4) <i>Nasals</i> : m, n. |
| (2) <i>Dentals</i> : d, t. | (5) <i>Liquids</i> : l, r. |
| (3) <i>Labials</i> : b, p, f, v. | (6) <i>Sibilants</i> : s, z. |

¹ Except *ces*, *these* ; *mes*, *my* ; *tes*, *thy* ; *ses*, *his*, *hers*, *its*.

Obs. The gutturals, dentals, labials, and sibilants may be subdivided into *hard* and *soft* :

Hard :—	c (=k), ch, k, q	f	g (=gue)	p	s (=c soft)	t
Soft :—	c (=s hard) ¹	v	g (=j) ¹ , j	b	s (=z) ² , z	d

§ 5. The letter *h*, sometimes considered as a guttural, is either *silent* or *aspirated*.

It is *silent* in most words of Latin or Greek origin : *homme*, *man* ; *hydre*, *hydra*.

It is *aspirated*, i.e. prevents both *liaison*³ and *elision*,⁴ in words of Teutonic origin : *haine*, *hatred* ; *honte*, *shame*, and exceptionally in a few derived from Latin and Greek, as—*haut*, *high* ; *hérissier*, *to bristle up* ; *hiérarchie*, *hierarchy* ; *hors*, *out* ; *hurler*, *to howl*, and their derivatives. *Héros*, *hero*, is also an exception, but its derivatives follow the rule.

§ 6. The letter *x* is a double consonant, and belongs both to the gutturals and to the sibilants. It is generally pronounced *cs* : *extrême*, *extreme*.⁵

B.—DIVISION OF A WORD INTO SYLLABLES.

§ 7. The division of a word into syllables is not regulated in French by the same considerations as in English.

¹ *c* is pronounced like *s* hard, and *g* is pronounced like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y* : *cerise*, *cherry* ; *genou*, *knee* ; *ciel*, *sky* ; *gibier*, *game* ; *cygne*, *swan* ; *gymnase*, *gymnasium*.

² *s* is pronounced like *z*, chiefly in *liaisons* (see note 3), and (generally) between two vowels : *brise*, *breeze* ; *maison*, *house*.

In most compounds, however, *s* is hard between two vowels : *parasol* (pronounce *parassol*).

³ The *liaison* is the drawing over of the final consonant of one word to the next, when it begins with a vowel or silent *h* : *les arbres*, *the trees* ; *cet hiver*, *this winter*.

⁴ For *elision*, see §§ 14-18.

⁵ It has also the sound of—

gz, in the prefix *ex* followed by a vowel or by *h* : *examen*, *examination*, and at the beginning of most foreign nouns : *Xénophon* ;

ss, in *six*, *six*, *dix*, *ten* (not followed by another word), *soixante*, *sixty*, and its derivatives, *Auxerre*, *Bruxelles*, and a few more ;

z, in *deuxième*, *second*, *sixième*, *sixth*, *dixième*, *tenth*, *dix-sept*, *seventeen*, *dix-septième*, *seventeenth*, etc., and at the end of a word followed by another beginning with a vowel or silent *h* : *six enfants*, *six children* ; *dix hommes*, *ten men*.

Words are divided either after a vowel or between two consonants following each other : *li-ber-té, é-ga-li-té, fra-ter-ni-té.*

Obs. 1. *Bl, br, ch, cl, cr, dr, fl, fr, gl, gn* (when nasal), *gr, pl, pr, th, tr, vr*, are inseparable : *é-cra-ser, to crush ; ré-gner, to reign ; pro-pri-é-té, property.*

Obs. 2. The rule does not apply to compound words, which are divided according to their elements : *dés-ac-cord, disagreement ; in-a-ni-mé, inanimate.*

C.—THE TONIC ACCENT.

§ 8. The tonic accent¹ in French is always on the last syllable of the word : *fortuné, fortunate ; lutteur, wrestler*,—except when that syllable is mute, in which case the accent is on the penultimate : *fortune, fortune ; lutte, wrestling, struggle.*

Obs. It follows that no word ever ends with two consecutive mute syllables, but when the *e* of the last syllable becomes mute, the *e* of the penultimate must be pronounced. This sound of the *e* is marked either by doubling the consonant : *projeter, to project ; je projette, I project*,—or by placing a grave accent over the *e* : *acheter, to buy ; j'achète, I buy.*

Vice versâ, if the tonic syllable of some word becomes atonic in its derivatives, the weakening of the sound is often marked by a change in the spelling : *prophète, prophet, prophétesse, prophetess ; extrême, extreme, extrémité, extremity ; bonhomme, good-natured man, bonhomie, good-nature ; chasseur, hunter ; chasseresse, huntress ; pain, bread, panier, basket.*

Notice also the change in some verbs : *mourir, to die, ils meurent, they die ; tenir, to hold, ils tiennent, they hold.*

D.—ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

§ 9. The orthographical signs used in French are the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *cedilla*, the *diæresis*, the *hyphen*, and the various *marks of punctuation*.

I.—Accents.²

§ 10. The *orthographical or grammatical accents*, which must not be confounded with the *tonic accent* (see § 8), are three in number : the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

¹ See Introduction.

² The accents were borrowed from the Greek in the sixteenth century.

§ 11. The *acute accent*, l'*accent aigu* ('), is placed over the vowel *e* only, to show that it has the sound of *e fermé* : *santé*, *health*.

It is not, as a rule, placed over the vowel *e* when it is followed by a mute syllable, unless this mute syllable consists of *e* mute alone : *année*, *year*.

Obs. 1. It has been seen already [§ 3, (2)] that *e* may be *fermé* without being marked by an acute accent.

Obs. 2. Notice that *ai* has the sound of *e fermé* when it is a verbal ending (unless it is followed by the pronoun *je*) : *je donnai*, *I gave*,—and also in *gai*, *gay*, and in *je sais*, *I know*, *tu sais*, *thou knowest*, *il sait*, *he knows*.

§ 12. The *grave accent*, l'*accent grave* (`), is placed—

(1) Over the vowel *a*, in *à* (prep.), *at*, *to*, to distinguish it from *a* (verb), *has* ; *ça*, *here*, to distinguish it from *ça*, *that* ; *déçà*, *on this side* ; *jà* (obsolete), *déjà*, *already* ; *là*, *there*, to distinguish it from *la*, *the*, *her*, *it* ; *delà*, *beyond* ; *holà*, *hallo* ; *voilà*, *there is*, *there are*.

(2) Over the vowel *u*, only in *où*, *where*, to distinguish it from *ou*, *or*.

(3) Over the vowel *e*, to show that it has the sound of *e ouvert* : *frère*, *brother*,—and in *dès*, *since*, to distinguish it from *des*, *of the*.

It is placed, as a rule, over the *e*—

[*a*] When the following syllable is mute : *père*, *father*,—unless this mute syllable consists of *e* mute alone (see § 11), or unless the *e ouvert* has a circumflex : *même*, *same* (see § 13).

[*b*] At the end of the word, when the *e* is followed by *s* : *succès*, *success*,—unless the *s* is the sign of the plural.

Obs. It has been seen already [§ 3, (3)] that *e* may be *ouvert* without being marked by a grave accent. Notice besides that the same sound is represented not only by *ê* (see § 13), but also by *ai* : *éclair*, *lightning* (except when *ai* is a verbal ending not followed by the pronoun *je*, or forms with *i* or *ii* the peculiar sound called *l mouillée* : *corail*, *coral* ; *ailleurs*, *elsewhere*), by *ei* : *reine*, *queen*, and by *œ* : *œsophage*, *œsophagus*.

§ 13. The circumflex accent, l'*accent circonflexe* (^), may be placed over any vowel except *y*, and generally denotes an open sound due to the suppression of one or more letters : *âme* (O.F. *anne*, L. *animam*), *soul* ; *tête* (O.F. *teste*, L. *testam*), *head* ; *île* (O.F. *isle*, L. *insulam*), *island* ; *côte* (O.F. *cost*, L. *costam*), *coast* ; *mûr* (O.F. *meür*, L. *maturum*), *ripe*.¹

¹ Notice especially the use of the circumflex in the first two persons plural of the Preterite and the third person singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive of all verbs (except *haïr*, *to hate*) : *nous aimâmes*, *vous aimâtes*, *qu'il aimât*.

The circumflex accent is also used sometimes—

(a) As a sign of the length of a syllable, though no letter has been suppressed : *dôme, dome* ; *extrême, extreme* ; *théâtre, theatre*.

(b) As the distinctive mark of words spelt alike, but having different meanings : *dû*, past partic. of *devoir*, *to owe*, is thus distinguished from *du, of the* ; *crû*, past partic. of *croître*, *to grow*, from *cru*, past partic. of *croire*, *to believe*.

II.—The Apostrophe.¹

§ 14. The Apostrophe, l'*apostrophe* ('), is used to denote the elision or suppression of a vowel at the end of a word before another word beginning with a vowel or *silent h* : *L'enfant* (instead of *le enfant*), *the child* ; *l'âme* (instead of *la âme*), *the soul*.

The only vowels which can be thus elided are *a, e, i*.

§ 15. The vowel *a* is only elided in *la*, article or pronoun—

Article :

L'amitié, the friendship ; *l'eau, the water* ; *l'histoire, the history*.

Pronoun :

Quand l'avez-vous vue?

When did you see her?

§ 16. The vowel *e* is elided—

(1) In *le*, article and pronoun:

Article :

L'ennemi, the enemy ; *l'instrument, the instrument* ; *l'homme, the man*.

Pronoun :

Quand l'avez-vous vu?

When did you see him?

(2) In *je, me, te, se, ce* (pronoun), *de, ne, que, jusque* :

J'y penserai, I will think of it ; *c'est lui, it is he* ; *jusqu'ici, hitherto*.

(3) In *entre*, only in compound words :

Entr'ouvrir, to half open ; *s'entr'aider, to help one another*.

But *Entre eux, between themselves*.

¹ The name of this sign, first used in the sixteenth century, comes from the Greek ἀποστροφή, "turning away."

(4) In *lorsque*, *puisque*, *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, *une* :

Lorsqu'il arriva, *when he arrived* ; *puisqu'elles le désirent*, *since they wish it* ;
quoiqu'on les craigne, *although they are feared*.

Notice also—exceptionally : *puisqu'ainsi est*, *since it is so*.

(5) In *presque*, only in *presqu'île*, *peninsula*.

(6) In *quelque*, only before *un*, *une* (and sometimes *autre*) : *quelqu'un*,
some one.

(7) Exceptionally before a consonant, in a few compounds of *grande* ;
as, *grand'faim*, *great hunger*, *grand'soif*, *great thirst*, *grand'mère*, *grand-*
mother, etc.¹

§ 17. The vowel *i* is elided only in *s'il*, *s'ils* (for *si il*, *si ils*), *if he*, *if they*.

§ 18. No elision takes place—

(1) In the pronouns *je*, *le*, *la*, *ce*, when they stand after their verb :

Ai-je appelé ?

Have I called ?

Amenez-le (or la) avec vous.

Bring him (or her) with you.

Est-ce injuste ?

Is it unjust ?

(2) Before *huit* (= *eight*), *huitain* (= *stanza of eight verses*), *huitaine*
(*about eight* ; *a week*), *huitième* (= *eighth*), *huitièmement* (= *eighthly*),
onze (= *eleven*), *onzième* (= *eleventh*), *onzièmement* (= *eleventhly*), *ouate*
(= *wadding*), *ouater* (= *to wad, to pad*), *oui* (= *yes*), *uhlan* (= *uhlan*),
yacht (= *yacht*), *yatagan* (= *yataghan*), *yole* (= *yawl*), *yucca* (= *yucca*) :

Le huit ou le onze du mois
prochain.

On the eighth or eleventh of next month.

Le yacht était déjà loin.

The yacht was already far.

III.—The Cedilla.²

§ 19. The cedilla, la *cédille* (*ç*), is placed under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to denote that the *c* has a soft sound :

Français ; *leçon* ; *reçu*.

French ; *lesson* ; *received*.

Obs. The *c* never takes a cedilla before *e*, *i*, *y*, because it has always a soft sound before these vowels.

¹ For the explanation of this exceptional case, see *Syntax*, § 31 (b).

² The name of this sign, which was introduced in the sixteenth century, comes from the Italian *zediglia*, "a small z."

IV.—The Diæresis.¹

§ 20. The diæresis, le tréma (¨), is placed over the vowels e, i, u, to denote that they should be separated in pronunciation from the vowel preceding them :

Ciguë; haïr; Saül.

Hemlock; to hate; Saul.

Obs. The ending -guë is pronounced gu.

V.—The Hyphen.

§ 21. The hyphen, le trait d'union (-), is used—

(1) Between the different parts of a compound word :

Arc-en-ciel; tout-puissant.

Rainbow; all-powerful, almighty.

(2) Between a verb and the following personal pronoun, subject or object of that verb :

Irai-je? Parlez-lui.

Shall I go? Speak to him.

Obs. 1. If there are two pronouns-objects, the hyphen must be repeated :

Donnez-les-leur.

Give them to them.

Obs. 2. When a euphonic t is inserted between the verb and its pronoun-subject, this t is placed between two hyphens :

Ira-t-il? A-t-elle écrit?

Will he go? Has she written?

(3) In compound numerals from 17 to 99, except when et is used :

Dix-neuf; quatre-vingt-dix-huit.

Nineteen; ninety-eight.

But Vingt et un; trente et un.

Twenty-one; thirty-one.

(4) Between a personal pronoun and même :

Lui-même; nous-mêmes.

He himself; we ourselves.

(5) Between a noun preceded by a demonstrative adjective, and ci or là :

Ce livre-ci; cet ouvrage-là.

This book; that work.

Obs. Notice also celui-ci (=this one), celui-là (=that one), ci-après (=hereafter), ci-dessus (=above), ci-dessous (=below), ci-devant

¹ The diæresis was also introduced in the sixteenth century. Its French name comes from the Greek τρημα, "a hole."

(=formerly), *de-ci, de-là, par-ci, par-là* (=here and there), *ci-inclus, ci-joint* (=enclosed, annexed), *là-dessus* (=thereupon), *là-dessous* (=under there), *là-haut* (=up there, up-stairs), *là-bas* (=down there, yonder), *jusque-là* (=so far, till then), etc.

(6) Between the several Christian names of a person :

Jean-Jacques Rousseau ; François-Marie Arouet.

Obs. The hyphen is often used between *très* (=very) and the following adjective or adverb, but this use is no longer imperative.

VI.—The Marks of Punctuation.

§ 22. The marks of punctuation are the same in French as in English :

La virgule (,).

Le point (et) virgule (;).

Les deux points (:).

Le point (.

Le point d'interrogation(?).

Le point d'exclamation (!).

Les points de suspension (...).

Le tiret (—).

Les guillemets ("...").

La parenthèse ().

Obs. Notice that the "guillemets" are placed on the line, not above :

« *Me voici,* » dit-il.

"*Here I am,*" said he.

THE ARTICLE.

§ 23. The Article is placed before a noun to denote whether it is taken in a definite, indefinite, or partitive sense. There are accordingly three different articles, the DEFINITE, the INDEFINITE, and the PARTITIVE.

§ 24. Each article agrees with the following noun in gender and number.

Obs. In French there are only two genders, *masculine* and *feminine*, and two numbers, *singular* and *plural*.

I.—The Definite Article.

§ 25. The Definite Article is—

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.
Before a noun beginning with a consonant.		Before a noun beginning with a vowel or silent h.		Before ALL nouns, MASC. OF FEM.
	MASC.	FEM.	For BOTH Genders.	
N.A.	le	la	l'	les (=the).
G.	du	de la	de l'	des (=of the).
D.	au	à la	à l'	aux (=to the).

EXAMPLES.

(1) Before a **masculine** noun beginning with a **consonant** :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Le père	<i>the father.</i>	Les pères	<i>the fathers.</i>
Du père	<i>of the father.</i>	Des pères	<i>of the fathers.</i>
Au père	<i>to the father.</i>	Aux pères	<i>to the fathers.</i>

(2) Before a **feminine** noun beginning with a **consonant** :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
La mère	<i>the mother.</i>	Les mères	<i>the mothers.</i>
De la mère	<i>of the mother.</i>	Des mères	<i>of the mothers.</i>
À la mère	<i>to the mother.</i>	Aux mères	<i>to the mothers.</i>

(3) Before a **masculine** or **feminine** noun beginning with a **vowel** or **silent h** :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
L'enfant	<i>the child.</i>	Les enfants	<i>the children.</i>
De l'enfant	<i>of the child.</i>	Des enfants	<i>of the children.</i>
À l'enfant	<i>to the child.</i>	Aux enfants	<i>to the children.</i>

Obs. **Le** comes from **L. illum**, **la** from **L. illam**, **les** from **L. illos**.

Du comes from the contraction of **de (=of) le**, which gave *del*, then *deu*, and lastly *du*.

Au comes from the contraction of **à (=to) le**, which gave *al* and then *au* (for this change of **l** into **u** cf. **chevaux (=horses)**, from O.F. *chevals*).

Likewise **de les** gave **des** (O.F. *dels*), and **à les** gave **aux** (O.F. *als*).¹

REPETITION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE—

§ 26. When several nouns are placed in succession, the definite article, if used before the first, must be repeated before each of the others :

Le père, la mère, et les enfants. *The father, mother, and children.*

Obs. This rule applies to the other articles, and to all determinative words.

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, §§ 3-5.)

CHIEF USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE—

§ 27. The definite article is used in French without any equivalent in English—

(1) Before nouns taken in a general sense, abstract nouns and class-names (names of arts, sciences, languages, virtues, vices, seasons, metals, etc.):

La patience est le courage de la vertu.	<i>Patience is the courage of virtue.</i>
La physique et la chimie.	<i>Physics and chemistry.</i>
L'anglais et le français.	<i>English and French.</i>

¹ The blending of the definite article with the preposition **en (=in)** was common in Old French. From **en les** comes **ès**, still used in a few expressions; such as, **Bachelier ès lettres, bachelor of arts; docteur ès sciences, doctor of science.**

(2) Before proper names preceded by a word denoting title or profession, or qualified by an adjective :

Le roi Arthur.	<i>King Arthur.</i>
Le docteur Smith.	<i>Dr. Smith.</i>
Le vieux Paris.	<i>Old Paris.</i>

(3) Before names of countries, except [*a*] after the preposition *en*, [*b*] after the preposition *de* used with *feminine* names of countries preceded by a verb of motion, or taken adjectively to express extraction or qualification :

L'Angleterre et la France.	<i>England and France.</i>
But Je suis <i>en</i> Angleterre.	<i>I am in England.</i>
Je vais <i>en</i> France.	<i>I am going to France.</i>
Il vient <i>d'</i> Espagne.	<i>He comes from Spain.</i>
La toile <i>d'</i> Irlande.	<i>Irish linen.</i>
Le roi <i>d'</i> Italie.	<i>The King of Italy.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, § 10.)

Obs. Notice that no article—whether definite, indefinite, or partitive—is placed before a noun taken indeterminately—

[*a*] After the preposition *de* used to denote *cause* or *motive* :

Il tremblait <i>de</i> froid.	<i>He was trembling with cold.</i>
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

[*b*] After the preposition *en* :

<i>En</i> été, <i>en</i> hiver.	<i>In summer, in winter.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------

[*c*] After any preposition with which the noun forms an adjectival or adverbial phrase :

Un trait <i>de</i> courage.	<i>An act of courage (i.e. a courageous act).</i>
<i>Sans</i> crainte.	<i>Without fear (i.e. fearlessly).</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 6 and 7.)

§ 28. The definite article is also used in French to translate an English possessive adjective in speaking of a part of the body, or a bodily or mental faculty¹—

(1) Alone, when there cannot be any doubt as to who the possessor is:

N'avez-vous pas froid <i>aux</i> mains?	<i>Are not your hands cold?</i>
Tournez <i>la</i> tête.	<i>Turn your head.</i>
Il perdit <i>la</i> vue, <i>la</i> raison, <i>la</i> vie.	<i>He lost his sight, his reason, his life.</i>

¹ For other uses of the definite article, see § 30.

(2) Together with a conjunctive personal pronoun, when the article alone might give rise to ambiguity :

Le cœur lui manqua.

His courage failed.

Une idée étrange **me** traversa
l'esprit.

A strange idea crossed **my** mind.

(For more details and exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 12.)

II.—The Indefinite Article.

§ 29. The Indefinite Article s—

	MASC.	FEM.	
N.A.	un (L. unum)	une (L. unam)	a (or an).
G.	d'un	d'une	of a.
D.	à un	à une	to a.

EXAMPLES.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Un fils	a son.	Une fille	a daughter.
D'un fils	of a son.	D'une fille	of a daughter.
À un fils	to a son.	À une fille	to a daughter.

Obs. The indefinite article has no plural of its own, but the plural of the partitive article—**des**—is used, for both genders, before plural nouns taken indefinitely :

Il a **des** fils et **des** filles.

He has sons and daughters.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE REPLACED BY THE DEFINITE—

§ 30. The definite article is used in French instead of the indefinite—

(1) Before nouns of *measure, weight, quantity*, to denote the value of things :

Six francs **le** mètre.

Six francs **a** metre.

Cinquante centimes **la** livre.

Fivepence **a** pound.

(2) Before nouns denoting *parts of the body, physical pain, mental or bodily faculties*, when used as objects :

Elle avait l'oreille fine.

She had **a** correct ear.

J'ai **la** migraine.

I have **a** headache.

Il a **la** vue basse.

He has **a** short sight.

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 11.)

OMISSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE—

§ 31. The indefinite article is omitted in French, but not in English—

(1) In apposition :

L'Algérie, **colonie** française.

Algeria, a French colony.

(2) After the verbs **être** (=to be), **devenir** (=to become), **paraître** (=to appear), **sembler** (=to seem), **rester** (=to remain), **créer** (=to create), **faire** (=to make), and the like, when the following noun denotes nationality, profession, or title :

Il est **Anglais**.

He is an Englishman.

Vous êtes **orfèvre**, Monsieur Josse.

You are a goldsmith, Mr. Josse.

Son frère est devenu **artiste**.

His brother has become an artist.

Il fut fait **colonel**.

He was made a colonel.

(3) After **quel** (=what) :

Quel homme !

What a man !

Obs. The article must be used, however—

[a] When **être** is preceded by **ce** :

C'est **un** Anglais.

He is an Englishman.

[b] When the noun preceded by the verbs **être**, **devenir**, **paraître**, etc., is qualified by an adjective or an adjectival phrase :

Son frère est devenu **un** artiste distingué.

His brother has become a distinguished artist.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 6-8 and 14.)

III.—The Partitive Article.

§ 32. The partitive article is nothing but the genitive of the definite article :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	Du vin (some or any) wine.	Des papiers (some or any) papers.	
	De l'argent (some or any) money.	Des ouvrages (some or any) works.	
FEM.	De la poussière (some or any) dust.	Des craintes (some or any) fears.	
	De l'herbe (some or any) grass.	Des offres (some or any) offers.	

Obs. It may be preceded by a preposition (**de**, of course, excepted) :

A du vin ; **pour** de l'argent ;
avec des papiers, etc.

To wine ; for money ; with papers, etc.

USE AND OMISSION OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE—

§ 33. The partitive article must be expressed in French before every noun taken in a partitive sense, even though *some* or *any* should be left out in English :

Donnez-moi **du** papier et **de** l'encre. *Give me paper and ink.*

It is, however, omitted in the cases mentioned in § 27, *Obs.*, and must, besides, be replaced by the preposition **de** before a noun used indeterminate and preceded by—

(1) An adjective :

Donnez-moi **de bon** papier et **de bonne** encre. *Give me good paper and ink.*

(2) An expression of quantity :

Beaucoup d'esprit et **peu de** cœur. *Much wit and little heart.*

Un verre d'eau. *A glass of water.*

Trois livres de pommes. *Three pounds of apples.*

Une armée de barbares. *An army of barbarians.*

(3) A negative :

Je n'ai pas d'argent. *I have no money.*

Il ne lit jamais de romans. *He never reads novels.*

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 17.)

THE NOUN.

A.—GENDER OF NOUNS.

§ 34. As already stated, there are only two genders in French—the masculine and the feminine.

Obs. Although no rules can be framed that would apply to all French nouns, the gender of most of them may be ascertained from their formation or their meaning.

I.—General Rules to ascertain the Gender of Nouns.

§ 35. Most nouns derived from Latin masculine nouns are masculine in French ; as,

Monde (L. mundum, fr. mundus), *world*.

Chief Exceptions.—Most Latin abstract nouns in **-or** have become feminine :

Candeur (L. candorem)	<i>candour.</i>	Fureur (L. furorem)	<i>fury.</i>
Couleur (L. colorem)	<i>colour.</i>	Peur (L. pavorem)	<i>fear, etc.</i>

Notice also—

Brebis (L. vervecem)	<i>sheep.</i>	Moule (L. musculum)	<i>mussel.</i>
Cendre (L. cinerem)	<i>ashes.</i>	Poudre (L. pulverem)	<i>powder.</i>
Dent (L. dentem)	<i>tooth.</i>	Souris (L. soricem)	<i>mouse, etc.</i>

§ 36. Most nouns derived from Latin feminine nouns are feminine in French ; as,

Raison (L. rationem), *reason*.

Chief Exceptions.—Most Latin names of trees have become masculine :

Cyprès (L. cupressum),	<i>cypress.</i>	Orme (L. ulmum),	<i>elm.</i>
Frêne (L. fraxinum),	<i>ash-tree.</i>	Pin (L. pinum),	<i>pine, etc.</i>

Notice also—

Arbre (L. arborem),	<i>tree.</i>	Ongle (L. ungulam),	<i>nail.</i>
Art (L. artem),	<i>art.</i>	Poison (L. potionem),	<i>poison.</i>
Front (L. frontem),	<i>forehead.</i>	Sort (L. sortem),	<i>fate, etc.</i>

§ 37. Most nouns derived from Latin neuter nouns are masculine in French ; as,

Crime (L. crimen), *crime.*

Chief Exceptions.—About a hundred Latin neuter nouns have become feminine, most of them having been mistaken, on account of their plural in *a*, for feminine nouns of the first declension. It is especially the case—

(1) With collective nouns :

Entrailles (L. L. intralia),	<i>entrails.</i>	Semaille (L. seminalia),	<i>sowing.</i>
Épousailles (L. sponsalia),	<i>nuptials.</i>	Viande (L. L. vivenda),	<i>meat.</i>
Merveille (L. mirabilia),	<i>marvel.</i>	Volaille (L. volatilia),	<i>poultry, etc.</i>

Obs. Under this head come nouns denoting plantations, as **aunaie** (L. alneta), **alder-plot**, **olivaie** (L. oliveta), **olive-grove**, etc.

(2) With names of fruits :

Cerise (L. L. cerasa),	<i>cherry.</i>	Poire (L. pira),	<i>pear.</i>
Figue (L. L. fica),	<i>fig.</i>	Pomme (L. poma),	<i>apple.</i>
Pêche (L. persica),	<i>peach.</i>	Prune (L. pruna),	<i>plum, etc.</i>

Notice also—

Arme, (L. arma),	<i>arm, weapon.</i>	Feuille (L. folia),	<i>leaf.</i>
Étable (L. stabula),	<i>stable.</i>	Joie (L. gaudia),	<i>joy.</i>
Étude (L. studia),	<i>study.</i>	Vitre (L. vitra),	<i>pane of glass,</i> <i>etc.</i>

II.—Special Rules.

(a) GENDER DETERMINED BY THE TERMINATION.

§ 38. The following terminations are masculine—

(1) A sounded vowel or diphthong ; as,

Thé (=tea), **abri** (=shelter), **écho** (=echo), **tissu** (=tissue), **balai** (=broom), **manteau** (=mantle).

Chief Exceptions :—

- A :** Aqua-tinta (=aquatinta), guérilla (=guerilla), mazurka (=mazourka),
 ✓ polka (=polka), razzia (=razzia), sépia (=sepia),
 tombola (sort of lottery), ✓ véranda (=veranda), ✓ villa (=villa),
É : Amitié (=friendship), inimitié (=enmity), ✓ moitié (=half),
 pitié (=pity), and abstract nouns in té, as charité, liberté, ^{in v. scule}vanité, etc.
I : Foi (=faith), ✓ fourmi (=ant), loi (=law), paroi (=side [of a glass, etc.]).

Obs. Après-midi (=afternoon) is common, and *merci* is feminine when it means *mercy*, and masculine in the expression *grand merci*, *gramercy*, *thank you*.

O : Virago (=virago).

- U :** Bru (=daughter-in-law), glu (=bird-lime), tribu (=tribe),
 vertu (=virtue), eau (=water), peau (=skin).

(2) A consonant ; as,

Club (=club), pied (=foot), bœuf (=ox), bal (=ball), vin (=wine), fer (=iron).

Chief Exceptions :—

- F :** Clef (=key), nef (=ship ; nave), soif (=thirst).
M : Faim (=hunger).
N : Façon (=fashion), fin (=end), leçon (=lesson),
 main (=hand), rançon (=ransom), and most nouns in ion and son.
R : Chair (=flesh), cour (=court ; yard), cuiller (=spoon),
 mer (=sea), tour (=tower), and most abstract nouns in eur.
S : Brebis (=sheep), fois (=time), oasis (=oasis),
 souris (mouse), vis (=screw).
T : Dent (=tooth), dot (=dower), forêt (=forest),
 gent (=tribe), ~~hart~~ (=halter), jument (=mare),
 mort (=death), nuit (=night), part (=share, part).
X : Chaux (=lime), croix (=cross), faux (=scythe),
 noix (=walnut), paix (peace), perdrix (=partridge),
 poix (=pitch, shoemaker's wax), toux (=cough), voix (=voice).

(3) ✓ -ACLE, ✓ -AGE, ✓ -AIRE, ✓ -ASME, ✓ -ÂTRE, ✓ -AUME ; as,

Spectacle (=spectacle), rivage (=shore), dictionnaire (=dictionary), sarcasme (=sarcasm), emplâtre (=plaster), baume (=balm).

Chief Exceptions :—

- Débâcle (=breaking-up of ice, etc.), cage (=cage), image (=image),
 Nage (=swimming), page (page [of a book]), plage (=beach),
 Rage (=rage), aire (=threshing-floor), affaire (=affair),
 Chaire (=pulpit), circulaire (circular), glaire (=glair),
 Grammaire (=grammar), haire (hair-shirt), paire (=pair),
 Paume (=palm [of the hand], tennis).

(4) -ÈGE, -ÈME ; as,

Collège (=college), diadème (=diadem).

Chief Exceptions :—

Allège (=window-sill),

crème (=cream),

trirème (=trireme).

(5) -IGE, -ISME ; as,

Prodige (=prodigy), magnétisme (=magnetism).

Chief Exceptions :

Tige (=stem),

voltige (=slack rope, vaulting).

(6) -TÈRE, -TOIRE ; as,

Mystère (=mystery), oratoire (=oratory).

Chief Exceptions :—

Artère (=artery),

panthère (=panther),

patère (=curtain-peg),

Échappatoire (=shift),

écritoire (=inkstand),

histoire (=history),

Trajectoire (=trajectory),

victoire (=victory).

Obs. It follows that the roots of verbs without any external addition are masculine ; as,

Appel (from appeler), appeal, éveil (from éveiller), awaking, alert, etc.

§ 39. The following terminations are feminine—

(1) E mute preceded by a vowel or diphthong ; as,

Année (=year), envie (=envy), boue (=mud), vue (=sight), oie (=goose).

Chief Exceptions :—

Apogée (=apogee, climax),

athée (=atheist),

athénée (=Athenæum),

Camée (=cameo),

hyménée (=hymen),

lycée (=lyceum, college),

Mausolée (=mausoleum),

musée (=museum),

scarabée (=beetle),

Trophée (=trophy),

amphibie (=amphibious
animal),

foie (=liver),

Génie incendie (=genius, fire, conflagration),

parapluie (=umbrella).

(2) E mute preceded by a double consonant ; as,

Guerre (=war), tristesse (=sadness), famille (=family), couronne
(=crown), chasse (=hunting).

Chief Exceptions :

Intervalle (=interval),	gramme (=gramme) and all its compounds,	
Libelle (=libel),	violoncelle (=violoncello),	cimeterre (=scimitar),
Lierre (=ivy),	parterre (=flower-bed, pit [of a theatre]),	tonnerre (=thunder),
Verre (=glass),	beurre (=butter),	leurre (=lure),
Squelette (=skeleton),	codicille (=codicil),	mille (=mile),
Vaudeville (=vaudeville),	carrosse (=carriage),	colosse (=colossus).

(3) -ACE, -ACHE, -ADE, -ANCE, -ANDE, -ANSE ; as,

Place (=room), hache (=axe), rade (=roadstead), souffrance (=suffering),
contrebande (=smuggling), danse (=dancing).

Chief Exceptions :—

Espace (=space), Grade (=grade, degree), Multiplicande (=multiplicand).

(4) -ENCE, -ENDE, -ENSE, -EUR ; as,

Science (=science), amende (=fine), défense (=defence), douceur
(=sweetness).

Chief Exceptions :—

Dividende (=dividend),	silence (=silence),	bonheur (=happiness),
Malheur (=misfortune),	chœur (=choir, chorus),	cœur (=heart),
Dénominateur (=denominator),	équateur (=equator),	honneur (=honour),
Déshonneur (=dishonour),	labeur (=labour),	numérateur (=numerator),
Pleurs (=tears), and names of persons, as	docteur, professeur, etc.	

(5) -IÈRE, -ION ; as,

Carrière (=career), explication (=explanation).

Chief Exceptions :—

Cimetière (=churchyard),	derrière (=back),	bastion (=bastion),
Brimborion (=bauble),	champion (=champion),	croupion (=rump),
Gabion (=gabion),	galion (=galleon),	lampion (=illumination-lamp),
Lion (=lion),	million (=million),	pion (=pawn),
Scion (=scion),	scorpion (=scorpion),	septentrion (=north).

(6) -OIRE, as histoire (=history).

Chief Exceptions :—

Accessoire (=accessory)	boire (=drinking),	déboire (=drawback),
Grimoire (=gibberish),	ivoire (=ivory),	mémoire (=memorandum, bill)
Pourboire (=drink-money), and most nouns in -toire (see § 38, [6]).		

(7) -SON, as trahison (=treason).

Chief Exceptions :—

Bison (=bison),	blason (=coat of arms, heraldry),	grison (=grey-beard),
Oison (=gosling),	peson (=steel-yard),	poison (=poison),
Poisson (=fish),	tison (=fire-brand).	

(8) -TÉ, as *vérité* (=truth).

Chief Exceptions :—

Aparté (=aside),	arrêté (=decision),	comité (=committee),
Comté (=earldom, shire),	côté (=side),	doigté (=fingering),
Été (=summer),	pâté (=pie),	traité (=treaty, treatise).

(9) -UDE, -UNE, -URE ; as,

Habitude (=habit), *lacune* (=gap, omission), *voiture* (=carriage).

Chief Exceptions :—

Prélude (=prelude),	augure (=augur, augury),	mercure (=mercury),
Murmure (=murmur),	parjure (=perjury).	

Obs. The roots of verbs to which an *e mute* has been added are mostly feminine ; as,

Commande (from commander), *order*, *fouille* (from fouiller), *digging*, etc.

(b) GENDER DETERMINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 40. To the masculine belong—

(1) Names of male beings ; as,

Homme (=man), *mari* (=husband), *soldat* (=soldier), *chasseur* (=hunter).

Chief Exceptions :—

Basse-taille (=bass),	canaille (=rascal),	caution (=surety),
Connaissance (=acquaintance),	dupe (=dupe),	estafette (=estafette),
Flûte (=flutist),	ganache (=blockhead),	partie (=party),
Personne (=person),	pratique (=customer),	recrue (=recruit),
Sentinelle (=sentinel),	vedette (=vedette),	victime (=victim),
Vigie (=look-out man).		

Obs. 1. Several names of living beings, having no distinct forms to express the sex, are always used in the *feminine*, even when they designate males (see § 68).

Obs. 2. For common nouns, see § 67.

(2) Names of trees and shrubs ; as,

Chêne (=oak), *bouleau* (=birch), *jasmin* (=jessamine), *chèvrefeuille* (=honeysuckle).

Chief Exceptions :—

Aubépine (=hawthorn),	bruyère (=heath),	clématite (=clematis),
Épine (=thorn),	ronce (=bramble),	vigne (=vine),
Viorne (=viburnum),	yeuse (=holm-oak).	

- (3) Names of days, months and seasons ; as,

Dimanche (=Sunday), **octobre** (=October), **été** (=summer).

(For *fête-days* see § 41 (4), and for **automne**, § 46).

- (4) Names of winds and cardinal points ; as,

Aquilon (=north wind), **ouest** (=west).

Exceptions :—

Bise (=north wind),	brise (=breeze),	mousson (=monsoon),
Tramontane (=tramontane, north wind).		

- (5) Names of mountains ; as, **le Vésuve**, **le Jura**.

Chief Exceptions :—

La Sierra Morena, **la Sierra Nevada**, and most mountains used in the plural, as **les Alpes**, **les Ardennes**, **les Pyrénées**, etc.

- (6) Names of metals, metalloids, and chemical products named according to modern nomenclature ; as,

Argent (=silver), **cuivre** (=copper), **soufre** (=sulphur), **sulfate** (=sulphate).

- (7) Names of weights and measures of the metric system ; as,

Mètre (=metre), **gramme** (=gramme), **litre** (=litre).

- (8) Names of colours ; as,

Jaune (=yellow), **vert** (=green), **rouge** (=red),
Except écarlate (=scarlet).

Also parts of speech and phrases used substantively, and therefore names of languages :

Le beau (=the beautiful), **le oui et le non** (=yes and no), **le français** (=French).

Chief Exceptions. Feminine adjectives and participles ; as,

Belle (=beauty), **allée** (=alley, walk), **avenue** (=avenue), etc.

§ 41. To the feminine belong—

- (1) Names of female beings ; as,

Femme (=woman), **modiste** (=milliner), **jument** (mare).

For *Exceptions* see § 68.

(2) Names of moral qualities ; as,

Vertu (=virtue), **bonté** (=kindness), **pitié** (=pity), **modestie** (=modesty).

Chief Exceptions :—

Courage (=courage),

égoïsme (=selfishness),

mérite (=merit),

Orgueil (=pride),

vice (=vice).

(3) Names of arts, sciences, and trades ; as,

Peinture (=painting), **chimie** (=chemistry), **librairie** (=book-trade).

Chief Exception :—dessin (=drawing).

(4) Names of fête-days (*la fête de* being understood) ; as,

La Saint-Martin (=Martinmas).

(For Noël see § 46, and for Pâques, § 47).

(5) Names of countries and towns ending in *e mute* ; as,

L'Angleterre, la France, Venise.

Chief Exceptions :—

✓ **L'Attique**, ✓ **le Bengale**, ✓ **le Caire**, ✓ **le Hanovre**, ✓ **le Havre**, ✓ **le Maine**,
✓ **le Mexique**, **le Mosambique**, **le Péloponèse**, and all the English
shires.

(c) GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 42. Elliptical compounds, *i.e.*, compounds in which the principal noun is understood, being nothing but phrases used substantively, belong, according to § 40 (8), to the masculine ; as,

Cure-dents (=tooth-pick),

garde-cendre (=fender),

porte-plume (=penholder),

Rouge-gorge (=red-breast),

terre-neuve (=Newfoundland dog),

tire-bouchon (=cork-screw).

Notice, however, that the elliptical compound is feminine when the principal noun referred to is *distinctly* feminine, which is very seldom the case :

Une eau-forte,¹ *an aquafortis engraving* ; **une garde-malade**,² *a nurse* ;
une perce-neige,³ *a snowdrop* ; **une reine-claude**,⁴ *a greengage*.

¹ Une gravure à l'eau-forte.

³ Une fleur qui perce la neige.

² Garde-malade is common.

⁴ Une prune reine-claude.

§ 43. Other compounds have the same gender as the principal noun. For instance—

arc-en-ciel (=rainbow), *grand-père* (=grandfather), *sang-froid* (=coolness), are masculine because such is the gender of *arc*, *père*, *sang*; whilst *avant-garde* (=van-guard), *chauve-souris* (=bat), *grand'mère* (grandmother), are feminine, like *garde*, *souris*, and *mère*.

§ 44. SUMMARY OF RULES OF GENDER.

GENERAL RULE.

MASCULINE.

Most nouns derived from Latin
masculine or *neuter* nouns.

FEMININE.

Most nouns derived from Latin
feminine nouns.

SPECIAL RULES.

(a) Gender determined by the Termination.

MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

- (1) A sounded vowel or diphthong.
- (2) A consonant.
- (3) -ACLE, -AGE, -AIRE, -ASME, -ÂTRE, -AUME.
- (4) -ÈGE, -ÈME.
- (5) -IGE, -ISME.
- (6) -TÈRE, -TOIRE.

FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

- (1) E mute preceded by a vowel or diphthong.
- (2) E mute preceded by a doubled consonant.
- (3) -ACE, -ACHE, -ADE, -ANCE, -ANDE, -ANSE.
- (4) -ENCE, -ENDE, -ENSE, -EUR.
- (5) -IÈRE, -ION.
- (6) -OIRE (not -TOIRE, as a rule).
- (7) -SON.
- (8) -TÉ.
- (9) -UDE, -UNE, -URE.

(b) Gender determined by the Meaning.

MASCULINE.

- (1) Names of male beings.
- (2) Names of trees and shrubs.
- (3) Names of days (not fête-days), months and seasons.
- (4) Names of winds and cardinal points.
- (5) Names of mountains.
- (6) Names of metals, metalloids, and chemical products named according to modern nomenclature.
- (7) Names of weights and measures of the metric system.
- (8) Names of colours.

Also parts of speech used substantively, and therefore names of languages.

FEMININE.

- (1) Names of female beings.
- (2) Names of moral qualities. ✓
- (3) Names of arts, sciences and trades.
- (4) Names of fête-days.
- (5) Names of countries and towns ending in *e* mute.

(c) Gender of Compound Nouns.

If elliptical, Compound nouns are almost always masculine; if not, they are masculine or feminine according to the gender of the principal noun.

III.—Nouns with both Genders.

§ 45. Besides the nouns referring to persons which retain their masculine form in the feminine, *i.e.* *common* nouns (see § 67), there are many others which have both genders, almost always with a different meaning. The double gender is accounted for in many cases by a difference in the derivation, whilst in others the gender has been changed to mark the change in the sense.

§ 46. *Après-midi* (= *afternoon*) is generally feminine, but may be used in the masculine.

Automne (= *autumn*), generally masculine like the other seasons, may be used in the feminine.

Cloaque (= *sewer*) is masculine in spite of its derivation (*L. cloacam*), but it is feminine in—

La grande cloaque.

The great sewer (at Rome).

Comté (= *county, earldom, shire*) is now masculine, but it was feminine in Old French, and has remained so in

La Franche-Comté.

Franche-Comté.

Dinde (= *turkey*), though properly feminine, is sometimes used in the masculine instead of **dindon**.

Hymne (= *hymn*) is generally masculine, but feminine when it means a church hymn:

Un hymne national.

A national hymn.

Les premières hymnes de l'Église.

The first hymns of the Church.

Noël, which is always masculine in the sense of *Christmas carol*, is often used in the feminine (the word *fête* being understood) when it means *Christmas Day*:

À la Noël prochaine.

Next Christmas.

Orge (= *barley*) is generally feminine, but it is masculine in the expressions—

Orge mondé.

Peeled barley.

Orge perlé.

Pearl barley.

§ 47. **Amour** (= *love*), **délice** (= *delight*), **orgue** (= *organ*) are masculine in the singular, feminine in the plural:

L'amour paternel *paternal love.*

Les premières amours *first love.*

Un grand délice *a great delight.*

De grandes délices *great delights.*

Un bel orgue *a beautiful organ.*

De belles orgues *beautiful organs.*

(**Amour**, however, which is always feminine in Old French, remains sometimes feminine even now in poetry, whilst its plural is always masculine in the sense of *Cupids*, or as a term of admiration or endearment:

Des Amours ailés.

Winged Cupids.

Ce sont de vrais amours d'enfants.

They are truly charming children.)

Likewise **Pâque** or better **Pâques** (= *Easter Sunday, Easter-time*) is masculine singular, but **pâques** is feminine plural in the expressions—

Pâques closes.

Low-Sunday.

Pâques fleuries.

Palm-Sunday.

Faire de bonnes Pâques.

To receive the Sacrament at Easter.

(**Pâque** [= *Passover*] is feminine.)

Obs. **Amour** (= *L. amorem*) had become feminine in Old French, like other abstract nouns derived from Latin nouns in *or*. The grammarians of the sixteenth century tried to make all such nouns masculine as in Latin, but their attempt was successful only for the *singular* of **amour** and for **honneur** and **labeur**.

Délíce corresponds to *L. delictum*, **délices** to *L. delicias*.

Orgue corresponds to *L. organum*, **orgues** to *LL. organas*, the neuter plural *organa* having been mistaken for a feminine singular of the first declension.

§ 48. *Vice versâ*, **gent** (= *race, tribe*), only used now in familiar style, is feminine according to its derivation (*L. gentem*) :

Vive **la gent** qui fend les airs !

Long live the feathery tribe !

but the plural **gens** (= *people, folks, servants*) is always masculine when followed by a complement :

De **vrais gens de bien**.

Truly honest people.

De **vallants gens de guerre**.

Valiant men-at-arms.

When **gens** is not followed by a complement, adjectives qualifying it are used in the *feminine* if placed *before*, in the *masculine* if placed *after* :

D'**heureuses gens**. }

Des **gens heureux**. }

Happy people.

Tous, however, is used in the masculine even when it precedes **gens**, unless another adjective with a distinct form for the feminine comes after **tous** :

Tous les gens qui . . .

All the people who . . .

Tous les **jeunes gens**.

All young people.

But **Toutes** les **vieilles gens**.

All old people.

Obs. 1. **Gens**, feminine in Old French in virtue of its derivation, became masculine by syllepsis when it took the meaning of *folks, men*. Hence the present variations in its gender.

Obs. 2. In the sense of *nations*, **gens** is feminine, but it is only used in the expression—

Le droit des gens.

The law of nations.

§ 49. **Chose** (= *thing*) is feminine, according to its derivation (*L. causam*), but **quelque chose**, used as an indefinite pronoun in the sense of *something, anything*, is masculine :

Quelque chose de bon.

Something good.

[Notice that **chose** remains feminine in the locution **quelque chose que** (= *whatever thing, whatever*) :

Quelque chose qu'il ait faite.

Whatever thing he may have done.]

Likewise **personne** is feminine, according to its derivation (L. *personam*), when used as a *noun*, meaning *a person*; but it is generally masculine when used as an *indefinite pronoun* in the sense of *nobody, anybody*:

La même personne.	<i>The same person.</i>
<i>But</i> Personne n'est parfait.	<i>No one is perfect.</i>

§ 50. **Couple** is feminine when it merely means *two*:

Une couple d'œufs, de pommes, <i>etc.</i>	<i>Two eggs, two apples, etc.</i>
---	-----------------------------------

But it is masculine when it denotes the male and female, or two persons united by friendship, interest, etc.:

Un couple de perdrix.	<i>A brace of partridges (male and female).</i>
Un couple d'amis.	<i>A couple of friends.</i>
Un heureux couple.	<i>A happy couple.</i>

§ 51. **Foudre** (= *lightning, thunderbolt*, from L. *fulgura*, plur. of *fulgur*), is generally feminine:

Il fut frappé de la foudre ,	<i>He was struck by lightning,</i>
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

but sometimes masculine in lofty style and in poetry:

Le foudre vengeur.	<i>The avenging thunderbolt.</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------------

In a figurative sense it is either masculine or feminine, except in the two expressions—

Un foudre d'éloquence,	<i>a great orator,</i>
Un foudre de guerre,	<i>a mighty warrior,</i>

in which it is always masculine.

It is always masculine, also, when denoting *Jupiter's thunderbolt*:

Un foudre ailé.	<i>A winged thunderbolt.</i>
------------------------	------------------------------

Obs. **Foudre** (= *wine-butt*), from Germ. *Fuder*, is masculine.

§ 52. **Merci** (= *mercy*), from L. *mercedem*, is feminine:

À la merci des flots.	<i>At the mercy of the waves.</i>
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

It has, however, become masculine in the sense of *thank ye*:

Cela vaut un grand merci .	<i>That deserves a thankee.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

Obs. **Grand**, which in Old French had only one form for both genders, was really feminine in that expression, but the grammarians of the sixteenth century thought it was masculine; hence the double gender of **merci**. Cf. **grand'mère**, etc. [*Syntax*, § 31 (b).]

§ 53. Œuvre (=work) is generally feminine—

Une bonne œuvre,	<i>A good work,</i>
Les œuvres complètes de Boileau,	<i>Boileau's complete works,</i>

though sometimes masculine in lofty style and in poetry.

It is always masculine—

(1) When it denotes the collection of the works of an engraver or a composer :

Tout l'œuvre de Mozart.	<i>All the works of Mozart.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------------

(2) When it refers to one of the works of a composer, and is followed by a number to show its chronological order :

L'œuvre 10 de Mozart est fort beau.	<i>Mozart's Op. 10 is very fine.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

(3) As a term of alchemy :

Le grand œuvre.	<i>The philosopher's stone.</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------

(4) As a term of masonry :

Le gros œuvre.	<i>The main walls.</i>
----------------	------------------------

(5) As a term of metallurgy, in the sense of *lead containing silver*.

Obs. When feminine, œuvre comes from *L. operam* : when masculine, probably from *L. opere*, abl. of *opus*.

§ 54. Several feminine nouns, used adjectively to express colour, become masculine when used as nouns for the same purpose, being then looked upon as adjectives accidentally playing the part of nouns. Such are—

FEMININE.

Amaranthe	<i>amaranth.</i>
Cerise	<i>cherry.</i>
Jonquille	<i>jonquil.</i>
Mauve	<i>marsh-mallow.</i>
Noisette	<i>nut.</i>
Orange	<i>orange.</i>
Paille	<i>straw.</i>
Pourpre	<i>purple.</i>

MASCULINE.

<i>amaranth-colour.</i>
<i>cherry-colour.</i>
<i>jonquil-colour.</i>
<i>mauve-colour.</i>
<i>nut-brown.</i>
<i>orange-colour.</i>
<i>straw-colour.</i>
<i>purple colour, etc.</i>

under gender by meaning.

§ 55. Several feminine nouns, especially names of countries, become masculine when used to denote products or manufactured articles, as—

FEMININE.

La Bourgogne	<i>Burgundy.</i>
La Brie	<i>Brie.</i>
La Champagne	<i>Champagne</i>
La Havane	<i>Havana.</i>
La Jamaïque	<i>Jamaica.</i>
La jujube	<i>the jujube.</i>
La loutre	<i>the otter.</i>
Terre-neuve	<i>Newfoundland.</i>
La Virginie	<i>Virginia.</i>

MASCULINE.

Du bourgogne	<i>Burgundy-wine.</i>
Du brie	<i>Brie cheese.</i>
Du champagne	<i>champagne (wine).</i>
Un havane	<i>a Havana cigar.</i>
Du jamaïque	<i>Jamaica rum.</i>
Du jujube	<i>jujube juice.</i>
Le loutre	<i>the otter-skin cap.</i>
Un terre-neuve	<i>a Newfoundland dog.</i>
Du Virginie	<i>Virginia tobacco, etc.</i>

§ 56. Many nouns are masculine when denoting a person, feminine when denoting an action or an object, as—

MASCULINE.

Aide	<i>helper (masc. or fem.).</i>
Basque	<i>Basque (masc. or fem.).</i>
Cornette	<i>standard-bearer (formerly)</i>
Cravate	<i>Croatian horse; light horseman.</i>
✓ Critique	<i>critic.</i>
Custode	<i>warden (of a convent).</i>
✓ Élève	<i>pupil (masc. or fem.).</i>
✓ Enseigne	<i>ensign (officer).</i>
Faune	<i>faun.</i>
Fourbe	<i>knave.</i>
Garde	<i>guard (soldier); keeper (masc. or fem.).</i>
✓ Guide	<i>guide.</i>
Lévite	<i>Levite.</i>
Manceuvre	<i>workman, labourer</i>
Paillasse	<i>clown.</i>
Pantomime	<i>actor (in a pantomime).</i>
Podagre	<i>gouty person (masc. or fem.).</i>
Politique	<i>politician.</i>
Pupille	<i>ward (masc. or fem.).</i>
Statuaire	<i>statuary (artist).</i>
Teneur (de livres)	<i>book-keeper.</i>
Trompette	<i>trumpeter.</i>

FEMININE.

<i>help, assistance.</i>
<i>skirt of a coat.</i>
<i>standard (formerly); mob-cap.</i>
<i>raval.</i>
<i>criticism.</i>
<i>pyx, curtain.</i>
<i>breeding (of cattle).</i>
<i>ensign (colour); sign-board.</i>
<i>fauna.</i>
<i>knavery, imposture.</i>
<i>body of troops; watch; hill.</i>
<i>rein.</i>
<i>overcoat (little used).</i>
<i>working, manœuvre.</i>
<i>straw-mattress.</i>
<i>pantomime.</i>
<i>gout in the feet.</i>
<i>politics; policy.</i>
<i>pupil of the eye.</i>
<i>statuary (art).</i>
<i>tenor, purport.</i>
<i>trumpet.</i>

§ 57. The following nouns have also a different meaning in the masculine and feminine—

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Aigle	<i>eagle; man of genius.</i>	Aigle	<i>female eagle; standard.</i>
Aune (L. alnum)	<i>alder-tree.</i>	Aune (L. ulnam)	<i>ell.</i>
Barbe	<i>barb, Barbary horse.</i>	Barbe (L. barbam)	<i>beard.</i>
Barde (L. bardum)	<i>bard, poet.</i>	Barde (etym. doubtful)	<i>armour for a horse, barbe; thin slice of bacon.</i>
Braque (Germ. brack)	<i>brach-hound; mail-cap.</i>	Braque (etym. doubtful)	<i>crab's claw.</i>
Capre (D. kaper)	<i>corsair's ship.</i>	Câpre (L. capparem)	<i>caper (bot.).</i>
Carpe (Gr. καρπών)	<i>wrist (anat.).</i>	Carpe (L. carpam)	<i>carp.</i>
Cartouche	<i>cartouch (archit.).</i>	Cartouche	<i>cartridge.</i>
Claque	<i>opera-hat</i>	Claque	<i>slap; claque (theat.).</i>
Coche (prob. L. concham)	<i>{ stage-coach. tow-barge (formerly).</i>	Coche (etym. doubtful)	<i>sow; notch.</i>
Crêpe	<i>crape.</i>	Crêpe	<i>pancake.</i>
Espace	<i>space.</i>	Espace	<i>space (in printing).</i>
Exemple	<i>example.</i>	Exemple	<i>copy (in copy-books).</i>
Faux (L. falsum)	<i>forgery.</i>	Faux (L. falcem)	<i>scythe.</i>
Fin (L. finitum)	<i>main point.</i>	Fin (L. finem)	<i>end.</i>
Geste	<i>gesture.</i>	Geste ¹	<i>old French poem.</i>
Givre (etym. doubtful)	<i>hoar-frost.</i>	Givre (L. viperam)	<i>serpent (in heraldry).</i>
Greffe	<i>record office in a court of law.</i>	Greffe	<i>graft.</i>
Interligne	<i>space between two lines.</i>	Interligne	<i>lead between two lines in printing.</i>
Laque	<i>lacker.</i>	Laque	<i>lac.</i>
Litre (G. λίτρα)	<i>litre</i>	Litre (L. l. listram)	<i>mourning hangings.</i>
Livre (L. librum)	<i>book.</i>	Livre (L. libram)	<i>pound; franc.</i>
Manche (L. manicum)	<i>handle.</i>	Manche (L. manicam)	<i>sleeve. — Notice la Manche, the English Channel.</i>
Masque	<i>mask.</i>	Masque	<i>imp, hypocrite.</i>
Mémoire	<i>memorandum; memoir; bill.</i>	Mémoire	<i>memory.</i>
Mode	<i>mood; manner.</i>	Mode	<i>fashion.</i>
Mort (L. mortuum)	<i>dead man.</i>	Mort (L. mortem)	<i>death.</i>
Moufle (etym. doubtful)	<i>muffle (vessel used in chem.).</i>	Moufle	<i>sort of glove.</i>

¹ The plural **gestes** (= *exploits* in Old French) is still used in—

MASCULINE.

Moule (L. modulum)	<i>mould.</i>
Mousse (Ital. mozzo)	<i>cabin-boy.</i>
Office (L. officium)	<i>office, service.</i>
Ombre	<i>umbra (fish).</i>
Page (prob. from G. παῖδιον)	<i>page.</i>
Palme (L. palmum)	<i>handbreadth.</i>
Parallèle	<i>parallel; comparison.</i>
Pendule	<i>pendulum.</i>
Période	<i>highest pitch.</i>
Physique	<i>physique; natural constitution.</i>
Pique	<i>spade (at cards).</i>
Pivoine	<i>bullfinch.</i>
Platine	<i>platinum.</i>
Poêle (L. pensile)	<i>stove.</i>
Poêle (prob. L. L. petalum)	<i>pall. }</i>
Poste (L. positum)	<i>post; place; office.</i>
Prétexte (L. prætextum)	<i>pretext.</i>
Quadrille	<i>quadrille.</i>
Réclame	<i>call (hawking).</i>
Régliſſe	<i>liquorice.</i>
Relâche	<i>relaxation; respite; no performance (theat.).</i>
Remise	<i>sort of hackney carriage.</i>
Solde (L. solidum)	<i>balance of account.</i>
Somme (L. somnum)	<i>nap, sleep.</i>
Souris (L. subrisum)	<i>smile (poet.).</i>
Tour (L. tornum)	<i>turn, trick, trip, lathe.</i>
Triomphe	<i>triumph.</i>
Vague	<i>vagueness.</i>
Vapeur	<i>steamer.</i>
Vase (L. vas)	<i>vase.</i>
Voile (L. velum)	<i>veil.</i>

FEMININE.

Moule (L. musculum)	<i>mussel.</i>
Mousse (Germ. Moos)	<i>moss.</i>
Office (L. officia)	<i>pantry, larder, etc.</i>
Ombre	<i>shade, shadow.</i>
Page (L. paginam)	<i>page (of a book).</i>
Palme (L. palmam)	<i>palm, palm-tree.</i>
Parallèle	<i>parallel line; trench.</i>
Pendule	<i>timepiece.</i>
Période	<i>period, epoch.</i>
Physique	<i>physics.</i>
Pique	<i>pike.</i>
Pivoine	<i>peony.</i>
Platine	<i>screw-plate; platen.</i>
Poêle (patellam)	<i>frying-pan.</i>
Poste (L. positam)	<i>post-office; stage-post.</i>
Prétexte (L. prætextam)	<i>prætexta.</i>
Quadrille	<i>horses for a tournament.</i>
Réclame	<i>catch-word (printing); puff.</i>
Régliſſe	<i>liquorice plant.</i>
Relâche	<i>putting into port, harbour.</i>
Remise	<i>coach-house; remittance; remission; discount; delay.</i>
Solde (L. solidam)	<i>soldiers' pay.</i>
Somme (L. summam)	<i>sum.</i>
Souris (L. soricem)	<i>mouse.</i>
Tour (L. turrim)	<i>tower.</i>
Triomphe	<i>trump; kind of game at cards.</i>
Vague	<i>wave.</i>
Vapeur	<i>steam, vapour.</i>
Vase (A. S. vase)	<i>slime, mud.</i>
Voile (L. vela)	<i>sail.</i>

B.—FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF NOUNS.

§ 58. GENERAL RULE.—Masculine nouns referring to persons and animals, and not ending in *e* mute, which are not specified below, may be made feminine by the addition of an *e* mute ; as,

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
?	Ami, <i>friend</i>	amie.
?	Confident, <i>confidant</i>	confidente.
?	Filleul, <i>god-son</i>	filleule.
?	Lapin, <i>rabbit</i>	lapine.
?	Marquis, <i>marquess</i>	marquise.
?	Président, <i>president</i>	présidente, etc.

(This *e* comes from the *a* which was the sign of the feminine in Latin.)

Obs. Nouns ending in *-er* take a grave accent on the *e* of their last syllable before adding *e* mute :

	Étranger, <i>stranger</i>	étrangère.
?	Jardinier, <i>gardener</i>	jardinière, etc.

(The grave accent indicates the broad sound given to the *e*.)

SPECIAL RULES AND EXCEPTIONS.—

§ 59. (1) NOUNS FORMING THEIR FEMININE BY ADDING *-sse* (or *-esse*).

The following nouns add *-sse* (or *-esse*) to the masculine :

Abbé, <i>abbot</i>	abbesse.
Âne, <i>ass</i>	ânesse.
Chanoine, <i>canon</i>	chanoinesse.
Comte, <i>count</i>	comtesse.
Diable, <i>devil</i>	diabliesse.
Drôle, <i>camp</i>	drôlesse.
Druide, <i>druid</i>	druidesse.
Hôte, <i>host, guest</i>	hôtesse.
Larron, <i>thief</i>	larronnesse.
Maître, <i>master</i>	maîtresse.
Mulâtre, <i>mulatto</i>	mulâtresse (or mulâtre).
Nègre, <i>negro</i>	négresse.

MASCULINE.

Ogre, ogre
Pair, peer
Pauvre, pauper
Prêtre, priest
Prince, prince
Prophète, prophet
Suisse, Swiss
Tigre, tiger
Traître, traitor

FEMININE.

ogresse.
païresse.
pauvresse.
prêtresse.
princesse.
prophétesse.
Suissesse.
tigresse.
traïtesse. ¹

(This termination -esse comes from L. -issam—abbesse, L. abbatissam.)

Obs. 1. The *é* of *abbé*, which was preserved in the old feminine *abbéesse*, has disappeared in the modern form.

Obs. 2. The accent, which is grave in *nègre* and *prophète*, is acute in *négresse* and *prophétesse*, because the following *e* is no longer mute as in the masculine.

Obs. 3. *Diable*, used adjectively with *de* and a noun, often remains unaltered in the feminine.

Obs. 4. *Drôle*, *mulâtre*, *nègre*, *pauvre*, and *suisse* always remain unaltered in the feminine when used adjectively, *suisse* being, of course, spelt without a capital.

Obs. 5. *Larron*, ending in -on, doubles the *n* before adding -esse (see § 63). *Patron*, fem. *patronne*, has also the form *patronnesse*, in the sense of *lady patroness*.

Obs. 6. Notice also—

Diacon (O.F. <i>diacne</i> , L. <i>diaconum</i>), <i>diacon</i>	{ <i>diaconesse</i> <i>diaconisse</i> }	(L. <i>diaconissam</i>).
Dieu (O.F. <i>deu</i> , L. <i>deum</i>), <i>god</i>	<i>déesse</i> (O.F. <i>deuesse</i>).	
Duc (L. <i>ducem</i>), <i>duke</i>	<i>duchesse</i> .	

nègre + prophète

§ 60. (2) NOUNS ENDING IN -eur IN THE MASCULINE.

Nouns ending in -eur in the masculine may be divided into *five* classes.

[a] The following form their feminine by adding *e* mute :

Inférieur, inferior	inférieure.
Mineur, minor	mineure.
Prieur, prior	prieure.
Supérieur, superior	supérieure.

¹ The feminine *maïresse*, *mayor's wife*, from *maire*, *mayor*, is only used jocularly.

[b] Those derived from a Present Participle, *i.e.* by far the greater part of nouns in **-eur**, form, as a rule, their feminine in **-euse** (L. *-osam*); as,

Buveur, <i>drinker</i>	buveuse.
Danseur, <i>dancer</i>	danseuse.
Marcheur, <i>walker</i>	marcheuse.
Travailleur, <i>worker</i>	travailleuse, etc.

See, however, [d].

[c] Those in **-teur** which are not derived from a Present Participle form, as a rule, their feminine in **-trice** (L. *-tricem*); as,

Acteur, <i>actor</i>	actrice.
Approbateur, <i>approver</i>	approbatrice.
Conducteur, <i>conductor, guide</i>	conductrice.
Donateur, <i>donor</i>	donatrice.
Imitateur, <i>imitator</i>	imitatrice.
Persécuteur, <i>persecutor</i>	persécutrice, etc.

Notice also—

?	Ambassadeur, <i>ambassador</i>	ambassadrice (by analogy).
?	Chanteur, <i>singer</i>	{ chanteuse (French formation), <i>amateur singer</i> .
		{ cantatrice (L. <i>cantatricem</i>), <i>professional singer</i> .
?	Débiteur, { <i>retailer</i>	débiteuse (French formation).
	{ <i>debtor</i>	débitrice (L. <i>debitricem</i>).
?	Empereur, <i>emperor</i>	impératrice (L. <i>imperatricem</i>).
?	Procureur, { <i>attorney</i>	procureuse (French formation).
	{ <i>proxy</i>	procuratrice (L. <i>procuratricem</i>).

[d] The following change **-eur** into **-eresse**, the oldest form of the feminine for nouns in **-eur**:

?	Bailleur, ¹ <i>lessor</i>	bailleresse.
?	Chasseur, <i>hunter</i>	{ chasseresse (in poetical style).
		{ chasseuse (in ordinary style).
?	Défendeur, <i>defendant</i> (Law)	défenderesse.
?	Demandeur { <i>plaintiff</i> (Law)	demanderesse.
	{ <i>asker, beggar</i>	demandeuse.
?	Enchanteur, <i>enchanter</i>	enchanteresse.
?	Pêcheur, ² <i>sinner</i>	pêcheresse.
?	Vendeur, <i>seller</i>	{ venderesse (Law).
		{ vendeuse (in general).
?	Vengeur, <i>avenger</i>	vengeresse.

(The termination **-eur** is shortened by the dropping of the *u*, because the tonic accent no longer lies on it in the feminine.)

¹ **Bâilleur** (with a circumflex accent), *yawner*, makes **bâilleuse** according to [b].

² **Pêcheur** (with a circumflex accent), *fisherman*, makes **pêcheuse**.

Obs. 1. **Devineresse**, the feminine of **devineur**, *soothsayer*, is also used as feminine of **devin** (same sense), instead of **devine**, which is becoming obsolete.

Devineuse is generally used in the sense of *guesser*, but it is also found instead of **devineresse**, meaning *soothsayer*.

Obs. 2. Notice also **doge** (= *doge*), fem. **dogaresse** (Ital. *dogaresa*).

[e] Lastly, two nouns in **-eur** borrow their feminine from words in **-ant**:

Gouverneur, *governor*

gouvernante, *governor's wife, governess.*

Serviteur, *servant*

servante.

§ 61. (3) NOUNS ENDING IN **f** IN THE MASCULINE.

Nouns ending in **f** change **f** into **-ve**:

Captif, *captive*

captive.

Juif, *Jew*

Juive.

Veuf, *widower*

veuve, etc.

(The Latin **v**, which changes into **f** at the end of a word, persists in French before a vowel: cf. **œuf** (= *egg*), from *ovum*, and **mauve** (= *marsh-mallow*), from *malvam*.)

Notice also—

Bailli (O.F. *baillif*), *bailif*

bailive.

§ 62. (4) NOUNS ENDING IN **x** IN THE MASCULINE.

Nouns ending in **x** change **x** into **-se** (= L. *-sam*):

Boiteux, *cripple*

boiteuse.

Époux, *spouse, husband*

épouse.

Jaloux, *jealous man*

jalouse.

Peureux, *coward*

peureuse, etc.

§ 63. (5) NOUNS DOUBLING THE FINAL CONSONANT.

Nouns ending in **-el**, **-en**, **-et**, **-on**, **-ot**, double, as a rule, the final consonant before adding *e* mute:

Gabriel, *Gabriel*

Gabrielle.

Mortel, *mortal*

mortelle.

Chien, *dog*

chienne.

Païen, *heathen*

païenne.

Muet, *dumb man*

muette.

Poulet, *chicken*

poulette.

Lion, *lion*

lionne.

Quarteron, *quadroon*

quarteronne.

Linot, *linnet*

linotte.

Sot, *fool*

sotte, etc.

Notice also—

Jean, <i>John</i>	Jeanne.
Paysan, <i>countryman, peasant</i>	paysanne.
Chat, <i>cat</i>	chatte.

EXCEPTIONS.—The chief exceptions are—

[a] A few adjectives used substantively :

Indiscret, <i>indiscreet man, tattler</i>	indiscrète (see § 105 (b)).
Bigot	{ bigote. cagote.
Cagot (a real noun) } <i>bigot</i>	
Dévolt, <i>devout man</i>	dévôte.
Idiot, <i>idiot</i>	idiote.

[b] A few nouns the feminine of which is shorter than the masculine (see § 64).

§ 64. (6) NOUNS SHORTER IN THE FEMININE THAN IN THE MASCULINE.

The feminine forms corresponding to the following nouns are shorter than the masculine—

[a] Masc. ending in -ard :

Canard, <i>drake, duck</i>	cane.
Vieillard, <i>old man</i>	vieille.

[b] Masc. ending in -eau :

Manteau, <i>cloak</i>	mante (<i>lady's mantle</i>).
Taureau, <i>bull</i>	taure (little used).

[c] Masc. ending in -et :

Mulet, <i>mule</i>	mule.
--------------------	-------

[d] Masc. ending in -ier :

Nourricier, <i>foster-father</i>	nourrice (<i>nurse</i>).
----------------------------------	----------------------------

[e] Masc. ending in -on :

Caneton, <i>duckling</i>	canette.
Chiffon, <i>rag</i>	chiffe (little used).
Cochon, <i>pig</i>	coche.
Compagnon, <i>companion</i>	compagne.
Dindon, <i>turkey</i>	dinde.

(These feminines do not come from the present masculine forms, but generally from old masculines which have become obsolete.)

§ 65.

(7) VARIOUS IRREGULARITIES.

[a] Femin. in **-elle** from masc. in **-eau** (O.F. *ei*):

Beau, <i>beau</i>	belle.
Chameau, <i>camel</i>	chamelle.
Damoiseau, <i>fop</i> (formerly <i>page</i>)	damoiselle, <i>damsel</i> (obsolete).
Jeuvenceau, <i>lad, stripling</i>	jouvencelle (little used).
Jumeau, <i>twin</i>	jumelle.
Pastoureau, <i>shepherd-boy</i>	pastourelle (little used).

[b] Femin. in **-ine**:

Czar, <i>tzar, czar</i>	czarine, tzarine.
Héros, <i>hero</i>	héroïne (L. heroinam).
Philippe, <i>Philip</i>	Philippine.

[c] Notice also—

Cheval, <i>horse</i>	cavale.
Chevrenil, <i>roe-buck</i>	chevrette.
Daim (pronounce <i>dain</i>), <i>fallow-deer</i>	daine.
Fils, <i>son</i>	fille (L. filiam).
Lévrier, <i>greyhound</i>	levrette.
Loup, ¹ <i>wolf</i>	louve.
Neveu, ² <i>nephew</i>	nièce.
Poulain, <i>colt</i>	pguliche.
Roi, <i>king</i>	reine (L. reginam).

§ 66.

(8) NOUNS HAVING ALTOGETHER DISTINCT FORMS FOR THE MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

Bélier (prob. derived from L.L. bellam=a bell), <i>ram</i>	brebis (O.F. berbis, L.L. berbicem).
Bœuf (L. bovem), <i>ox</i>	vache (L. vaccam).
Bouc (prob. from Celt. boc), <i>he-goat</i>	chèvre (L. capram).
Cerf (L. cervum) <i>stag</i>	biche (etym. doubtful).
Chapon (L. caponem), <i>capon</i>	poularde (from <i>poule</i>), <i>fat pullet</i> .
Coq (L.L. coccum), <i>cock</i>	poule (L. pullam).
Étalon (L.L. stallum=stable), <i>stallion</i>	jument (L. jumentum).
Frère (L. fratrem), <i>brother</i>	sœur (L. sororem).
Garçon (etym. doubtful), <i>boy</i>	fille (L. filiam).
Gendre (L. generum), <i>son-in-law</i>	bru (O.G. brut; cf. Eng. bride).
Homme (L. hominem), <i>man</i>	femme (L. feminam).
Jars (etym. doubtful), <i>gander</i>	oie (L.L. aucam for avicam).

¹ For the change of L. *lupam* into *louve*, cf. *ripam*, *rive*.² For the change of L.L. *neptiam* into *nièce*, cf. *tertiā*, *tierce* (§ 106).

Lièvre (L. leporem), *hare*
 Mari (L. maritum), *husband*
 Monsieur (*sieur* comes from L. seniore), *mister, sir*
 Oncle (L. avunculum), *uncle*
 Papa (onomat.), *papa*
 Parrain (L.L. patrinum), *godfather*
 Père (L. patrem), *father*
 Perroquet (Ital. perrochetto), *parrot*
 Pore (L. porcum), *pig*
 Verrat (fr. O.F. ver, L. verrem), *boar*
 Sanglier (L. singulare), *wild-boar*
 Singe (L. simium), *monkey*
 Taureau (L.L. taurellum), *bull*

hase (G. hase).
 femme.
 madame (*dame* comes from L. dominam).
 tante (O.F. ante, L. amitam).
 maman (onomat.).
 marraine (L.L. matrinam).
 mère (L. matrem).
 perruche (prob. fr. Ital. parruca).
 } truie (L.L. trojam).
 laie (etym. doubtful).
 guenon (etym. doubtful).
 génisse (L. junicem).

§ 67. (9) NOUNS WHICH ARE COMMON.

Several nouns, most of which end in *e* mute, are common ; as,

Aide, helper, assistant.	Enfant, ¹ child.
Artiste, artist.	Esclave, slave.
Buraliste, office-keeper.	Locataire, tenant.
Camarade, comrade.	Pensionnaire, boarder.
Compatriote, countryman, countrywoman.	Propriétaire, owner, landlord, landlady.
Élève, pupil.	Pupille, ward, etc.

Thus also most adjectives in *e* mute used substantively ; as,

Hypocrite, hypocrite.	Rebelle, rebel.
Malade, patient, sick person.	Royaliste, royalist, etc.

§ 68. (10) NOUNS WHICH CANNOT BE USED IN THE FEMININE.

[a] Most nouns denoting professions generally carried on by men preserve their masculine form, even when applied to women ; as,

Auteur, author.	Géomètre, geometer.
Avocat, ² barrister.	Imprimeur, printer.
Compositeur, composer.	Médecin, physician.
Dessinateur, draughtsman.	Orateur, orator.
Docteur, doctor.	Peintre, painter.
Écrivain, writer.	Poète, ³ poet.
Émissaire, emissary.	Professeur, professor, teacher.
Graveur, engraver.	Sculpteur, sculptor, etc.

¹ *Enfant* is always masculine in the plural.

² *Avocat* is used in the sense of *intercessor, mediator*

³ The feminine *poétesse* is rare.

Notice also—

Adversaire, *adversary.*

Agresseur, *aggressor.*

Angé, *angel.*

Défenseur, *defender.*

Imposteur, *impostor.*

Oppresseur, *oppressor.*

Possesseur, *possessor.*

Témoin, *witness.*

Transgresseur, *transgressor.*

Vainqueur, *conqueror, etc.*

[b] Many names of living beings, having no distinct form to express the sex, are always used in the masculine ;¹ as,

Bouvreuil, *bullfinch.*

Castor, *beaver.*

Éléphant, *elephant.*

Hibou, *owl.*

Jaguar, *jaguar.*

Léopard, *leopard.*

Moucheron, *gnat.*

Oiseau, *bird.*

Papillon, *butterfly.*

Renne, *reindeer, etc.*

Obs. 1. It stands to reason that the articles, adjectives, and past participles referring to such masculine nouns must be used in the masculine :

Cette femme est **un** écrivain
distingué.

This woman is a distinguished writer.

Obs. 2. Whenever the name of an animal has one form only for both genders, **mâle** or **femelle** must be added to it if the sex is to be specified :

Un éléphant **mâle**.

Un éléphant **femelle**.

C.—PLURAL OF NOUNS.

I.—Plural of Ordinary Simple Nouns.

§ 69. GENERAL RULE.—Most nouns form their plural by adding an **s** to the singular ; as,

SINGULAR.
Maison, *house*
Ville, *town*
Fleur, *flower*
Jardin, *garden*

PLURAL.
maisons, *houses.*
villes, *towns.*
fleurs, *flowers.*
jardins, *gardens.*

¹ Others, on the contrary, are always used in the feminine ; as,

Alouette, *lark.*
Baleine, *whale.*
Carpe, *carp.*
Fourmi, *ant*

Girafe, *giraffe.*
Panthère, *panther.*
Souris, *mouse.*
Tortue, *tortoise, etc.*

Obs. The six cases of the Latin declension having been gradually reduced to one—the accusative—in Old French, and the Latin accusative ending most often with an *s* in the plural, and not in the singular, the *s* naturally became the sign of the plural :

	LATIN.	FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
SINGULAR,	campum	champ	<i>field.</i>
PLURAL,	campos	champs	<i>fields.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.—

§ 70. (1) NOUNS WHICH REMAIN UNCHANGED IN THE PLURAL.

[a] Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* ; as,

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Fils, <i>son</i>	fils , <i>sons.</i>
Croix, <i>cross</i>	croix , <i>crosses.</i>
Gaz, <i>gas</i>	gaz , <i>gases.</i>

Obs. Several of these nouns come from a Latin nominative : *fils* from *filius*, *puits* from *puteus*, etc. *Gaz*, a word created by Van Helmont in the 16th century, most likely comes from the Flemish *geest* (= *spirit*).

[b] Adverbs, cardinal adjectives, and all invariable parts of speech accidentally used as nouns :

Les oui et les non .	<i>The ayes and noes.</i>
Les si et les mais .	<i>The ifs and buts.</i>
Vos pourquoi ne finissent pas.	<i>There is no end to your questions.</i>
Deux un et trois quatre .	<i>Two ones and three fours.</i>

Likewise the letters of the alphabet and the names of the notes in music :

Des e mal écrits.	<i>Badly written e's.</i>
Des mi faux.	<i>Mi's out of tune.</i>

§ 71. (2) NOUNS ADDING AN *x* TO THE SINGULAR.

[a] Nouns ending in *-au*, *-eu*, *-œu* ; as,

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Joyau, <i>jewel</i>	joyaux , <i>jewels.</i>
Ruisseau, <i>brook</i>	ruisseaux , <i>brooks.</i>
Jeu, <i>game</i>	jeux , <i>games.</i>
Vœu, <i>vow, wish</i>	vœux , <i>vows, wishes.</i>

Except the following two, which form their plural regularly :

Bleu, <i>blue</i>	bleus , <i>blues.</i>
Landau, <i>landau</i>	landaus , <i>landaus.</i>

[b] Seven nouns in -ou :

SINGULAR.

Bijou, *jewel*
 Caillou, *pebble*
 Chou, *cabbage*
 Genou, *knee*
 Hibou, *owl*
 Joujou, *plaything*
 Pou, *louse*

PLURAL

bijoux, *jewels*.
 cailloux, *pebbles*.
 choux, *cabbages*.
 genoux, *knees*.
 hiboux, *owls*.
 joujoux, *playthings*.
 poux, *lice*.

Obs. These exceptions come from the fact that, in Old French, *s*, *x*, and *z* were used indifferently. Other nouns in -ou are regular : trou (= *hole*), trous (= *holes*), etc.

§ 72.

(3) NOUNS CHANGING -al INTO -aux.

Nouns in -al change -al into -aux.

SINGULAR.

Cheval, *horse*
 Général, *general*
 Journal, *newspaper*

PLURAL.

chevaux, *horses*.
 généraux, *generals*.
 journaux, *newspapers*.

Except the following, which add an *s* to the singular—

Aval, *endorsement*
 Bal, *ball*
 Carnaval, *carnival*
 Chacal, *jackal*
 Régat, *treat*

avals, *endorsements*,
 bals, *balls*,
 carnavals, *carnivals*,
 chacals, *jackals*,
 régals, *treats*,

and a few others, less known:

Bancal, *bandy-legged person*
 Cal, *callosity*
 Cantal, *Cantal cheese*
 Caracal, *caracal* (sort of lynx)
 Narval, *narwhal* (sea-unicorn)
 Nopal, *nopal* (sort of cactus)
 Serval, *serval* (sort of cat)

bancals, *bandy-legged persons*
 cals, *callosities*.
 cantals, *Cantal cheeses*.
 caracals, *caracals*.
 narvals, *narwhals*.
 nopals, *nopals*.
 servals, *servals*.

Obs. The plurals in -aux are easily accounted for by the ordinary change of *l* into *u* before a consonant (cf. *autre* from *L. alter*) and the frequent use of *x* instead of *s* in Old French [see § 71, *Obs*].

§ 73. (4) NOUNS CHANGING *-ail* into *-aux*.

For the same reasons the following nouns in *-ail* change *-ail* into *-aux* :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Bail, <i>lease</i>	baux, <i>leases</i> .
Corail, <i>coral</i>	coraux, <i>corals</i> .
Émail, <i>enamel</i>	émaux, <i>enamels</i> .
Soupirail, <i>air-hole</i>	soupiraux, <i>air-holes</i> .
Travail, ¹ <i>work</i>	travaux, <i>works</i> .
Vantail, <i>folding-door, leaf</i>	vantaux, <i>folding-doors, leaves</i> .
Ventail, <i>ventail</i> ²	ventaux, <i>ventails</i> .
Vitrail, <i>stained glass window</i>	vitreaux, <i>stained glass windows</i> .

Other nouns in *-ail* form their plural regularly : éventail (= *fan*), éventails, etc.

Bestiaux (= *cattle*) is, however, considered by some grammarians as the irregular plural of *bétail* (same sense).

§ 74. (5) NOUN IN *-ent* DROPPING THE *t* BEFORE ADDING *s*.

Gent (= *race, tribe*) makes in the plural gens (= *people, folks*, etc.). [See § 48].

Obs. Some grammarians and the *Revue des Deux Mondes* drop the *t* in polysyllabic nouns ending in *-ant* or *-ent*, but this spelling is not recognised by the French Academy.

§ 75. (6) NOUNS HAVING TWO FORMS IN THE PLURAL.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
— Aïeul, <i>grandfather</i>	{ aïeuls, <i>grandfathers</i> . aïeux, <i>ancestors</i> .
Ail, <i>garlic</i>	{ ails, <i>various species of garlic</i> (botanical term). aulx, <i>heads of garlic</i> (ordinary plural).
Appât, <i>bait</i>	{ appâts, <i>baits</i> . appas, <i>charms</i> .
— Ciel, <i>sky, heaven</i> , etc.	{ ciels, <i>skies in pictures, climates</i> ; also ciels de lit, <i>bed-testers</i> ; ciels de carrière, <i>quarry roofs</i> . cieux, <i>heavens, skies</i> .

[Continued on next page.]

¹ Travail has also a regular plural with a different meaning (see § 75).

² The part of the helmet intended for breathing.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

— Œil, *eye, hole* (of bread, cheese, etc.)

Pal, *pale, stake*

— Travail { *work, report of a minister,*
brake for shoeing vicious
*horses*¹ }

{ œils (in compounds; as, œils-de-bœuf, *oval windows*; œils-de-chat, *agates*; œils-de-chèvre, *wild parsnips*; œils-de-perdrix, *soft corns*).

yeux, *eyes, holes* (of bread, etc.).

{ pals } = *pales, stakes*.
 { paux }

travaux, *reports, brakes*.
 travaux, *works*.

§ 76. NOUNS ONLY USED IN THE SINGULAR.

In French, as in English, there are many nouns which can be used in the singular only. Most of them come under the following heads—

[a] Abstract nouns denoting a state or quality:

Astuce, *craft*.

Bonhomie, *good-nature*.

Égoïsme, *selfishness*.

Enthousiasme, *enthusiasm*.

Innocence, *innocence*.

Orgueil, *pride*.

Santé, *health*.

Sensibilité, *sensibility*.

Vieillesse, *old age*.

Zèle, *zeal, etc.*

Obs. 1. Several of these nouns, however, are found in the plural in poetry and in elevated style. A good many are so used even in ordinary conversation, but in the latter case they generally undergo some change in their meaning, most of them expressing an *action* instead of a *state* or *quality*:

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

La *bizarrierie*, *oddness*.

{ Il est sujet à de grandes
bizarrieres } He is given to strange
whims.

La *bonté*, *kindness*.

Vos *bontés* m'accablent. { Your kind attentions
 overwhelm me.

La *douceur*, *gentleness*.

Les *douceurs* de l'amitié. The sweets of friendship.

L'*imprudence*, *imprudence*.

On m'a dit vos *imprudences*. { I have been told of your
follies.

La *volonté*, *will*.

Il obéit à toutes mes *volontés*. He obeys all my wishes.

Obs. 2. Notice also the use of the plural in such instances as—

Ces deux *égoïsmes* sont bien
 différents.

Those two sorts of selfishness are very
 different.

[b] Adjectives used as abstract nouns:

Le beau, *the beautiful*.

Le sublime, *the sublime*.

Le grandiose, *grandeur*.

Le vrai, *truth, etc.*

¹ This is the etymological meaning of the word (L.L. *trabaculum*, fr. *trabem*).

[c] Names of metals :

Acier, *steel*.Argent, *silver*.Bronze, *bronze*.Cuivre, *copper*.Étain, *tin*.Fer, *iron*.Or, *gold*.Platine, *platinum*.Plomb, *lead*.Zinc, *zinc*, etc.

Obs. Many metals, however, are used in the plural when they are taken in a special sense, denoting works of art, marketable articles, etc.:

Voilà de beaux bronzes.

Here are beautiful bronzes.

Où sont vos cuivres?

Where are your copperplates?

On le chargea de fers.

He was loaded with chains.

Les plombs de Venise.

The leads of Venice.

[d] Names of the cardinal points :

Est, *east*.Ouest, *west*.Nord, *north*.Sud, *south*.

[e] A few infinitives accidentally used as nouns :

Le boire, *drinking*.Le dormir, *sleeping*.Le manger, *eating*.Le faire, *doing*, *style*.

Obs. Several infinitives, having become real nouns, may be used in the plural :

Les déjeuners, *the breakfasts*.Les devoirs, *the duties*.Les dîners, *the dinners*.Les pouvoirs, *the powers*, etc.

§ 77. NOUNS ONLY USED IN THE PLURAL.—*Vice versâ*, there are nouns which are only used in the plural. The following are the most important :—

Aborigènes	<i>aborigines.</i>	Environs	<i>environs.</i>
Aguets (être aux —)	<i>look-out (to be on the —).</i>	Épousailles	<i>wedding.</i>
alentours	<i>neighbourhood.</i>	Fiançailles	<i>betrothal.</i>
Annales	<i>annals, records.</i>	Fonts	<i>baptismal font.</i>
Archives	<i>archives, record-offices.</i>	Frais	<i>expense, costs (law)</i>
Armoiries	<i>coat of arms.</i>	Funérailles	<i>funeral.</i>
Arrérages	<i>arrears.</i>	Intestins	<i>entrails.</i>
Arrhes	<i>earnest-money.</i>	Mânes	<i>manes, ghost.</i>
Besicles	<i>spectacles.</i>	Matériaux	<i>materials.</i>
Broussailles ¹	<i>brushwood.</i>	Mathématiques	<i>mathematics.</i>
Catacombes	<i>catacombs.</i>	Mœurs	<i>manners, morals.</i>
Confins	<i>borders.</i>	Mouchettes	<i>snuffers.</i>
Décombres	<i>rubbish.</i>	Obsèques	<i>obsequies.</i>
Dépens	<i>cost, expense.</i>	Oreillons	<i>mumps.</i>
Entrailles	<i>entrails, bowels.</i>	Pénates	<i>penates.</i>
Entrefaites (sur ces —)	<i>meanwhile.</i>	Pierreries	<i>precious stones.</i>
		Pleurs	<i>tears.</i>

¹ The singular *broussaille* is sometimes met with.

Prémices	<i>first-fruits, beginning.</i>	Ténèbres	<i>darkness.</i>
Prémisses	<i>premises (logic).</i>	Thermes	<i>hot springs, baths.</i>
Proches	<i>relatives.</i>	Vêpres	<i>vespers.</i>
		Vivres	<i>vituals, provisions.</i>

§ 78. NOUNS HAVING A DIFFERENT MEANING IN THE SINGULAR AND IN THE PLURAL.—Lastly, there are nouns the meaning of which changes according as they are used in the singular or in the plural. The following list includes all those that need be known : ¹—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Aboi	<i>barking.</i>	Abois (aux —)	<i>at bay; at the last extremity.</i>
Arme	<i>weapon.</i>	Armes	<i>coat of arms.</i>
Arrêt	<i>sentence; decree; seizure.</i>	Arrêts	<i>arrest (military).</i>
Assise	<i>stratum, layer.</i>	Assises	<i>assizes.</i>
Chausse	<i>shoulder-knot.</i>	Chausses	<i>breeches.</i>
Ciseau	<i>chisel.</i>	Ciseaux	<i>scissors.</i>
Défense	<i>defence; prohibition.</i>	Défenses	<i>tusks.</i>
Denier	<i>farthing; mite.</i>	Deniers	<i>funds, money.</i>
Enfer	<i>hell</i>	Enfers	<i>infernal regions.</i>
Être	<i>being.</i>	Êtres	<i>parts of a house.</i>
Faste	<i>pomp.</i>	Fastes	<i>annals.</i>
Fer	<i>iron, sword.</i>	Fers	<i>fetters.</i>
Gage	<i>pledge, pawn.</i>	Gages	<i>wages.</i>
Harde	<i>herd (of stags); leash.</i>	Hardes	<i>clothes, wearing apparel.</i>
Lettre	<i>letter.</i>	Lettres	<i>literature.</i>
Limbe	<i>limb (of the moon).</i>	Limbes	<i>limbo, confines of hell.</i>
Litanie	<i>endless story.</i>	Litanies	<i>litanies.</i>
Lumière	<i>light.</i>	Lumières	<i>knowledge, wisdom.</i>
Lunette	<i>telescope.</i>	Lunettes	<i>spectacles.</i>
Neveu	<i>nephew.</i>	Neveux	<i>descendants.</i>
Ouïe	<i>hearing.</i>	Ouïes	<i>gills.</i>
Papier	<i>paper.</i>	Papiers	<i>passport.</i>
Poursuite	<i>pursuit.</i>	Poursuites	<i>prosecution (law).</i>
Pratique	<i>practice, etc.</i>	Pratiques	<i>observances (of piety), etc.</i>
Relief	<i>relief (art); set-off.</i>	Reliefs	<i>leavings, scraps.</i>
Troupe	<i>troop, band, herd, flock.</i>	Troupes	<i>troops, soldiers.</i>
Trousse	<i>truss; surgeon's case.</i>	Trousses (aux —de)	<i>breeches (obsol.) at the heels of.</i>
Vacance	<i>vacancy.</i>	Vacances	<i>vacations.</i>
Veille	<i>watch, vigil; eve.</i>	Veilles	<i>night labours.</i>

¹ The plural retains also, in most cases, the meaning of the singular.

II.—Plural of Nouns of Foreign Origin.

§ 79. The rule is that nouns of foreign origin only take the sign of the plural when they have been naturalised by frequent use; but this being somewhat vague, the following list, comprising the most important of those which are invariable, is given here for the sake of reference.

Obs. The words marked with a star may, according to some grammarians, take the sign of the plural.

FOREIGN WORDS WHICH DO NOT CHANGE IN THE PLURAL.

Adagio.*	Item.
Allegretto.*	In-folio.
Allegro.*	In-octavo.
Alleluia.*	In pace (= <i>prison</i>).
Amen.	In-quarto.
Andante.*	Interim.
Ave, ave Maria.	Kyrie, Kyrie eleison.
Concetti ¹ (= <i>conceit, affected wit</i>).	Lazzi * (= <i>jest</i>).
Confiteor.	Magnificat.
Credo.	Mezzo-termine (= <i>mean term, compromise</i>).
Crescendo.	Miserere.
Duplicata.*	Nota, nota bene.
Ecce homo.	Pater.
Errata.* ²	Post-scriptum.
Et cætera.	Quatuor.*
Exeat.*	Requiem.
Exequatur.	Stabat.
Ex-voto.	Statu quo.
Facsimile.	Te Deum.
Forte.	Vade mecum.
Forte-piano (obsolete).	Veto.
Ibidem.	
Idem.	

§ 80. Most of the above words may be classed under the following heads :—

(1) Names of prayers and hymns : *ave, pater, stabat.*

¹ **Concetti**, being etymologically a plural noun, ought not to be used in the singular.

² There is also the singular **erratum**, but the plural **errata** is not used. **Maximum, minimum**, make **maximums, minimums**, except in mathematics, when their plural is, as a rule, **maxima, minima**.

(2) Italian terms used for directions in music: **adagio, allegro, andante.**

(3) Latin adverbs used substantively: **idem, item, interim.**

(4) Compound words or phrases: **et cætera, in-quarto, nota bene.**

§ 81. Some Italian words have preserved their Italian form, both in the singular and in the plural, and consequently take no **s** :

Carbonaro	Carbonari.
Cicerone	Ciceroni.
Condottiere	Condottieri.
Dilettante	Dilettanti.
Lazzarone	Lazzaroni.
Libretto	Libretti.
Mezzo-soprano	Mezzo-soprani.
Quintetto	Quintetti.
Soprano	Soprani.

III.—Plural of Proper Names.

§ 82. GENERAL RULE.—Proper names of persons do not take the sign of the plural :

Les deux Corneille étaient poètes.	<i>The two Corneilles were poets.</i>
Les victoires des Turenne et des Luxembourg .	<i>The victories of Turenne and Luxembourg.</i>

(In the last example, the article *des* is used for the sake of emphasis.)

§ 83. EXCEPTIONS.—Proper names of persons take the sign of the plural—

(1) When they are used as common nouns, *i.e.* [*a*] to designate persons like those whose names are mentioned :

Les Molières sont rares.	<i>Men like Molière are rare.</i>
Un Auguste aisément peut faire des Virgiles .	<i>An Augustus can easily make poets like Virgil.</i>

[*b*] To designate the works (writings, paintings, etc.) of the person named :

Une collection d' Elzévir s.	<i>A collection of Elzevirs.</i>
Il y a deux Raphaëls dans ce musée.	<i>There are two Raphaels in that picture-gallery.</i>

Obs. Notice, however, that if the name of an author is used to designate his works, it only takes the mark of the plural, according to some

grammarians, when speaking of different editions, not of several copies of the same edition :

J'ai quatre **Homères** différents.
 But Combien d'**Homère** vous faut-il?

I have four different editions of Homer.
How many Homers do you want?

(2) When they refer to certain illustrious families, especially dynasties :

Les **Antonins**.

Les **Bourbons**.

Les **Capets**.

Les **Césars**.

Les **Condés**.

Les **Curiaces**.

Les **Gracques**.

Les **Guises**.

Les **Horaces**.

Les **Pharaons**.

Les **Scipions**.

Les **Stuarts**.

Les **Tarquins**, etc.

Judors.

Obs. Proper names of countries, islands, mountains, take the sign of the plural :

Les **Gaules**.

Les **Indes**.

Les **Hébrides**.

Les **Pyrénées**.

IV.—Plural of Compound Nouns.

(a) COMPOUND NOUNS WRITTEN IN ONE WORD.

§ 84. Compound nouns written in one word, *i.e.* without a hyphen, are treated as simple nouns, and, according to the general rule, take an *s* in the plural :

SINGULAR.

Chèvrefeuille, *honeysuckle*

Gendarme, *gendarme*

Portemanteau, *portmanteau*

Tournebroche, *jack, turnspit*

PLURAL.

chèvrefeuilles, *honeysuckles*.

gendarmes, *gendarmes*.

portemanteaux, *portmanteaus*.

tournebroches, *jacks, turnspits*.

EXCEPTIONS.—

Notice, however, the following exceptions :

Bonhomme, *simple easy man*

Gentilhomme, *gentleman, noble*

Monsieur, *Mister, Sir*

Madame, *Madam, Mrs.*

Mademoiselle, *Miss*

Monseigneur, *my lord*.

bonshommes, *simple easy men*.

gentilshommes, *gentlemen, nobles*.

messieurs, *Messrs., gentlemen*.

mesdames, *Mesdames, ladies*.

mesdemoiselles, *young ladies*.

messeigneurs, *my lords*.

(b) COMPOUND NOUNS WRITTEN IN TWO OR MORE WORDS.

§ 85. GENERAL RULE.—Nouns and adjectives are the only components which can take the sign of the plural.

SPECIAL RULES.—

§ 86. (1) Both components take the sign of the plural—

[a] In nouns composed of two nouns in apposition :

Chat-tigre, <i>tiger-cat</i>	chats-tigres, <i>tiger-cats</i> .
Chef-lieu, <i>chief-town</i>	chefs-lieux, <i>chief-towns</i> .
Chou-fleur, <i>cauliflower</i>	choux-fleurs, <i>cauliflowers</i> .
Oiseau-mouche, <i>humming-birds</i>	oiseaux-mouches, <i>humming-birds</i> .

[b] In nouns composed of a noun and an adjective qualifying it :

Basse-cour, <i>poultry-yard</i>	basses-cours, <i>poultry-yards</i> .
Cerf-volant, <i>kite</i>	cerfs-volants, <i>kites</i> .
Coffre-fort, <i>strong-box, safe</i>	coffres-forts, <i>strong-boxes, safes</i> .
Grand-père, <i>grandfather</i>	grands-pères, <i>grandfathers</i> .
Petit-maitre, <i>fop</i>	petits-maitres, <i>fops</i> .

Obs. 1. Demi (= *half, demi*) is invariable in compounds :

Une demi-heure, <i>half an hour</i>	Des demi-heures, <i>half-hours</i> .
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Obs. 2. Notice the plural of the following nouns, in which the last component only takes an s :

Blanc-seing, <i>signature in blank</i>	blanc-seings, <i>signatures in blank</i> .
Cheval-léger, <i>light-horseman</i>	cheval-légers, <i>light-horsemen</i> .
Nouveau-né, ¹ <i>newly-born child</i>	nouveau-nés, <i>newly-born children</i> .
Terre-plein, ² <i>platform, terre-plein</i>	terre-pleins, <i>platforms, terre-pleins</i> .

§ 87. (2) The first component only takes the sign of the plural—

In nouns composed of two nouns, the second of which is complement of the first, *i.e.* joined to it by a preposition :

Arc-en-ciel, <i>rainbow</i>	arcs-en-ciel, <i>rainbows</i> .
Belle-de-nuit, <i>marvel of Peru</i>	belles-de-nuit, <i>marvels of Peru</i> .
Chef-d'œuvre, <i>masterpiece</i>	chefs-d'œuvre, <i>masterpieces</i> .
Cou-de-pied, <i>instep</i>	cous-de-pied, <i>insteps</i> .
Ver-à-soie, <i>silkworm</i>	vers-à-soie, <i>silkworms</i> .

¹ Nouveau is here used adverbially.

² From Latin *terrae planum* (= *a plane surface of earth*).

Obs. 1. The preposition is sometimes understood :

Un bain-marie (<i>i.e.</i> un bain de } marie), <i>a water-bath</i>	des bains-marie , <i>water-baths</i> .
Un hôtel-Dieu (<i>i.e.</i> un hôtel de } Dieu), <i>a hospital</i>	des hôtels-Dieu , <i>hospitals</i> .
Un timbre-poste (<i>i.e.</i> un timbre } de la poste), <i>a postage-stamp</i>	des timbres-poste , <i>postage-stamps</i> .

Obs. 2. The following elliptic compound nouns remain unaltered, because the idea of plurality refers, not to any of the components, but to a word understood :

Des coq-à-l'âne , <i>cock-and-bull stories</i> .
Des pied-à-terre , <i>temporary lodgings</i> .
Des pot-au-feu , <i>boiled beef and broth</i> .
Des tête-à-tête , <i>private interviews</i> .

§ 88. (3) The last component only takes the sign of the plural—

In nouns composed of an invariable word (verb, preposition, adverb, or prefix) and a noun :

Anglo-Saxon, <i>Anglo-Saxon</i>	Anglo-Saxons , <i>Anglo-Saxons</i> .
Arrière-plan, <i>background</i>	arrière-plans , <i>backgrounds</i> .
Avant-garde, <i>vanguard</i>	avant-gardes , <i>vanguards</i> .
Contre-partie, <i>counterpart</i>	contre-parties , <i>counterparts</i> .
Tire-bouchon, <i>corkscrew</i>	tire-bouchons , <i>corkscrews</i> .
Vice-roi, <i>viceroys</i>	vice-rois , <i>viceroys</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.—The whole compound, however, remains unaltered—

[a] When the noun is governed by the preposition :

Des après-midi , <i>afternoons</i> .
Des contre-poison , <i>antidotes</i> .
Des entre-sol , <i>entresols</i> .

(In **après-dîner** and **après-souper** the noun may take an s or not.)

[b] When the noun, governed by a verb, cannot evidently express an idea of plurality :

Des abat-jour , <i>lamp-shades</i> .
Des coupe-gorge , <i>cut-throat places</i> .
Des crève-cœur , <i>heart-breaks</i> .
Des gagne-pain , <i>livelihood</i> .
Des perce-neige , <i>snowdrops</i> .
Des prie-Dieu , <i>prayer-desks</i> .
Des réveille-matin , <i>alarums</i> .
Des serre-tête , <i>head-bands</i> .

Obs. In doubtful cases two plural forms are found :

Des **porte-drapeaux** or des **porte-drapeau**, *standard-bearers*.

§ 89. (4) The whole compound remains invariable—

[a] When it is composed of a verb, a preposition, and a noun :

Des **boute-en-train**, *jolly companions*.

Des **vol-au-vent**, *vol-au-vents*.

(**Vol**=*vole*, 3rd pers. sing. pres. indic. of *voler*.)

[b] When all the components are invariable words :

Des **on-dit**, }
Des **ouï-dire**, } *hearsay*.

Des **passe-partout**, *master-keys*.

Des **pince-sans-rire**, *dry jokers*.

(See also § 87, *Obs.* 2, and § 88, *Exc.*)

§ 90. OBSERVATIONS.—(1) In compounds composed of an invariable word and a noun, the noun, if it clearly expresses an idea of plurality, generally takes the sign of the plural even when the compound is used in the singular :

Un (or des) **casse-noisettes**, *a nut-cracker*

Un (or des) **couvre-pieds**, *a counterpane*.

Un (or des) **cure-dents**, *a toothpick*.

Un (or des) **gobe-mouches**, *a fly-catcher*.

Un (or des) **porte-clefs**, *a turnkey*.

Un (or des) **mille-pieds**, *a milleped*.

Un (or des) **serre-papiers**, *a paper-weight*.

(2) In compounds beginning with the word **garde**, this word remains invariable when the compound designates a *thing*, but it takes the sign of the plural when the compound denotes a *person*, because **garde**, in that case, is considered as a noun, not as a verb :

Des **garde-fous**, *hand-rails, parapets*.

Des **garde-manger**, *pantries, safes*.

Des **garde-robes**, *wardrobes*.

But Des **gardes-malades**, *sick-nurses*.

(3) Grammarians are at variance about the plural of several compounds, as **appui-main** (= *maulstick*), **essuie-main** (= *towel*), **garde-chasse**

(= *gamekeeper*), **sauf-conduit** (= *safe-conduct*). The best forms seem to be—

Des **appuis-main** (*i.e.* des appuis pour la main).

Des **essuie-mains** (*i.e.* des serviettes pour s'essuyer les mains).

Des **gardes-chasse** (*i.e.* des gardes de chasse).

Des **sauf-conduits** (*i.e.* des conduits en sûreté, *sauf* being here used adverbially).

(4) There is an increasing tendency to write in one word nouns which were formerly composed of two or more parts joined together by hyphens; as,

Des **contredanses**, *country-dances*.

Des **passeports**, *passports*.

Des **portemanteaux**, *portmanteaus*.

Des **pourboires**, *gratuities*.

(5) The following list contains the most important compound nouns the plural of which may present some difficulty :

Arc-boutant, *arched buttress*

Bouche-trou, *stop-gap*

Boute-feu, *field-staff, firebrand*

Chasse-marée, *fish-cart*

Chausse-pied, *shoe-horn*

Chausse-trape, *trap*

Coupe-jarret, *cut-throat*

Croque-mort, *undertaker's man*

Fesse-mathieu, *miser*

Fier-à-bras, *bully*

Fripe-sauce, *glutton, bad cook*

Gagne-denier, *labourer*

Gagne-petit, *knife-grinder*

Hausse-col, *gorget*

Haut-de-chausses, *breeches*

Haute-contre, *counter-tenor*

Havre-sac, *haversack*

Loup-garou, *were-wolf*

Malle-poste, *mail*

Orang-outang, *orang-outang*

Passe-droit, *favour, injustice*

Passe-passe, *sleight of hand*

Passe-poil, *braid*

Pied-bot, *club-foot*

arcs-boutants.

bouche-trous.

boute-feu (*boute-feux* according to the Academy).

chasse-marée (*chasse-marées* according to the Academy).

chausse-pieds.

chausse-trapes.

coupe-jarret (*coupe-jarrets* according to the Academy).

croque-morts.

fesse-mathieu (*fesse-mathieux* according to the Academy).

fier-à-bras.

fripe-sauce.

gagne-denier or *gagne-deniers*.

gagne-petit.

hausse-col or *hausse-cols*.

hauts-de-chausses.

hautes-contre.

havre-sacs.

loups-garous.

malles-postes.

orangs-outangs.

passe-droit or *passe-droits*.

passe-passe.

passe-poil or *passe-poils*.

pieds-bots.

Pique-nique, <i>picnic</i>	pique-nique.
Porc-épic, <i>porcupine</i>	porcs-épics.
Porte-étendard, <i>standard-bearer</i>	porte-étendard or porte-étendards.
Prête-nom, <i>person lending his name, agent</i>	prête-noms.
Reine-claude, <i>greengage</i>	{ reines-claude according to the Academy, but better reine-claude or even reines-claudes .
Revenant-bon, <i>perquisite, profit</i>	
Sous-pied, <i>strap</i>	revenants-bons.
Trou-madame, <i>troll-madam (a game)</i>	sous-pied or sous-pieds.
	trous-madame.

D.—AGREEMENT OF THE NOUN.

§ 91. A noun qualifying another noun, either in apposition or after such verbs as *être* (=to be), *devenir* (=to become), *paraître* (=to appear), *faire* (=to make), *croire* (=to believe), etc., must as a rule agree with it in gender and number :

La reine **mère**.

The queen-mother.

Son fils était **acteur**, ses filles
furent **musiciennes**.

*His son was an actor, his daughters
became musicians.*

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 19.)

E.—PLACE OF THE NOUN IN ITS RELATIONS TO ANOTHER NOUN.

§ 92. The qualifying noun follows in French the noun it qualifies :

Le monde **artiste**.

The artist world.

Une montre **d'argent**.

A silver watch.

Une cuiller **à thé**.

A tea-spoon.

F.—PLACE OF THE NOUN IN ITS RELATIONS TO THE VERB.

(a) THE NOUN-SUBJECT.

§ 93. AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCES.—The noun-subject is, as a rule, placed before the verb as in English :

L'honneur parle, j'obéis.

Honour speaks, I obey.

La guerre dura six mois.

The war lasted six months.

Exception.—The noun-subject follows the verb in parenthetical clauses introduced in the middle of a quotation, or directly following it :

"Mes enfants," dit le père, "écoutez."	"My children," said the father, "listen."
"Que je te plains !" disait un jour le lierre au thym.	"How I pity you !" said one day the ivy to the thyme.

(For other exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 21.)

§ 94. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.—The noun-subject is placed, contrary to English custom, before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses ; but, in order to mark the interrogation, a redundant personal pronoun, agreeing with the subject, follows the verb in the first case, the auxiliary in the second :

La moisson commencera-t-elle bientôt?	Will the harvest soon begin?
La moisson a-t-elle déjà com- mencé?	Has the harvest begun already?

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, §§ 22 and 23.)

(b) THE NOUN-OBJECT.

§ 95. The noun-object follows the verb :

La fortune favorise les braves.	Fortune favours the brave.
---------------------------------	----------------------------

Exceptions.—The noun-object is placed before the verb when it is preceded by **quel** (= *which, what*) :

Quel livre lisez-vous?	What book are you reading?
------------------------	----------------------------

and generally when it is preceded by **combien** (*how much, how many*), or **que** used in the sense of **combien** :

Combien d'habitants cette ville a-t-elle?	How many inhabitants has this town?
Que de joie il éprouva !	What joy he felt !

(For other exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 24.)

§ 96. When the verb has two nouns for objects, the **direct** object precedes the indirect :

La nature avait prodigué ses dons au jeune prince.	Nature had lavished her gifts on the young prince.
---	---

Exception.—When the **indirect** object is shorter than the direct, it is generally placed before it :

La nature avait prodigué au jeune prince ses dons les plus précieux.	Nature had lavished her most precious gifts on the young prince.
--	---

G.—GOVERNMENT OF THE NOUN BY A NOUN.

§ 97. When one noun is governed by another, it is most often preceded by the preposition *de* or the preposition *à*.

(1) THE NOUN AFTER *de*.—The preposition *de* is used before a noun depending on another noun, to express *possession, material, quality, origin, want, quantity, contents, measure, value, cause, instrument* :

La maison <i>de</i> jardinier.	<i>The gardener's house.</i>
Un chapeau <i>de</i> paille.	<i>A straw-hat.</i>
Un homme <i>de</i> génie.	<i>A man of genius.</i>
Du vin <i>de</i> Bourgogne.	<i>Burgundy (wine).</i>
Le besoin <i>d'</i> argent.	<i>The want of money.</i>
Une foule <i>d'</i> hommes.	<i>A crowd of men.</i>
Un verre <i>de</i> vin.	<i>A glass of wine.</i>
Un ruban <i>de</i> trois mètres.	<i>A ribbon three yards long.</i>
Une pièce <i>de</i> vingt francs.	<i>A twenty-franc piece.</i>
Des larmes <i>de</i> joie.	<i>Tears of joy.</i>
Un trait <i>de</i> plume.	<i>A stroke of the pen.</i>

(2) THE NOUN AFTER *à*.—The preposition *à* is used before a noun depending on another noun to express *purpose, use, tendency, special class* :

Un verre <i>à</i> vin.	<i>A wine-glass.</i>
Une boîte <i>à</i> ouvrage.	<i>A work-box.</i>
La tendance <i>à</i> l'exagération.	<i>The tendency to exaggeration.</i>
Un enfant <i>aux</i> cheveux blonds.	<i>A fair-haired child.</i>
Un portrait <i>à</i> l'huile.	<i>An oil-painting.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 25-29.)

THE ADJECTIVE.

A.—FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

§ 98. GENERAL RULE.—The feminine of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, and for the same reason, by adding an *e mute* to the masculine :

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
bleu, <i>blue</i>	bleue.
clair, <i>clear</i>	claire.
joli, <i>pretty</i>	jolie.
puissant, <i>powerful</i>	puissante.
réservé, <i>reserved</i>	réservée, etc.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives take a grave accent on the *e* of their last syllable before adding *e mute*—

[a] All ending in *-er* :

cher, <i>dear</i>	chère.
étranger, <i>foreign</i>	étrangère.
léger, <i>light</i>	légère.
premier, <i>first</i>	première.

[b] One ending in *c*, and one in *f* :

sec, <i>dry</i>	sèche.
bref, <i>brief</i>	brève.

(The grave accent indicates the broad sound of the *e*.)

[c] Eight ending in *-et* :

complet, <i>complete</i>	complète.
incomplet, <i>incomplete</i>	incomplète.
replet, <i>stout</i>	replète.
concret, <i>concrete</i>	concrète.
discret, <i>discreet</i>	discrète.
indiscret, <i>indiscreet</i>	indiscrète.
secret, <i>secret</i>	secrète.
inquiet, <i>uneasy</i>	inquiète.

(Other adjectives in **-et** double the **t** instead of taking an accent [see § 105 (b)], but these are words of learned origin in which the **è** represents the long **e** of the Latin.)

Obs. 2. *Vice versâ*, the grave accent of the masculine disappears in the feminine of **exprès** (= *express*), and **profès** (= *professed*), because no accent is ever placed on the **e** when it is followed by a doubled consonant :

expresse, professe.

Obs. 3. The circumflex accent disappears likewise in the feminine (and plural) of the participial adjective **dû** (= *due*), because it is used in the masculine singular only to distinguish it from the article **du** :

due, dus, dues,

and in the feminine (and plural) of the past participle **mû** (= *moved*) :

mue, mus, mues.

Obs. 4. Adjectives in **-gu** take a diæresis over the **e** of the feminine, to show that the **u** must be pronounced separately, not like in *bague*, *vague*, etc. :

aigu, *acute*

ambigu, *ambiguous*

contigu, *contiguous*

exigu, *scanty*.

aiguë.

ambiguë.

contiguë.

exiguë.

SPECIAL RULES AND EXCEPTIONS.—

§ 99. (1) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **e** MUTE.

Adjectives ending in **e** mute do **not** change in the feminine :

Un homme }
or } **aimable.**
Une femme }

An amiable { *man*
or
woman.

Obs. The two nouns **maître** and **traître**, however, keep their feminine form in **-esse** when used adjectively :

Une **maîtresse** femme.

A superior woman.

Une offre **traîtresse**.

A treacherous offer.

§ 100. (2) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **c**.

Adjectives ending in **c** form their feminine in three ways—

[a] Three by adding **-he** :

blanc [O.G. *blanch*], *white*

franc [O.G. *franco*], *frank, open*

sec [L. *siccum*], *dry*

blanche.

franche.

sèche (see § 98, *Obs.* 1, [b]).

(*Siccam* gave *sèche*, just as *muscam* gave *mouche* (=fly), the Latin syllable *cam* becoming *che* in French when at the end of a word and preceded by a consonant.)

[b] Five by changing *c* into *-que*:

ammoniac, <i>ammoniac</i>	ammoniaque.
caduc, <i>decayed, decrepit</i>	caduque.
franc, <i>Frankish</i>	franque,
(as, la langue franque	<i>the Frankish language</i>).
public, <i>public</i>	publique.
turc, <i>Turkish</i>	turque.

(The *qu* serves to preserve the hard sound of the *c* in the feminine.)

[c] One by adding *-que*:

grec, <i>Greek</i>	grecque.
--------------------	----------

(The *c* was retained to preserve the broad sound of the *e* in the feminine.)

§ 101. (3) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-eur*.

Adjectives ending in *-eur* form their feminine in four ways—

[a] By adding an *e* mute: *-eure* (see § 60 [a]).

To this class belong adjectives derived from Latin comparatives, *i.e.*

majeur, <i>major, important</i>	majeure,
mineur, <i>minor</i>	mineure,
meilleur, <i>better</i>	meilleure,

and those ending in *-érieur*:

antérieur, <i>anterior</i>	antérieure.
citérieur, <i>citerior</i>	citérieure.
extérieur, <i>exterior</i>	extérieure.
inférieur, <i>inferior</i>	inférieure.
intérieur, <i>interior</i>	intérieure.
postérieur, <i>posterior</i>	postérieure.
supérieur, <i>superior</i>	supérieure.
ultérieur, <i>ulterior</i>	ultérieure.

[b] By changing *r* into *-se* : *-euse* (see § 60 [b]).

To this class belong adjectives derived from a Present Participle, *i.e.* by far the greater part of adjectives in *-eur* ; as,

PRES. PARTIC.	ADJECTIVE.	FEMININE.
causant	causeur, <i>talkative</i>	causeuse.
flattant	flatteur, <i>flattering</i>	flatteuse.
rêvant	rêveur, <i>dreamy</i>	rêveuse.
trompant	trompeur, <i>deceitful</i>	trompeuse.
voyageant	voyageur, <i>travelling</i>	voyageuse, etc.

[c] By changing *-eur* into *-rice* (see § 60 [c]).

To this class belong adjectives in *-teur* not derived from a Present Participle ; as,

accusateur, <i>accusing</i>	accusatrice.
consolateur, <i>consoling</i>	consolatrice.
corrupteur, <i>corrupting</i>	corruptrice.
créateur, <i>creative</i>	créatrice, etc.

[d] By changing *-eur* into *-eresse* (see § 60 [d]), a change which only occurs in the following feminines :

enchanteur, <i>enchanting</i>	enchanteresse.
pécheur, <i>sinful</i>	pécheresse.
vengeur, <i>avenging</i>	vengeresse.

§ 102. (4) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *f*.

Adjectives ending in *f* change *f* into *-ve* (see § 61):

attentif, <i>attentive</i>	attentive.
bref, <i>brief</i>	brève (see § 98, <i>Obs.</i> 1, [b]).
captif, <i>captive</i>	captive.
neuf, <i>new</i>	neuve, etc.

§ 103. (5) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *g*.

Adjectives ending in *g* form their feminine in *-gue* :

long, <i>long</i>	longue.
oblong, <i>oblong</i>	oblongue.

(The *u* is added to show that the *g* has a hard sound as in *langue* (= *longue*), not a soft one as in *linge* (= *linen*).

§ 104. (6) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *x*.

Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *-se* (= *L.* *-sam*) [see § 62] :

glorieux, <i>glorious</i>	glorieuse.
heureux, <i>happy</i>	heureuse.
jaloux, <i>jealous</i>	jalouse, etc.

EXCEPTIONS.—[a] **One** forms its feminine regularly by adding **e** mute :

préfix (a legal term), <i>prefixed, appointed</i>	préfixe,
as, à l'heure préfixe	<i>at the appointed hour.</i>

[b] **One** changes **x** into **-ce** :

doux (L. <i>dulcem</i>), <i>sweet</i>	douce.
--	---------------

[c] **Two** change **x** into **-sse** :

faux (L. <i>falsum</i>), <i>false</i>	fausse.
roux (L. <i>russum</i>), <i>red, sandy</i>	rousse.

Obs. For **vieux** (fem. **vieille**), see § 105 [h].

§ 105. (7) ADJECTIVES DOUBLING THE FINAL CONSONANT.

The final consonant is doubled, before adding **e** mute, in the feminine of—

[a] Adjectives in **-el, -eil, -en, -on** :

crûel, <i>cruel</i>	cruelle.
naturel, <i>natural</i>	naturelle.
réel, <i>real</i>	réelle.
pareil, <i>like, similar</i>	pareille.
vermeil, <i>ruddy</i>	vermeille.
ancien, <i>ancient</i>	ancienne.
européen, <i>European</i>	européenne.
quotidien, <i>daily</i>	quotidienne.
bon, <i>good</i>	bonne.
glouton, <i>gluttonous</i>	gloutonne.
mignon, <i>pretty</i>	mignonne.
poltron, <i>cowardly</i>	poltronne, etc.

[b] Adjectives in **-et** (except those given in § 98, *Obs.* 1, [c])

cadet, <i>younger</i>	cadette.
coquet, <i>coquettish</i>	coquette.
douillet, <i>tender, effeminate</i>	douillette.
fluet, <i>slender, delicate</i>	flurette.
mollet, <i>tender</i>	mollette.
muet, <i>dumb</i>	muette.
net, <i>neat</i>	nette.
propret, <i>neat, spruce</i>	proprette.
sujet, <i>subject</i>	sujette.
violet, <i>violet</i>	violette.

[c] The seven following in *s* :

bas (L.L. <i>bassum</i>), <i>low</i>	basse.
épais (L. <i>spissum</i>), <i>thick</i>	épaisse.
exprès (L. <i>expressum</i>), <i>express</i>	expresse (see § 98, <i>Obs.</i> 2).
gras (L.L. <i>grassum</i> , fr. <i>crassum</i>), <i>fat</i>	grasse.
gros (L.L. <i>grossum</i>), <i>big</i>	grosse.
las (L. <i>lassum</i>), <i>tired</i>	lasse.
profès (L. <i>professum</i>), <i>professed</i>	professe (see § 98, <i>Obs.</i> 2).

[d] The four following in *-ot* :

bellot, <i>pretty</i> (of children)	bellotte.
pâlot, <i>palish</i>	pâlotte.
sot, <i>foolish</i>	sotte.
vieillet, <i>oldish</i>	vieillotte.

[e] Two in *-an* :

paysan, <i>clown</i> <i>h</i>	paysanne.
rouan, <i>roan</i>	rouanne.

[f] One in *-il* :

gentil, <i>pretty, nice</i>	gentille.
-----------------------------	-----------

[g] One in *-ul* :

nul, <i>null, void</i>	nulle.
------------------------	--------

To the above may be joined—

[h] The five following, which have **two forms** for the **masculine singular**, and make their feminine from the old form by doubling the final *l* before adding *e* mute :

beau, <i>beautiful</i>	bel (L. <i>bellum</i>)	belle.
nouveau, <i>new</i>	nouvel (L. <i>novellum</i>)	nouvelle.
fou, <i>mad, foolish</i>	fol (L. <i>follem</i>)	folle.
mou, <i>soft, sluggish</i>	mol (L. <i>mollem</i>)	molle.
vieux, <i>old</i>	vieil (L.L. <i>veclum</i> , for <i>vetulum</i>)	vieille.

[i] The adjective **jumeau** (L. *gemellum*), which likewise makes **jumelle** (from O.F. *jumel*, no longer used) :

Un frère jumeau, <i>a twin brother.</i>	Une sœur jumelle, <i>a twin sister.</i>
---	---

Obs. 1. The masculine forms **bel**, **nouvel**, **fol**, **mol**, **vieil**, are only used before singular nouns beginning with a *vowel* or *silent h* :

Un bel enfant	<i>A beautiful child.</i>
Le nouvel an	<i>New year's day.</i>

Obs. 2. **Bel**, however, is also used in—

Charles le **Bel**, Philippe le **Bel**.

Bel et beau } *well, fully, in good earnest.*
Bel et bien }

Bel et bon, *good, of the right kind.*

Obs. 3. **Vieux** may be used familiarly instead of **vieil** :

Mon **vieux** ami

My old friend.

§ 106.

(8) VARIOUS IRREGULARITIES.

Notice—

[a] The four following adjectives, in the feminine of which the **t** of the Latin reappears :

absous (L. absolutum), *absolved*

absoute.

dissous (L. dissolutum), *dissolved*

dissoute.

coi (L. quietum), *quiet*

coite.

favori (L.L. favoritum), *favourite*]

favorite.

[b] The two following, in the feminine of which the **g** of the Latin reappears in like manner :

bénin (L. benignum), *benignant,*
kind

benigne.

malin (L. malignum), *malignant,*
roguish

maligne.

[c] Also—

frais (O.G. frise, frisch), *fresh*

fraîche.

(Notice the circumflex accent on the **i** of **fraîche**, the **s** of the masculine having been dropped.)

tiers (L. tertium), *third*

tierce.

(For the change of L. *-tiam* into *-ce*, cf. **grâce** (= *grace*), from *gratiam*.)

Obs. **Muscade** is considered by some grammarians as the feminine of **muscat** :

Du raisin **muscat**

Muscadine grapes.

Une rose **muscade**

A musk rose.

§ 107. (9) ADJECTIVES USED WITH MASCULINE NOUNS ONLY.

The following adjectives are only used with masculine nouns :

aquilin (only in *nez aquilin*, *aquiline nose*).

bot (only in *pied bot*, *club-foot*, *club-footed man*).

cabus (only in *chou cabus*, *white-headed cabbage*).

coulis (only in *vent coulis*, *draught*).

pec (only in *hareng pec*, *pickled herring*).

violat (only in *miel violat*, *sort of honey*, *sirop violat*, *syrup of violets*).

Also *discord*, *out of tune* ; *fat*, *foppish*, *conceited* ; *hébreu*, *Hebrew* (replaced in the feminine by *hébraïque*) ; *imposteur*, *deceitful* ; *négrier*, *slave* ; as, *vaisseau négrier*, *slave-ship* ; *capitaine négrier*, *captain of a slave-ship*. (The feminine *négrière* is, however, used in *littérature négrière*, *negro-literature*.)

Obs. Vice versâ, a few adjectives are only used with feminine nouns :

bovine, *bovine* ; **chevaline**, *equine* ; **mère** (only in *mère goutte*, *unpressed wine*, *mère laine*, *prime wool*) ; **pie** (only in *œuvre pie*, *charitable uses*) ; **quantes** (only in *toutes et quantes fois*, *at any time*, *toutes et quantes fois que*, *whenever*, *as often as*, seldom used now).

§ 108. (10) ADJECTIVES UNCHANGED IN THE FEMININE.

Besides adjectives ending in *e mute*, the following do not change in the feminine :

châtain, *nut-brown* (a few grammarians, however, admit of the feminine *châtaine*) ; **contumax**, *contumacious* ; **dispos**, *nimble*, *alert* ; **grognon**, *grumbling* ; **rosat**, *of roses*, as *huile rosat*, *rose-oil*.

Obs. To the above may be added **capot**, *capot*, *disconcerted* ; **ort**, *gross-weight* ; **rococo**, *rococo*, *old-fashioned* ; **sterling**, *sterling*, which have neither feminine nor plural.

B.—FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

§ 109. GENERAL RULE.—The plural of adjectives, like that of nouns, and for the same reason, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
aimable, <i>amiable</i>	aimable	aimables	aimables.
grand, <i>great</i> , <i>tall</i>	grande	grands	grandes.
joli, <i>pretty</i>	jolie	jolis	jolies.
public, <i>public</i>	publique	publics	publiques.
vengeur, <i>avenging</i>	vengeresse	vengeurs	vengeresses, etc.

Obs. 1. There is no exception for the **feminine** plural.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in **-eu** (except **hébreu**, see § 110 [4]) and in **-ou** follow the rule :

bleu, <i>blue</i>	bleus.
feu, <i>late, deceased</i>	feus.
fou, <i>mad, foolish</i>	fous.
mou, <i>soft, sluggish</i>	mous.

§ 110. EXCEPTIONS.—

(1) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **s** OR **x**.

Adjectives ending in **s** or **x** do **not** change in the **masculine** plural (see § 70 [a]) :

Un brouillard <u>épais</u> , <i>a thick fog.</i>	Des brouillards <u>épais</u> , <i>thick fogs.</i>
Un homme <u>las</u> , <i>a tired man.</i>	Des hommes <u>las</u> , <i>tired men.</i>
Un enfant <u>jaloux</u> , <i>a jealous child.</i>	Des enfants <u>jaloux</u> , <i>jealous children.</i>

(2) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-eau**.

Adjectives ending in **-eau** take an **x** in the **masculine** plural (see § 71 [a]) :

Un beau cheval, <i>a fine horse.</i>	De beaux chevaux, <i>fine horses.</i>
Un mot nouveau, <i>a new word.</i>	Des mots nouveaux , <i>new words.</i>

(3) ADJECTIVES ENDING IN **-al**.

[a] Most adjectives ending in **-al** form their **masculine** plural by changing **-al** into **-aux** (see § 72) :

brutal, <i>brutal</i>	brutaux.
décimal, <i>decimal</i>	décimaux.
égal, <i>equal</i>	égaux.
rival, <i>rival</i>	rivaux.
social, <i>social</i>	sociaux, etc.

[b] One only, according to the Academy, forms its plural by adding an **s** :

<u>fatal</u> , <i>fatal</i>	fatals.
-----------------------------	---------

Usage, however, allows the following plurals in **s**:

- (ac. no Rem.) bancals, bandy-legged. (so int. no. bancal.)
 (ac. says no pl. m.) - frugals, frugal. (Lit. no rem. - 3; frugaux desirable)
 (ac. says no pl. m.) - glacials, icy, frigid. (Lit. glacials has been used, but no m. pl.)
 (ac. no Rem.) - initials, initial. (Lit. francs. - 4; he wd. say 'aux.)
 (ac. no Rem.) navals, naval. (ac. no pl.; some francs. - 4. I, - aux.)
 (ac. says, mostly) - pascals, paschal. (ac. - aux not used; some francs. - als; he wd. say aux.)
 (ac. says m. pl. invar.) - théâtrals, theatrical. (Lit. he uses for - aux;)
 (ac. no pl. m.) - virginals, virginal. (no Rem.; no ex.)
 (ac. no pl. m.)

Obs. *Frugaux, glaciaux, initiaux, pascaux, théâtraux, virginaux*, are also found in some good authors.

[c] The following are not used in the masculine plural :

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------------------------------|------------|---|
| (L. no R.) | astral, astral. (ae. no R.) | (L. no R.) | mental, mental. (ae. no R.) |
| (So L.) | brumal, brumal, wintry. (no. ; rare) | (L. no R.) | monacal, monachal. (ae. no R.) |
| (-S) | final, final. (ae. no R.) | (L. no R.) | natal, native. (ae. sang. no pl. m.) |
| (L. no R.) | labial, labial. (ae. no R.) | (L. no R.) | papal, papal. (ae. no R.) |
| (L. no R.) | matinal, early. (ae. no R.) | (L. no R.) | quadragesimal, quadragesimal. (ae. no R.) |
| | | | atrain (ae. no R.) |

Obs. Grammarians do not agree upon the plural of several adjectives in -al, as *amical, boreal, colossal, filial, jovial, nasal, penal*, etc. The form in -aux, which is the regular one for adjectives in -al, should certainly be preferred.

- certainly be preferred.
- (4) HÉBREU.

Hébreu (= *Hebrew*) takes an **x** in the masculine plural :

Des livres hébreux.

Hebrew books.

(5) TOUT.

Tout (= *all, every*) drops the **t** before adding **s** :

Tous les hommes.

All men.

Obs. **Tout**, as a noun (meaning *whole*), is regular :

Trois tous.

Three wholes.

C.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 111. Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns or pronouns to which they relate :

Le bon livre ; les bons livres.	<i>The good book ; the good books.</i>
Une jolie fleur ; de jolies fleurs.	<i>A pretty flower ; pretty flowers.</i>

*Exceptions.*¹—No agreement takes place in the case of—

(1) Adjectives used adverbially, like **bon, droit, dru, ferme, haut, bas, juste**, etc. :

Comme cette fleur sent bon !	<i>How sweet this flower smells !</i>
Les balles pleuvaient dru comme mouches.	<i>The bullets fell as thick as hail.</i>
Elle marche droit .	<i>She walks straight.</i>
<i>But</i> Elle marche droite .	<i>She walks upright.</i>

(2) **Demi** (= *half*), when it *precedes* the noun :

Une demi -heure.	<i>Half an hour.</i>
<i>But</i> Une heure et demie .	<i>An hour and a half.</i>

Obs. **Demi** remains also invariable before adjectives and participles, and is joined to the following word by a hyphen :

Des peuples demi -barbares.	<i>Half-barbarous peoples.</i>
------------------------------------	--------------------------------

It never agrees in the expression **à demi**, after which no hyphen is used :

Elle était à demi morte.	<i>She was half dead.</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------

(3) **Nu** (= *naked, bare*), when it *precedes* the noun without an article, in which case it is joined to it by a hyphen, like **demi** :

Il était nu -pieds	} <i>He was barefooted.</i>
<i>But</i> Il était pieds nus ,	
<i>or</i> Il avait les pieds nus .	

(For more details, see *Syntax*, § 31.)

¹ Nouns used adjectively to express colours are, as a rule, invariable :

Des rubans paille .	<i>Straw-coloured ribbons.</i>
----------------------------	--------------------------------

(For exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 19.)

§ 112. Adjectives relating to two or more nouns or pronouns are put in the plural, and agree in gender ; and if the nouns are of different genders, they generally take the masculine :

Un printemps et un été char- mants.	<i>A charming spring and summer.</i>
Une après-midi et une soirée charmantes.	<i>A charming afternoon and evening.</i>
Une idylle et un sonnet char- mants.	<i>A charming idyl and sonnet.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, § 32.)

§ 113. In compound adjectives formed with two adjectives or an adjective and a participle, neither of which is used adverbially, the two components generally agree :

Des oranges aigres-douces.	<i>Sourish oranges.</i>
-----------------------------------	-------------------------

Exception.—Two adjectives used together to denote a colour remain invariable, the former being taken substantively :

Des yeux bleu foncé.	<i>Dark-blue eyes.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------

(See *Syntax*, § 33.)

§ 114. If the first component is used adverbially, or is an adverb or a preposition, the second only varies :

Des arbres clair- semés.	<i>Thinly scattered trees.</i>
Des enfants bien- aimés.	<i>Beloved children.</i>
L'avant- dernière nuit.	<i>The last night but one.</i>

(See *Syntax*, §§ 34 and 35.)

D.—POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives generally follow the nouns in ordinary style :

Des amis généreux.	<i>Generous friends.</i>
Des pensées tristes.	<i>Sad thoughts.</i>
Le tableau noir.	<i>The black-board.</i>
Un homme aveugle.	<i>A blind man.</i>

Obs. Most adjectives, however, may be placed before the nouns in poetic or elevated style, for the sake of euphony, emphasis, or rhetorical effect, or when taken in a figurative sense :

De généreux amis.	<i>Generous friends.</i>
De tristes pensées.	<i>Sad thoughts.</i>
Le noir projet.	<i>The black design.</i>
Une aveugle passion.	<i>A blind passion.</i>

§ 116. SPECIAL RULES.—Place **after** their nouns—

(1) Adjectives followed by a complement :

Un sort digne d'envie .	<i>An enviable fate.</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------

(2) Adjectives derived from proper names :

La langue française .	<i>The French language.</i>
La méthode socratique .	<i>The Socratic method.</i>

(3) Adjectives modified by a long adverb :

Un discours infiniment long .	<i>An extremely long speech.</i>
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

(4) Adjectives expressing physical qualities, colour, shape, taste, etc. :

Des nuages blancs .	<i>White clouds.</i>
Un visage ovale .	<i>An oval face.</i>
Une sauce piquante .	<i>A hot sauce.</i>

(5) Participles used adjectively :

Des étoiles filantes .	<i>Shooting stars.</i>
Une porte ouverte .	<i>An open door.</i>

(6) Generally long adjectives, especially those ending in **-able, -ible, -aire, -al, -el, -eur, -eux, -ique** :

Un crime abominable .	<i>An abominable crime.</i>
Une souffrance imaginaire .	<i>An imaginary pain.</i>
Le règne végétal .	<i>The vegetable kingdom.</i>
Un livre ennuyeux .	<i>A tiresome book.</i>
Une œuvre philanthropique .	<i>A philanthropic work.</i>

§ 117. Place **before** their nouns—

(1) Determinative adjectives :

Un autre jour.	<i>Another day.</i>
Mainte fois.	<i>Many a time.</i>
Les mêmes motifs.	<i>The same motives.</i>
Tous les hommes.	<i>All men.</i>

(2) Adjectives qualifying a proper name :

Le **pieux** Énée.*Pious Æneas.*Le **fameux** Law.*The famous Law.**Except when used in surnames :*Alexandre le **Grand**.*Alexander the Great.*Pline le **jeune**.*Pliny the Younger.*

(3) Generally **beau, bon, cher** (denoting affection), **court, digne, grand, gros, jeune, joli, long, mauvais, meilleur, moindre, petit, sot, vieux, vilain** :

Une **belle** ville.*A beautiful town.*Un **digne** homme.*A worthy man.*Un **long** discours.*A long speech.*Une **vieille** église.*An old church.*(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 37-42.)

§ 118. There are a few adjectives, the meaning of which changes according as they precede or follow the noun :

BEFORE THE NOUN.

Un brave homme.	<i>An honest man.</i>
La dernière année.	<i>The last year (of a period).</i>
Une fausse clef.	<i>A skeleton key.</i>
Un grand homme.	<i>A great man.</i>
Un pauvre écrivain.	<i>A second-rate writer.</i>
Un petit homme.	<i>A short man.</i>
Un triste livre.	<i>A poor book.</i>

AFTER THE NOUN.

Un homme brave.	<i>A brave man.</i>
L'année dernière.	<i>Last year.</i>
Une clef fausse.	<i>A wrong key.</i>
Un homme grand.	<i>A tall man.</i>
Un écrivain pauvre.	<i>A needy writer.</i>
Un homme petit.	<i>A mean man.</i>
Un livre triste.	<i>A sad book, etc.</i>

(For a list, see *Syntax*, Appendix.)

E.—COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 119. If two adjectives require the same preposition, they may have the same complement :

Je suis heureux et fier **de ce succès**.*I am glad and proud of this success.*

But if they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter :

Il était accessible **aux** plus pauvres et adoré **d'eux**.*He was accessible to and adored by, the poorest.*

§ 120. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION *à*.—The preposition *à* is used after most adjectives expressing *aptness, fitness, inclination, tendency, readiness, habit, convenience, ease, utility, necessity, likeness, comparison, precedence* ; as,

Adonné	<i>addicted.</i>	Habile	<i>clever.</i>
Adroit	<i>clever.</i>	Ingénieux	<i>ingenious.</i>
Aisé	<i>easy.</i>	Lent	<i>slow.</i>
Antérieur	<i>prior.</i>	Nécessaire	<i>necessary.</i>
Âpre	<i>eager.</i>	Nuisible	<i>hurtful.</i>
Attentif	<i>attentive.</i>	Pareil	<i>alike, similar.</i>
Bon	<i>good, fit.</i>	Possible	<i>possible.</i>
Conforme	<i>conformable.</i>	Préférable	<i>preferable.</i>
Contraire	<i>opposed.</i>	Préjudiciable	<i>injurious.</i>
Difficile	<i>difficult.</i>	Prêt	<i>ready.</i>
Enclin	<i>inclined.</i>	Prompt	<i>quick.</i>
Facile	<i>easy.</i>	Propre	<i>fit.</i>
Fatal	<i>fatal.</i>	Semblable	<i>similar.</i>
Favorable	<i>favourable.</i>	Sujet	<i>liable.</i>
Funeste	<i>fatal.</i>	Utile	<i>useful, etc.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Cela n'est bon à rien.

That is good for nothing.

Il n'est inférieur à personne.

He is inferior to none.

Ce passage est pareil à l'autre.

This passage is like the other.

Il est utile et même nécessaire à son parti.

He is useful and even necessary to his party.

Qui est propre à tout n'est propre à rien.

A Jack-of-all-trades is master of none.

Caution.—After an adjective used impersonally, the preposition *à* must be replaced by *de* before an infinitive :

C'est facile à faire. }
But Il est facile de faire cela. }

It is easy to do that.

§ 121. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION *de*.—The preposition *de* is used after most adjectives expressing *plenty, scarcity, want, separation, absence, distance, origin, desire, pleasure, displeasure, surprise, etc.* ; as,

Absent	<i>absent.</i>	Content	<i>pleased.</i>
Affamé	<i>thirsting.</i>	Désireux	<i>desirous.</i>
Ambitieux	<i>ambitious.</i>	Envieux	<i>envious.</i>
Avide	<i>greedy.</i>	Exempt	<i>exempt.</i>

[Continued on next page.]

Fier	<i>proud.</i>	Joyeux	<i>joyful.</i>
Furieux	<i>furious.</i>	Las	<i>weary.</i>
Glorieux	<i>vain.</i>	Libre	<i>free.</i>
Heureux	<i>happy.</i>	Mécontent	<i>dissatisfied.</i>
Honteux	<i>ashamed.</i>	Orgueilleux	<i>proud.</i>
Impatient	<i>impatient.</i>	Plein	<i>full.</i>
Inconsolable	<i>inconsolable.</i>	Soigneux	<i>careful.</i>
Inquiet	<i>anxious.</i>	Triste	<i>sad.</i>
Ivre	<i>intoxicated.</i>	Vain	<i>vain.</i>
Jaloux	<i>jealous.</i>	Vide	<i>empty, etc.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Il est absent du pays.	<i>He is absent from the country.</i>
Le cardinal était las du pouvoir.	<i>The cardinal was weary of power.</i>
Personne n'est libre de soucis.	<i>No one is free from cares.</i>
Des paroles pleines d' orgueil et vides de sens.	<i>Words full of pride and devoid of sense.</i>

§ 122. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION **en**.—The preposition **en** is used after a few adjectives expressing, for the most part, *abundance* or *skill* :

Fertile en expédients.	<i>Fertile in expedients.</i>
Fort en histoire.	<i>Clever at history.</i>
Riche en espérances.	<i>Rich in hopes.</i>
Savant en mathématiques.	<i>Learned in mathematics.</i>

Obs. **En** is generally replaced by **dans** when the following noun is preceded by a determinative word :

Son génie était fertile dans ces traits sublimes qui n'appartien- nent qu'à lui.	<i>His genius was fertile in those sublime bursts which are peculiarly his own.</i>
---	---

§ 123. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION **envers**.—The preposition **envers** is used after adjectives expressing *disposition* or *feeling* towards some one :

Affable	} envers les pauvres.	Affable	} <i>to the poor.</i>
Bon		Good	
Charitable		Charitable	
Généreux		Generous	
Libéral		Liberal	

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 44, 45, and 47, and Appendix.)

F.—COMPARATIVES.

§ 124. COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY.—The comparative of *superiority* is formed by placing the adverb **plus** (=more) before the adjective :

MASCULINE.					FEMININE	
plus grand	}		<i>greater, taller</i>	{	plus grande.	
plus grands					plus grandes.	

§ 125. COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY.—The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing the adverb **aussi** (=as) before the adjective :

MASCULINE.					FEMININE.	
aussi grand	}		<i>as great, as tall</i>	{	aussi grande.	
aussi grands					aussi grandes.	

§ 126. COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY.—The comparative of inferiority is formed—

[a] By placing the adverb **moins** (=less) before the adjective :

MASCULINE.					FEMININE.	
moins grand	}		<i>less great, less tall</i>	{	moins grande.	
moins grands					moins grandes.	

[b] By using a negative with the adverbs **si** or **aussi** (=so) before the adjective :

pas aussi (or si) grand	}	<i>not so great, not so tall</i>	{	pas aussi (or si) grande.
pas aussi (or si) grands				pas aussi (or si) grandes.

§ 127. RULES APPLYING TO THE THREE SORTS OF COMPARATIVES.—In the second term of a comparison, both *than* and *as* are rendered by *que* :

Il est plus grand	}	que vous.	He is	taller than	}	<i>you.</i>
Il est moins grand				less tall than		
Il est aussi grand				as tall as		
Il n'est pas aussi (or si) grand				not so tall as		

§ 128. If there are in the first member of the comparison several adjectives qualifying the same noun or pronoun, the adverbs **plus**, **moins**, **aussi**, **si**, must be *repeated* before each :

Il est plus âgé et plus grand que vous.	<i>He is older and taller than you.</i>
Il est moins âgé et moins grand que vous.	<i>He is less old and tall than you.</i>
Il est aussi âgé et aussi grand que vous.	<i>He is as old and tall as you.</i>
Il n'est ni aussi (or si) âgé ni aussi (or si) grand que vous.	<i>He is neither so old nor so tall as you.</i>

G.—SUPERLATIVES.

§ 129. The Superlative is *relative* or *absolute*.

It is *relative* when it expresses a comparison between two or more objects ; as,

Nous sommes **les plus heureux** de tous. *We are the happiest of all.*

It is *absolute* when the comparison is not between several objects, but between different states of the same object or objects ; as,

Nous sommes **le plus heureux** lorsque nous sommes tous ensemble. *We are happiest when we are all together.*

§ 130. RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE.—The relative superlative is formed by placing before the comparative of superiority or inferiority ¹—

[a] The definite article **le, la, les** :

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
le plus grand	} <i>the greatest, the tallest</i>	la plus grande.	} <i>la plus grande.</i>
les plus grands		les plus grandes.	
le moins grand	} <i>the least great, the least tall</i>	la moins grande.	} <i>la moins grande.</i>
les moins grands		les moins grandes.	

Obs. The article must be used before both the noun and the adjective, when the adjective follows the noun :

Le plus court chemin. } *The shortest road.*
But **Le chemin le plus court.** }

[b] One of the possessive adjectives **mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur** :

mon plus grand } *my greatest, my tallest* { **ma plus grande.**
mes plus grands } { **mes plus grandes, etc.**

Obs. The article must be used before the comparative, when the adjective follows the noun :

Mon plus cher ami. } *My dearest friend.*
But **Mon ami le plus cher.** }

§ 131. ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE.—The absolute superlative is formed by placing—

[a] One of the adverbs **très, bien, fort** (= *very*), **extrêmement** (= *extremely*), **infiniment** (= *infinitely*), etc., before the adjective :

Ces fleurs sont **fort jolies.** *These flowers are very pretty.*
 Je vous suis **infiniment obligé.** *I am very much obliged to you.*

¹ Properly so called, i.e. formed with **moins**, not with **aussi** or **si** and a negative.

[*b*] The article *le*—which remains *invariable*—before *plus* or *moins* (see *Syntax*, § 59) :

Elle est *le plus* heureuse lorsqu'elle est seule. *She is happiest when alone.*

Obs. Notice that, although the article is *invariable*, the *adjective* agrees with the noun or pronoun.

§ 132. IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.—Three adjectives have retained their Latin comparatives :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bon</i> , good	<i>meilleur</i> (L. <i>melior</i>), better	<i>le meilleur</i> , the best.
<i>mauvais</i> , bad	<i>pire</i> (L. <i>pejor</i>), worse	<i>le pire</i> , the worst.
<i>petit</i> , small	<i>moindre</i> (L. <i>minor</i>), smaller	<i>le moindre</i> , the smallest.

Obs. 1. Do not confound these comparatives and superlatives with those of the corresponding adverbs *bien*, *mal*, *peu*, which are all shorter :

<i>bien</i> , well	<i>mieux</i> (L. <i>melius</i>), better	<i>le mieux</i> , best.
<i>mal</i> , badly, ill	<i>pis</i> (L. <i>pejus</i>), worse	<i>le pis</i> , worst.
<i>peu</i> , little	<i>moins</i> (L. <i>minus</i>), less	<i>le moins</i> , least.

Obs. 2. The regular forms *plus mauvais*, *le plus mauvais*, *plus mal*, *le plus mal*, are also used, chiefly in a physical sense :

Sa santé est encore <i>plus mauvaise</i> que l'an dernier.	<i>His health is still worse than last year.</i>
Il est <i>au plus mal</i> .	<i>He is in a hopeless state.</i>

Plus petit, *le plus petit*, must be used instead of *moindre*, *le moindre*, in referring to size, but *plus peu* is never used instead of *moins* :

Je suis <i>plus petit</i> que vous.	<i>I am shorter than you.</i>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

As for *bon*, it cannot be preceded by *plus* unless it is separated from it by some other words ; as,

<i>Plus ou moins bon.</i>	<i>More or less good.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

Obs. 3. Latin comparatives have besides given a few adjectives, as *antérieur*, *citierieur*, etc. (see § 101 [*a*]), and a few nouns, as *maire* (L. *major*), *mayor* ; *sire* (L. *senior*), *sire* ; *seigneur* (L. *seniore*), *lord*, etc.

Obs. 4. In the same way the Latin superlative suffix *-issimum* is to be found in several adjectives, as *éminentissime*, *most eminent* ; *illustrissime*, *most illustrious* ; *rarissime*, *most rare* ; *révérendissime*, *most reverend* ; *sérénissime*, *most serene*, etc., and in the noun *généralissime*, *generalissimo*.

Notice also the following adjectives, derived from Latin superlatives : *infime* (L. *infimum*), *lowest* ; *minime* (L. *minimum*), *very small* ; *extrême*, (L. *extremum*), *extreme* ; *suprême* (L. *supremum*), *supreme*, etc.

H.—DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 133. As a rule, determinative adjectives *precede* the noun they determine, and when they are followed by several nouns, must be *repeated* before each.

Mes frères et mes sœurs.

My brothers and sisters.

Ces plumes et ces crayons.

These pens and pencils.

Les mêmes champs et les
mêmes bois.

The same fields and woods.

§ 134. There are five classes of determinative adjectives :—(1) the numeral ; (2) the possessive ; (3) the demonstrative ; (4) the interrogative ; (5) the indefinite.

I.—Numeral Adjectives.

§ 135. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1 Un (L. unum), une (f.).

1st Premier (L. L. primum), première (f.).

2 Deux (L. duo).

2nd { Second (L. secundum), seconde (f.)
Deuxième.

3 Trois (L. tres).

3rd Troisième.

4 Quatre (L. quatuor).

4th Quatrième.

5 Cinq (L. quinque).

5th Cinquième.

6 Six (L. sex).

6th Sixième.

7 Sept (L. septem).

7th Septième.

8 Huit (L. octo, O. F. oit).

8th Huitième.

9 Neuf (L. novem).

9th Neuvième.

10 Dix (L. decem).

10th Dixième.

11 Onze (L. undecim).

11th Onzième.

12 Douze (L. duodecim).

12th Douzième.

13 Treize (L. tredecim).

13th Treizième.

14 Quatorze (L. quatuordecim).

14th Quatorzième.

15 Quinze (L. quindecim).

15th Quinzième.

16 Seize (L. sedecim).

16th Seizième.

17 Dix-sept.

17th Dix-septième.

18 Dix-huit.

18th Dix-huitième.

19 Dix-neuf.

19th Dix-neuvième.

20 Vingt (L. viginti).

20th Vingtième.

21 Vingt et un.

21st Vingt et unième.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

22	Vingt-deux.
23	Vingt-trois.
24	Vingt-quatre.
25	Vingt-cinq.
26	Vingt-six.
27	Vingt-sept.
28	Vingt-huit.
29	Vingt-neuf.
30	Trente (L. triginta).
31	Trente et un.
32	Trente-deux.
33	Trente-trois.
34	Trente-quatre.
35	Trente-cinq.
36	Trente-six.
37	Trente-sept.
38	Trente-huit.
39	Trente-neuf.
40	Quarante (L. quadraginta).
41	Quarante et un.
42	Quarante-deux.
43	Quarante-trois.
44	Quarante-quatre.
45	Quarante-cinq.
46	Quarante-six.
47	Quarante-sept.
48	Quarante-huit.
49	Quarante-neuf.
50	Cinquante (L. quinquaginta).
51	Cinquante et un.
52	Cinquante-deux.
53	Cinquante-trois.
54	Cinquante-quatre.
55	Cinquante-cinq.
56	Cinquante-six.
57	Cinquante-sept.
58	Cinquante-huit.
59	Cinquante-neuf.
60	Soixante (L. sexaginta).
61	Soixante et un.
62	Soixante-deux.
63	Soixante-trois.
64	Soixante-quatre.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

22nd	Vingt-deuxième.
23rd	Vingt-troisième.
24th	Vingt-quatrième.
25th	Vingt-cinquième.
26th	Vingt-sixième.
27th	Vingt-septième.
28th	Vingt-huitième.
29th	Vingt-neuvième.
30th	Trentième.
31st	Trente et unième.
32nd	Trente-deuxième.
33rd	Trente-troisième.
34th	Trente-quatrième.
35th	Trente-cinquième.
36th	Trente-sixième.
37th	Trente-septième.
38th	Trente-huitième.
39th	Trente-neuvième.
40th	Quarantième.
41st	Quarante et unième.
42nd	Quarante-deuxième.
43rd	Quarante-troisième.
44th	Quarante-quatrième.
45th	Quarante-cinquième.
46th	Quarante-sixième.
47th	Quarante-septième.
48th	Quarante-huitième.
49th	Quarante-neuvième.
50th	Cinquantième.
51st	Cinquante et unième.
52nd	Cinquante-deuxième.
53rd	Cinquante-troisième.
54th	Cinquante-quatrième.
55th	Cinquante-cinquième.
56th	Cinquante-sixième.
57th	Cinquante-septième.
58th	Cinquante-huitième.
59th	Cinquante-neuvième.
60th	Soixantième.
61st	Soixante et unième.
62nd	Soixante-deuxième.
63rd	Soixante-troisième.
64th	Soixante-quatrième.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

65	Soixante-cinq.
66	Soixante-six.
67	Soixante-sept.
68	Soixante-huit.
69	Soixante-neuf.
70	Soixante-dix (O.F. septante, L. septuaginta).
71	Soixante et onze.
72	Soixante-douze.
73	Soixante-treize.
74	Soixante-quatorze.
75	Soixante-quinze.
76	Soixante-seize.
77	Soixante-dix-sept.
78	Soixante-dix-huit.
79	Soixante-dix-neuf.
80	Quatre-vingts (O.F. octante, L. octoginta).
81	Quatre-vingt-un.
82	Quatre-vingt-deux.
83	Quatre-vingt-trois.
84	Quatre-vingt-quatre.
85	Quatre-vingt-cinq.
86	Quatre-vingt-six.
87	Quatre-vingt-sept.
88	Quatre-vingt-huit.
89	Quatre-vingt-neuf.
90	Quatre-vingt-dix (O.F. nonante, L. nonaginta).
91	Quatre-vingt-onze.
92	Quatre-vingt-douze.
93	Quatre-vingt-treize.
94	Quatre-vingt-quatorze.
95	Quatre-vingt-quinze.
96	Quatre-vingt-seize.
97	Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.
98	Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.
99	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.
100	Cent (L. centum).
101	Cent un.
102	Cent deux, etc
150	Cent cinquante, etc.
200	Deux cents.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

65th	Soixante-cinquième.
66th	Soixante-sixième.
67th	Soixante-septième.
68th	Soixante-huitième.
69th	Soixante-neuvième.
70th	Soixante-dixième.
71st	Soixante et onzième.
72nd	Soixante-douzième.
73rd	Soixante-treizième.
74th	Soixante-quatorzième.
75th	Soixante-quinzième.
76th	Soixante-seizième.
77th	Soixante-dix-septième.
78th	Soixante-dix-huitième.
79th	Soixante-dix-neuvième.
80th	Quatre-vingtième.
81st	Quatre-vingt-unième.
82nd	Quatre-vingt-deuxième.
83rd	Quatre-vingt-troisième.
84th	Quatre-vingt-quatrième.
85th	Quatre-vingt-cinquième.
86th	Quatre-vingt-sixième.
87th	Quatre-vingt-septième.
88th	Quatre-vingt-huitième.
89th	Quatre-vingt-neuvième.
90th	Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91st	Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92nd	Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93rd	Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94th	Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95th	Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96th	Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97th	Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98th	Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99th	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100th	Centième.
101st	Cent unième.
102nd	Cent deuxième, etc.
150th	Cent cinquantième, etc.
200th	Deux centième.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

201	Deux cent un, etc.
1000	Mille (L. millia).
1001	Mille (et) un.
1002	Mille deux, etc.
1590	Mille cinq cent (or quinze cent) quatre-vingt-dix, etc.
10,000	Dix mille, etc.
100,000	Cent mille, etc.
200,000	Deux cent mille, etc.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

201st	Deux cent unième, etc.
1000th	Millième.
1001st	Mille (et) unième.
1002nd	Mille deuxième, etc.
1590th	Mille cinq cent (or quinze cent) quatre-vingt-dixième, etc.
10,000th	Dix millième, etc.
100,000th	Cent millième, etc.
200,000th	Deux cent millième, etc.

Obs. To the above must be added—

Un million	1,000,000,
Un milliard or un billion	1,000,000,000,
Un trillion	1,000,000,000,000,
Un quadrillion	1,000,000,000,000,000,

which, being real nouns, take the mark of the plural like other nouns, and require the preposition *de* before their noun-complement :¹

Trois millions de francs.	Three millions of francs.
But Trois mille francs.	Three thousand francs.

§ 136. REMARKS ON CARDINAL NUMBERS.—

(1) Hyphens are used to connect the component parts of cardinal numbers from 17 to 99, except when they are united by the conjunction *et*.

(2) The conjunction *et* is generally used in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and 71; it may be used also in 70, and from 72 to 79, and, besides, in 1001. (When this last number means *a large quantity*, *et* should be used :

Il m'a dit mille et une choses.	He told me very many things).
---------------------------------	-------------------------------

(3) *Un* is the only cardinal number which has a distinct feminine form—*une*.

(4) *Vingt* and *cent* are the only cardinal numbers which can take an *s* in the plural :

Quatre-vingts vaisseaux ; trois cents soldats.	Eighty ships ; three hundred soldiers.
--	--

But, though multiplied by a number, they do not take an *s*—

[a] When they are followed by another number :

Quatre-vingt-cinq vaisseaux.	Eighty-five ships.
------------------------------	--------------------

¹ Other numerals may take *de* before a Past Participle or an Adjective :

Il y eut six officiers de blessés.	There were six officers wounded.
------------------------------------	----------------------------------

[b] When they are used as ordinal numbers [see (8)] :

Page trois **cent**.

Page three hundred.

(5) **Cent** and **mille** are not preceded by **un** unless they are used as collective nouns, in which case they both require the preposition **de** before their noun-complement :

Cent (or mille) fagots.	} A hundred (or a thousand) fagots.
But Uncent (or unmille) de fagots.	

(6) **Mille**, a thousand, does not take an **s** in the plural [see (4)], but **mille**, a mile, naturally does :

Trois **mille** = three thousand.

Trois **milles** = three miles.

(7) **Mille** is replaced by **mil** (L. mille) in dates of the Christian era, when that numeral adjective begins the date and is followed by one or more numbers :

L'an **mil** huit cent quatre-vingt-dix.

The year eighteen hundred and ninety.

But L'an **mille**.

The year one thousand.

L'an deux **mille**, etc.

The year two thousand, etc.

Obs. **Onze cent**, **douze cent**, **treize cent**, etc., are often used instead of *mil cent*, *mil deux cent*, *mil trois cent*, etc.

(8) Cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal—

[a] In dates as above, and for days of the month :

Le **vingt-quatre** février.

On the 24th of February.

[b] For sovereigns :

Louis **seize** ; Charles **dix**.

Louis XVI. ; Charles X.

[c] In quotations of volumes, chapters, pages ; but in that case the ordinal numbers may also be used :

Chapitre trois (or **troisième**).

Chapter III.

Obs. 1. **Premier**, however, is never replaced by **un** :

Le **premier** mai.

On the 1st of May.

François **premier**.

Francis I.

Chapitre **premier**.

Chapter I.

Obs. 2. **Second** was formerly used instead of *deux*, but is now obsolete in that sense.

Obs. 3. Notice that the prepositions *on* and *of* are not translated in dates, and that the names of months are not written with a capital.

Obs. 4. For **Charles-Quint**, *Charles the Fifth of Germany*, and **Sixte-Quint**, *Pope Sixtus the Fifth*, see § 138 (4).

§ 137. WAYS OF EXPRESSING THE TIME OF DAY, DIMENSIONS, etc.—

(1) In expressing the time of day, the fractions of the hour always come last, and the word *minutes* is generally omitted.

From the hour to the half, the fractions are simply put directly after the hour, *et* being used, however, before *quart* and *demie*. (*Et* may be replaced by *un* before *quart*, but not by *une* before *demie*).

From the half-hour to the hour, they are preceded by *moins*, *un* (or *le*) being added before *quart*.

After *midi* (=12 noon) and *minuit* (=12 midnight), which must always be used instead of *douze heures*, the half is expressed by *demi*, not *demie*.

EXAMPLES.

Quelle heure est-il ?

What o'clock is it ?

Il est midi, une heure, deux heures, etc.

It is twelve, one, two o'clock, etc.

Midi cinq, midi dix.

Five (or ten) minutes past twelve.

Midi et (or un) quart.

A quarter-past twelve.

Midi vingt, midi vingt-cinq.

Twenty (or twenty-five) minutes past twelve.

Midi et *demi*.

Half-past twelve.

But Une heure (deux heures, etc.) et *demie*.

Half-past one (two, etc.).

Une heure moins vingt-cinq.

Twenty-five minutes to one.

Une heure moins un quart.

A quarter to one.

Une heure moins cinq, etc.

Five minutes to one, etc.

Obs. 1. Instead of the last three expressions, the following may also be used :

Midi trente-cinq, midi quarante-cinq, midi cinquante-cinq, etc.

Obs. 2. Notice :

À trois heures précises.

At three o'clock precisely.

Vers
Vers les } cinq heures.
Sur les }

At about five o'clock.

Il est environ }
Il est à peu près } six heures.

It is about six o'clock.

Il est près de } sept
Il est un peu plus de } heures.

It is a little { before } seven o'clock.
 { after }

Il est huit heures passées.

It is past eight o'clock.

(2) Notice also the following idioms :

Huit jours ; quinze jours.	<i>A week ; a fortnight.</i>
Il y a eu vendredi huit jours.	<i>Last Friday week.</i>
Il y aura demain quinze jours.	<i>A fortnight ago to-morrow.</i>
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	<i>This day week.</i>
De demain en quinze.	<i>To-morrow fortnight.</i>
Tous les deux jours, } <i>or</i> } De deux jours l'un. }	<i>Every other day.</i>
Tous les trois jours, etc.	<i>Every three days, etc.</i>

(3) In speaking of dimensions, the expression of quantity follows in French the adjectives of dimension (**épais**=*thick*, **haut**=*high*, **large**=*broad*, **long**=*long*, **profond**=*deep*), and is connected with them by the preposition **de** :

Un mur épais de trois pieds.	<i>A wall three feet thick.</i>
Un puits profond de dix mètres.	<i>A well ten metres deep.</i>

Obs. 1. These adjectives are often replaced by the corresponding nouns, in which case both the noun and the expression of quantity are preceded by **de** :

Un mur de trois pieds d' épais- seur , or d' une épaisseur de trois pieds.	<i>A wall three feet thick.</i>
---	---------------------------------

Obs. 2. **Haut**, **large**, and **long** may be used substantively instead of **hauteur**, **largeur**, and **longueur** :

Une chambre de vingt pieds de long (or de longueur).	<i>A room twenty feet long.</i>
--	---------------------------------

Obs. 3. The verb *to be*, used with an adjective of dimension, may be rendered either by **être** with an *adjective* or by **avoir** with the corresponding *noun* :

Cette fenêtre	<table> <tr> <td>est large d'un mètre.</td><td rowspan="4">} <i>This window is one metre wide.</i></td></tr> <tr> <td>a un mètre de largeur.</td></tr> <tr> <td>a un mètre de large.</td></tr> <tr> <td>a une largeur d'un mètre.</td></tr> </table>	est large d'un mètre.	} <i>This window is one metre wide.</i>	a un mètre de largeur.	a un mètre de large.	a une largeur d'un mètre.
est large d'un mètre.	} <i>This window is one metre wide.</i>					
a un mètre de largeur.						
a un mètre de large.						
a une largeur d'un mètre.						

(It is obvious that the preposition **de** cannot be used before the noun following the verb **avoir**, which governs a direct object.)

Obs. 4. In comparing the dimensions of an object, **by** is rendered by **sur** :

Une chambre de vingt pieds de long (or de longueur) sur quinze de large (or de largeur).	<i>A room twenty feet long by fifteen wide.</i>
---	---

(4) In mentioning age, both **avoir** and **être** can be used, but the former is generally preferred :

Il est âgé de vingt ans .	}	<i>He is twenty.</i>
Il a vingt ans .		

Obs. The word **an** must always be expressed.

§ 138. REMARKS ON ORDINAL NUMBERS.—

(1) With the exception of **premier** and **second**, ordinal numbers are formed by adding to the corresponding cardinal numbers the termination **-ième** (L. **-esimum**).

Obs. Notice that—

[a] In compound numbers the last component only takes that termination.

[b] Final *e mute* is suppressed before adding **-ième**.

[c] **Cinq** takes a **u** after **q**.

[d] **Neuf** changes **f** into **v**.

(2) **Unième** is used instead of *premier* in compound numbers, but never alone.

(3) **Deuxième** is likewise used instead of *second* in compound numbers, and, contrary to **unième**, can moreover be used alone when speaking of more than two persons or things.

(4) The first ten ordinal numbers were in old French :

Prime (L. <i>primum</i>).	Sixte (L. <i>sextum</i>).
Second (L. <i>secundum</i>).	Setme (L. <i>septimum</i>).
Tiers (L. <i>tertium</i>).	Oitave (L. <i>octavum</i>).
Quart (L. <i>quartum</i>).	None (L. <i>nonum</i>).
Quint (L. <i>quintum</i>).	Dime (L. <i>decimum</i>).

Prime is still used as a fencing term (= *prime*), and in a few expressions, as **de prime abord**, **de prime face**, *at first sight, from the first moment* ; **de prime saut**, *off-hand, spontaneously* ; **prime-sautier**, *impulsive*.

Tiers stands adjectively in **tiers arbitre**, *umpire* ; **tiers-état**, *Third Estate* (*Commons*) ; **tiers parti**, *third party* ; **tierce personne**, *third person* ; **fièvre tierce**, *tertian ague* ; **main tierce**, *hand of a third person*, etc. ; and substantively in **un tiers**, **deux tiers**, *one third, two thirds* ; **un tiers**, *a third person* ; **le tiers et le quart**, *everybody* ; **une tierce**, *a tierce* (mus., fenc., and at cards), etc.

Quart stands adjectively in *fièvre quarte*, *quartan ague*, and substantively in *le tiers et le quart*, *everybody*; *un quart*, *a quarter*; *le quart*, *the watch* (naut.); *une quarte*, *a fourth* (mus.), *a quarte* (fenc.), *a quart* (at cards).

Quint is used adjectively in *Charles-Quint*, *Sixte-Quint* (see § 136, *Obs.* 4) and *fièvre quinte*, *quintan ague*. **Quinte**, as a noun, means *fifth* (mus.); *viola*; *quint* (at cards); *fit of coughing*; *whim*, *crotchet*.

Sixte is used substantively as a musical term (= *sixth*).

Setme and **oitave** have disappeared altogether; **none** is only found in the Catholic Liturgy, and **dîme** is now a noun, meaning *tithe*.

§ 139. FRACTIONAL NUMERALS.—

Fractional numerals are formed as in English by means of the ordinal numbers; as, *un cinquième* = $\frac{1}{5}$; *cinq sixièmes* = $\frac{5}{6}$, etc.

Except the first three :

un demi (L. *dimidium*) or *une moitié* (L. *medietatem*) = $\frac{1}{2}$; *un tiers* (L. *tertium*) = $\frac{1}{3}$; *un quart* (L. *quartum*) = $\frac{1}{4}$.

§ 140. PROPORTIONAL NUMERALS.—

The only proportional numerals which the French language possesses are—

Double (L. <i>duplum</i>)	<i>double.</i>	Septuple (L. <i>septuplum</i>)	<i>sevenfold.</i>
Triple (L. <i>triplum</i>)	<i>treble.</i>	Octuple (L. <i>octuplum</i>)	<i>eightfold.</i>
Quadruple (L. <i>quadruplum</i>)	<i>fourfold.</i>	Nonuple (L. <i>nonum+plum</i>)	<i>ninefold.</i>
Quintuple (L. <i>quintuplum</i>)	<i>fivefold.</i>	Décuple (L. <i>decuplum</i>)	<i>tenfold.</i>
Sextuple (L. <i>sextuplum</i>)	<i>sixfold.</i>	Centuple (L. <i>centuplum</i>)	<i>hundredfold.</i>

In other cases, a circumlocution is used :

Onze fois autant.	<i>Elevenfold.</i>
Douze fois autant, etc.	<i>Twelvefold, etc.</i>

Obs. *Une fois*, *deux fois*, *trois fois*, *quatre fois*, etc., correspond to the English *once*, *twice*, *three times*, *four times*, etc.

(**Fois** comes from L. *vices*.)

§ 141. COLLECTIVE NUMERALS.—

(1) The following collective numerals, denoting an approximative number, have been formed from the cardinal numbers by means of the suffix *-aine* (L. *-anam*):¹

Une huitaine	<i>about eight.</i>	Une trentaine ²	<i>about thirty.</i>
Une dizaine	<i>about ten.</i>	Une quarantaine ²	<i>about forty.</i>
Une douzaine	<i>about twelve.</i>	Une cinquantaine ²	<i>about fifty.</i>
Une quinzaine	<i>about fifteen.</i>	Une soixantaine ²	<i>about sixty.</i>
Une vingtaine	<i>about twenty.</i>	Une centaine ²	<i>about a hundred.</i>

Obs. Notice also **un millier** (L. *millarium*), *about a thousand* :

Des **milliers** de personnes.

Thousands of people.

(2) The following are real adjectives, but are often used substantively :

Quadragénaire (L. <i>quadragenarium</i>)	<i>containing forty units ; forty years old.</i>
Quinquagénaire (L. <i>quinquagenarium</i>)	<i>containing fifty units ; fifty years old.</i>
Sexagénaire (L. <i>sexagenarium</i>)	<i>sexagenary ; sexagenarian.</i>
Septuagénaire (L. <i>septuagenarium</i>)	<i>septuagenary ; septuagenarian.</i>
Octogénaire (L. <i>octogenarium</i>)	<i>octogenary ; octogenarian.</i>
Nonagénaire (L. <i>nonagenarium</i>)	<i>of ninety ; nonagenarian.</i>
Centenaire (L. <i>centenarium</i>)	<i>centenary ; centenarian.</i>

II.—Possessive Adjectives.

§ 142. The Possessive Adjectives are—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	FEM.	FOR BOTH GENDERS.	
Mon (L. <i>meum</i>)	ma (L. <i>meam</i>)	mes (L. <i>meos, meas</i>)	<i>my.</i>
Ton (L. <i>tuum</i>)	ta (L. <i>tuam</i>)	tes (L. <i>tuos, tuas</i>)	<i>thy.</i>
Son (L. <i>suum</i>)	sa (L. <i>suam</i>)	ses (L. <i>suos, suas</i>)	<i>his, hers, its.</i>
FOR BOTH GENDERS.			
Notre (L. <i>nostrum, nostram</i>)		nos (L. <i>nostros, nostras</i>)	<i>our.</i>
Votre (L. <i>vostrium, vostram</i>)		vos (L. <i>vostros, vostras</i>)	<i>your.</i>
Leur (L. <i>illorum</i>)		leurs (O.F. <i>leur</i>)	<i>the</i>

¹ Notice **un quatrain**, *a quatrain* ; **un sixain**, *a stanza of six verses* ; **une neuvaine**, *a nine days' prayer* ; **un dizain**, *a decastich*.

² Il a passé la trentaine, la quarantaine, etc., *he is over thirty, forty, etc.*

Obs. 1. Notice that **leur** has no distinct form for the feminine :

Leur mère.

Their mother.

Obs. 2. **Mon, ton, son** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa**, for the sake of euphony, before a *vowel* or *silent h* : ¹

Mon espérance

My hope,

Son habitude

His habit,

but **ma hache** (*my axe*), because the *h* in *hache* is not silent.

Obs. 3. **Ton** is chiefly used with relatives and intimate friends. In other cases it is replaced, out of politeness, by **votre**, which, when speaking to some one of his relatives, is preceded by the word *monsieur, madame, or mademoiselle* :

Comment se porte **madame**
votre mère?

How is your mother?

§ 143. Possessive adjectives always agree with the *object possessed*, i.e. the *following* noun, not with the possessor, as in English :

Son frère.

His or her brother.

Sa sœur.

His or her sister.

Obs. Remember that they must be repeated before each noun (see § 133) :

Ses frères et **ses** sœurs.

His or her brothers and sisters.

III.—Demonstrative Adjectives.

§ 144. The Demonstrative Adjectives are—

SINGULAR.		FEM. (in all cases).	PLURAL.
MASC.			MASC. or FEM.
Ce (L. ecce hoc), used before a consonant.	}	Cette = { <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> .	} Ces = { <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> .
Cet (L. ecce istum), used before a vowel or silent <i>h</i> .			

¹ In Old French the *a* of **ma, ta, sa** used to be elided : **m'amie** (whence now **ma mie**), *my darling* ; **m'amour** (*amour* being formerly feminine even in the singular), *my love*.

EXAMPLES.

Ce volume	<i>this volume.</i>	Ces volumes	<i>these volumes.</i>
Ce hameau	<i>this hamlet.</i>	Ces hameaux	<i>these hamlets.</i>
Cet écrivain	<i>this writer.</i>	Ces écrivains	<i>these writers.</i>
Cet homme	<i>this man.</i>	Ces hommes	<i>these men.</i>
Cette arme	<i>this weapon.</i>	Ces armes	<i>these weapons.</i>
Cette rue	<i>this street.</i>	Ces rues	<i>these streets.</i>
Cette habitude	<i>this habit.</i>	Ces habitudes	<i>these habits.</i>
Cette haine	<i>this hatred.</i>	Ces haines	<i>these hatreds.</i>

§ 145. To express the distinction between *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, *ci* and *là* are placed after the nouns, to which they are joined by a hyphen :

Ce livre-ci,	<i>this book.</i>	Ce livre-là,	<i>that book.</i>
Ces livres-ci,	<i>these books.</i>	Ces livres-là,	<i>those books.</i>

[*ci* is an abbreviation of *ici* (= *here*), from L. *ecce hic* ; *là* (= *there*) comes from L. *illac*].

§ 146. Remember that demonstrative adjectives must be repeated before every noun (see § 133) :

Ces oiseaux et **ces** fleurs.

These birds and flowers.

IV.—Interrogative Adjective.

§ 147. The only Interrogative Adjective is **quel** (= *what*) :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
MASC.	Quel (L. <i>qualem</i>).	Quels .
FEM.	Quelle .	Quelles .

EXAMPLES.

Quel livre lisez-vous ?

What book are you reading ?

Quelle heure est-il ?

What o'clock is it ?

Quels crayons voulez-vous ?

What pencils do you want

Quelles villes traverseront-ils ?

What towns will they pass through ?

§ 148. *Quel* is also used in exclamations :

Quel triste temps !

What sad weather !

Quelles jolies fleurs !

What pretty flowers !

Obs. Remember that the indefinite article used after *what* in English is always omitted in French (see § 31 [3]) :

Quelle idée !

What an idea !

V.—Indefinite Adjectives.

§ 149. The Indefinite Adjectives are—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	
Aucun ¹ (L. aliquem unum)	aucune	aucuns	aucunes	} any, not any, no.
Pas un ¹ (pas, from L. passum)	pas une	(None)	(None)	
Autre ¹ (L. alterum)	autre	autres	autres	others.
L'un et l'autre ¹	l'une et l'autre	(None)	(None)	both.
L'un ou l'autre ¹	l'une ou l'autre	(None)	(None)	either.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ¹	ni l'une ni l'autre	(None)	(None)	neither.
Certain (L.L. certanum)	certaine	certains ¹	certaines	a certain, some.
Chaque (L. quisque)	chaque	(None)	(None)	each.
Maint (Germ. manch)	mainte	maints	maintes	many a, many.
Même (L.L. metipsimum)	même	mêmes	mêmes	same, self, very.
Nul ¹ (L. nullum)	nulle	nuls	nulles	no, not any.
(None)	(None)	plusieurs ¹	plusieurs	several.
Quelconque (L. qualemcnque)	quelconque	quelconques	quelconques	any, what- ever.
Quel que	quelle que	quels que	quelles que	whatever.
Quelque (from quel and que)	quelque	quelques	quelques	some.
Quelque... que	quelque... que	quelque(s) ... que	quelque(s) ... que	whatever, however.
Tel ¹ (L. talem)	telle	tels	telles	such, like.
Tout ¹ (L. totum)	toute	tous	toutes	all, every, any.

¹ May also be used as pronouns (see § 208).

OBSERVATIONS.

§ 150. **Aucun**, in the sense of *any*, is used in *interrogative* and *dubitative* sentences, and after **sans** :

Avez-vous aucun espoir?	<i>Have you any hope?</i>
Si j'avais aucun espoir . . .	<i>If I had any hope . . .</i>
Sans aucun espoir.	<i>Without any hope.</i>

Obs. **Pas un**, in the same sense of *any*, is chiefly used without a noun in *dubitative* sentences :

Si j'en ai vu pas un . . .	<i>If I have seen any . . .</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

§ 151. **Ne** is required before the verb with—

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (1) Aucun | } when used in a negative sense. |
| (2) Pas un | |
| (3) Ni l'un ni l'autre | } always. |
| (4) Nul | |

Il n'a { aucun pas un nul } ami.	<i>He has not any friend.</i>
---	-------------------------------

Ni l'un ni l'autre plan ne lui convient.	<i>Neither plan suits him.</i>
---	--------------------------------

§ 152. **Aucun** and **nul** are seldom used in the plural, except with nouns which have no singular.

§ 153. The noun which follows **l'un et l'autre**, **l'un ou l'autre**, **ni l'un ni l'autre**, remains in the singular :

L'une et l'autre	} armée.	<i>Both armies.</i>
L'une ou l'autre		<i>Either</i>
Ni l'une ni l'autre		<i>Neither</i> } army.

After **l'un et l'autre**, and **ni l'un ni l'autre**, the verb may be put either in the singular or in the plural ; but after **l'un ou l'autre**, it always stands in the *singular* :

L'un et l'autre chef	{ périt or périssent.	} <i>perished.</i>
Ni l'un ni l'autre chef ne		
L'une ou l'autre maison leur ira.		<i>Either house will do for them.</i>

§ 154. **Certain** may be preceded or not, in the singular, by **un**, and in the plural by **de** :

(Un) certain homme.

A certain man.

(De) certains hommes.

Certain men.

Obs. **Certain**, as a qualificative adjective, means *sure, reliable*, and always *follows* its noun :

Des nouvelles **certaines**.

Reliable news.

§ 155. **Chaque** is always followed by a noun, contrary to **chacun**, which is a pronoun :

Chaque auteur.

Each author.

But **Chacun** de ces auteurs.

Each of these authors.

§ 156. **Maint** may be used indifferently in the singular or plural, and may be repeated :

Mainte fois.

Maintes fois.

Mainte et mainte fois.

Maintes et maintes fois.

Many a time.

§ 157. **Même** means *same* when it precedes the noun ; *self, very*, when it follows it :

La **même** charité.

The same charity.

La charité **même**.

Charity itself.

When used directly after a personal pronoun, **même** is joined to it by a hyphen :

Moi-même, eux-mêmes, etc.

(I) myself, (they) themselves, etc.

Obs. **Même** is an adverb (= *even*), and consequently invariable, chiefly when it precedes a determinative word :

Même ses ennemis le respectent.

Even his enemies respect him.

§ 158. Remember that **plusieurs** has no distinct form for the feminine :

Plusieurs hommes et **plusieurs**
femmes.

Several men and women.

§ 159. **Quelconque**, contrary to the general rule (see § 133), always *follows* its noun :

Un livre **quelconque**.

Some book or other ; any book whatever.

§ 160. *Quel que* requires the verb in the subjunctive and the noun-subject after the verb :

Quelles que soient ses raisons.

Whatever his reasons may be.

§ 161. *Quelque . . . que* may be used either with nouns, meaning *whatever*, or with adjectives and adverbs, meaning *however*, and in both cases requires the subjunctive ; but in the first case *quelque* may take the sign of the plural, whilst in the second it is invariable :

Quelques raisons qu'il ait.

Whatever reasons he may have.

Quelque bonnes que soient ses raisons.

However good his reasons may be.

Obs. The subject, when it is a noun, is generally placed *after* the verb.

§ 162. *Tel* is generally preceded by *un* in the singular, by *de* in the plural :

Une telle faute.

Such a mistake.

De telles fautes.

Such mistakes.

Obs. *Tel* is never used before an adjective, but replaced by *si* or *tellement* :

Un si beau ciel.

Such a beautiful sky.

§ 163. *Tout* is used—

(1) Without the article, chiefly *in the singular*, meaning *any* :

Toute ville.

Any town.

(2) With the article (a few idioms excepted), *in the plural*, meaning *all* :

Toutes les villes.

All towns.

(3) Always with the article, in the *singular*, meaning *whole* :

Toute la ville.

The whole town.

Obs. 1. Notice that *tout* always precedes the article.

Obs. 2. *Tout*, meaning *quite*, is an adverb, but, though an adverb, agrees, for the sake of euphony, *before a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or aspirated h* :

Elle fut **tout** étonnée.

She was quite astonished.

But Elle fut **toute** surprise.

She was quite surprised.

(For more details on Indefinite Adjectives, see *Syntax*, §§ 73-106.)

THE PRONOUN.

§ 164. Pronouns, contrary to adjectives, do not qualify nouns, but take their place.

There are six classes of pronouns—(1) the *personal*; (2) the *possessive*; (3) the *demonstrative*; (4) the *relative*; (5) the *interrogative*; (6) the *indefinite*.

A.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 165. Personal pronouns are either *conjunctive*, i.e. standing in immediate connection with a verb; as,

Comprenez-**vous** ce qu'il dit?

Do you understand what he says?

Parlez-**leur**.

Speak to them.

or *disjunctive*, i.e. standing alone or after a preposition; as,

Qui est là?—**Moi**.

Who is there?—I.

Allez avec **eux**.

Go with them.

I.—Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ 166. The Conjunctive Personal Pronouns are—

(a) FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N **Je** (L. ego [eo, io, jol]) *I.*

Nous (L. nos) *we.*

G. (None.)

(None.)

D. **Me** *me, to me.*

Nous *us, to us.*

A. **Me** (L. me) *me.*

Nous *us*

(b) SECOND PERSON.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. Tu (L. tu)	<i>thou.</i>	Vous (L. vos)	<i>you.</i>
G. (None.)		(None.)	
D. Te	<i>thee, to thee.</i>	Vous	<i>you, to you.</i>
A. Te (L. te)	<i>thee.</i>	Vous	<i>you.</i>

(c) THIRD PERSON.

N. { Il (L. ille, illud)	<i>he, it.</i>	Ils (L. illos)	} <i>they.</i>
Elle (L. illa)	<i>she, it.</i>	Elles (L. illas)	
G. En (L. inde)	{ <i>of it sometimes</i> <i>of him, of her.</i>	En	<i>of them.</i>
D. { Lui (L. illi huic, illuic)	<i>to him, to her.</i>	Leur (L. illorum)	} <i>them, to them.</i>
Y (L. ibi)	{ <i>to it (sometimes</i> <i>to him, to her).</i>	Y	
A. { Le (L. illum)	<i>him, it.</i>	} Les (L. illos, illas)	<i>them.</i>
La (L. illam)	<i>her, it.</i>		

Obs. 1. Conjunctive personal pronouns have no genitive. They are replaced in the genitive by disjunctive pronouns :—*De moi, of me ; de toi, of thee ; de lui, of him ; d'elle, of her ; de nous, of us ; de vous, of you ; d'eux, of them ; d'elles, of them.*

En, however, is used instead of *de lui, d'elles, d'eux, d'elles*, in speaking of *things*, sometimes of persons (see § 173).

Obs. 2. *Y* likewise is used instead of *à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*, in speaking of *things*, sometimes of persons. *Y* means also *there* (see § 174).

Obs. 3. *Leur*, as a personal pronoun meaning *to them*, is invariable ; but as a possessive adjective meaning *their*, *leur* may take the mark of the plural (see § 142).

PLACE OF CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—

§ 167. AS SUBJECTS.—Conjunctive personal pronouns used as subjects must be placed close to the verb, and, when it is in a compound tense, close to the auxiliary :

Il plaisante toujours ainsi.
Il a toujours aimé à plaisanter.

He always jests in that way.
He has always been fond of jesting.

EXCEPTIONS.—They may be separated from the verb—

[a] By the negative **ne** :

Il ne plaisante jamais.

He never jests.

[b] By other conjunctive pronouns used as objects :

Je le leur avais déjà dit.

I had already said it to them.

§ 168. Conjunctive personal pronouns used as subjects are generally placed *before* the verb, and when it is in a compound tense, *before* the auxiliary :

Nous écoutons.

We are listening.

Vous n'avez pas écouté.

You have not listened.

EXCEPTIONS.—They are placed *after* the finite verb—

[a] In interrogative sentences (formed without **est-ce que**) :

Viendra-t-il ?

Will he come ?

Est-il venu ?

Has he come ?

[b] In parenthetical sentences introduced in the middle of a quotation, or directly following it :

“Mes enfants,” dit-il, “écoutez.”

“My children,” said he, “listen.”

“Que je te plains !” s’écria-t-il.

“How I pity you !” he exclaimed.

(For other exceptions, see *Syntax*, § 109.)

§ 169. AS OBJECTS.—Conjunctive personal pronouns used as objects are placed *before* the verb—and with compound tenses, *before* the auxiliary—except when the verb is in the **Imperative affirmative** :

[a] **Nous les** verrons.

We will see them.

Nous les avons vus.

We have seen them.

Les avez-vous vus ?

Did you see them ?

Ne les avez-vous pas vus ?

Did you not see them ?

Ne nous levons pas.

Let us not get up.

Ne lui montrez pas ce livre.

Do not show him this book.

Ne leur dites pas de venir.

Do not tell them to come.

[b] **Levons-nous.**

Let us get up.

Montrez-lui ce livre.

Show him this book.

Dites-leur de venir.

Tell them to come.

Obs. After the *Imperative affirmative* **moi** and **toi** stand for **me** and **te**, except before **en** and **y** :

Donnez-moi de l'eau.

Give me some water.

Assieds-toi.

Sit down.

But **Donnez-m'en.**

Give me some.

§ 170. When a verb has two conjunctive personal pronouns for objects, the *indirect object precedes the direct*, except when both pronouns are of the *third person*, or when the verb is in the *Imperative affirmative*:

[a] Je vous le donne.	<i>I give it to you.</i>
Je vous les ai donnés.	<i>I have given them to you.</i>
Me les avez-vous donnés?	<i>Have you given them to me?</i>
Nous ne te les avons pas donnés.	<i>We have not given them to you.</i>
Ne nous les avez-vous pas donnés?	<i>Have you not given them to us?</i>
Ne me les donnez pas.	<i>Do not give them to me.</i>
[b] Je le lui donne.	<i>I give it to him.</i>
Je les leur ai donnés.	<i>I have given them to them.</i>
Je ne le lui donne pas.	<i>I do not give it to him.</i>
Ne les leur avez-vous pas donnés?	<i>Have you not given them to them?</i>
Ne le lui donnez pas.	<i>Do not give it to him.</i>
[c] Donnez- le - moi .	<i>Give it to me.</i>
Donnez- les - nous .	<i>Give them to us.</i>
Donnez- les - vous .	<i>Give them to yourself.</i>

§ 171. **Y** and **en** come *after* all other pronouns, and when they stand together, **y** *precedes en*:

Je vous y verrai.	<i>I shall see you there.</i>
Les y avez-vous vus?	<i>Did you see them there?</i>
Il m'en a donné.	<i>He gave me some.</i>
Donnez- lui-en .	<i>Give him some.</i>
Ne lui en donnez pas.	<i>Do not give him any.</i>
N' y en avez-vous pas trouvé?	<i>Did you not find any there?</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 110-127.)

§ 172. PARTICULAR USE OF THE PRONOUN **le**.—The pronoun **le** agrees in gender and number, like other pronouns, with its antecedent, when it is a noun used in a determinate sense:

Êtes-vous les témoins?—Nous les sommes.	<i>Are you the witnesses?—We are.</i>
--	---------------------------------------

But when **le** refers to a noun used indeterminately or adjectively, an adjective, a verb, or a whole clause, it remains *invariable*:

Êtes-vous amis?—Nous le sommes.	<i>Are you friends?—We are.</i>
Si vous êtes vexé, nous le sommes aussi.	<i>If you are vexed, we are too.</i>

(For more details on **le**, see *Syntax*, §§ 122-125.)

§ 173. CHIEF USES OF **en**.—**En** is chiefly used—

(1) Instead of **de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, de ceci, de cela**, with reference to things or a whole clause, seldom to persons :

Je n' en ai pas besoin.	<i>I have no need of it.</i>
Nous en parlerons.	<i>We will speak of it.</i>
But Nous parlons de lui, d'elle .	<i>We are speaking of him, of her.</i>

(2) Partitively, to translate *some* or *any*, or with numerals, adjectives, and adverbs of quantity referring to a noun mentioned before :

Voulez-vous de l'argent?— Merci, j'en ai.	<i>Do you want money?—No, thank you, I have some.</i>
N'avez-vous pas d'amis?—Je n' en ai pas.	<i>Have you not any friends?—I have not any.</i>
J' en ai vu de fort beaux.	<i>I have seen very fine ones.</i>
Combien en avez-vous pris?	<i>How many did you take?</i>
J' en ai pris quatre.	<i>I have taken four.</i>

(3) With reference to a place mentioned before, answering the question *whence*?

Est-il toujours à Londres?—Il en est revenu ce matin.	<i>Is he still in London?—He came back this morning.</i>
--	--

(See *Syntax*, §§ 129-131.)

§ 174. CHIEF USES OF **y**.—**Y** is chiefly used—

(1) Instead of **à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles, à ceci, à cela**, with reference to things or a whole clause, seldom to persons :

C'est une tâche délicate, consacrez- y tout votre temps.	<i>It is a delicate task, devote all your time to it.</i>
Il voudrait partir, mais je n' y consentirai pas.	<i>He would like to start, but I will not consent to it.</i>
Nous y pensions.	<i>We were thinking of it.</i>
But Nous pensions à lui, à elle .	<i>We were thinking of him, of her.</i>

(2) With reference to a place mentioned before, answering the questions *where* ? *whither* ?

Était-il chez lui?—Non, il n' y était pas.	<i>Was he at home?—No, he was not.</i>
Avez-vous été en Italie?—Non, je n' y ai jamais été.	<i>Have you been to Italy?—No, I have never been there.</i>

(See *Syntax*, §§ 129, 132, 133.)

§ 175. REFLEXIVE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.—The personal pronouns **me**, **te**, **nous**, **vous**, are used as reflexive conjunctive pronouns, both in the accusative and dative :

Je **me** (*acc.*) suis fort amusé.

I have enjoyed myself very much.

Vous **vous** (*dat.*) nuirez dans leur esprit.

You will injure yourself in their opinion.

§ 176. For the third person there is a special form **se** (L. *se*), which is of both numbers and genders, and stands, as direct or indirect object, before all other pronouns objects :

Ils **se** sont fort amusés.

They have enjoyed themselves very much.

Elle **se** nuira dans leur esprit.

She will injure herself in their opinion.

§ 177. Reflexive pronouns are also used reciprocally in the sense of *one another, each other* :

Vous êtes-vous vus ?

Did you see each other ?

Ils ne **se** parlent pas.

They do not speak to each other.

Obs. When there is ambiguity, *i.e.* when the verb might be thought to be *reflexive* and not *reciprocal*, **l'un l'autre** or **les uns les autres** is added after the verb to show reciprocity (see § 210) :

Ils **se** louent **les uns les autres**.

They praise each other.

(“*Ils se louent*” alone might mean “*they praise themselves.*”)

§ 178. Reflexive verbs are often used to translate the English passive voice :

Comment **vous** appelez-vous ?

How are you called ?

Tout **s'est** fait en un moment.

All was done in a moment.

II.—Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ 179. The Disjunctive Personal Pronouns are—

First Person.		SINGULAR. Second Person.		Third Person.	
N. Moi (L. <i>mihi</i> , <i>mi</i>)	<i>I.</i>	Toi (L. <i>tibi</i>)	<i>thou.</i>	{ Lui	<i>he.</i>
G. de moi	<i>of me.</i>	de toi	<i>of thee.</i>	{ Elle	<i>she.</i>
D. à moi	<i>to me.</i>	à toi	<i>to thee.</i>	{ de lui	<i>of him.</i>
A. moi	<i>me.</i>	toi	<i>thee.</i>	{ d'elle	<i>of her.</i>
				{ à lui	<i>to him.</i>
				{ à elle	<i>to her.</i>
				{ lui	<i>him.</i>
				{ elle	<i>her.</i>

First Person.		PLURAL. Second Person.		Third Person.	
N. Nous	<i>we.</i>	Vous	<i>you.</i>	{ Eux (L. illos) Elles	} <i>they.</i>
G. de nous	<i>of us.</i>	de vous	<i>of you.</i>	{ d'eux d'elles	} <i>of them.</i>
D. à nous	<i>to us.</i>	à vous	<i>to you.</i>	{ à eux à elles	} <i>to them.</i>
A. nous	<i>us.</i>	vous	<i>you.</i>	{ eux elles	} <i>them.</i>

§ 180. CHIEF USES OF DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—Disjunctive personal pronouns are chiefly used—

(1) When the verb is understood :

Qui le fera?—**Moi.**

Who will do it?—I.

Qui avez-vous vu?—**Lui.**

Whom did you see?—Him.

Il n'est pas plus grand que **toi.**

He is not taller than you.

J'y étais aussi bien qu'**eux.**

I was there as well as they.

Il écrira le commencement, **moi**
la fin.

He will write the beginning, I the end.

(2) Before a participle and any word or words which separate the pronoun from its verb (see, however, § 167, Exc.):¹

Moi, voyant cela, je me tus.

I, seeing that, kept silent.

Eux, surpris et charmés, me regardèrent.

They, surprised and delighted, looked at me.

Toi aussi, tu le sais.

You also know it.

Lui seul viendra.

He alone will come.

Moi, qui m'en doutais, je me mis
à rire.

I, who suspected it, began to laugh.

Obs. When **moi** and **toi** are thus used as subjects, the conjunctive pronouns **je** and **tu** are placed before the verb.

(3) After the verb **être** preceded or followed by the pronoun **ce** :

C'est **moi** ; c'est **toi**.²

It is I ; it is you.

Était-ce **lui** ?

Was it he ?

¹ Notice the compound pronouns—**Moi-même** (*I myself* ; **toi-même**, (*thou thyself* ; **lui-même**, (*he himself* ; **elle-même**, (*she herself* ; **nous-mêmes**, (*we ourselves* ; **vous-mêmes**, (*you yourselves* ; **eux-mêmes**, **elles-mêmes**, (*they themselves*).

² Notice that the verb **être** is used in the plural before a plural pronoun of the **third** person : C'est nous, *it is we* ; but **ce sont eux**, *it is they*.

(4) When the verb has several subjects or objects (in which case, especially when the subjects or objects are of different persons, a conjunctive pronoun of the person which has priority is generally placed before the verb):

Mon frère et moi , nous partirons demain.	<i>My brother and I will start to-morrow.</i>
Toi ou lui, vous le ferez.	<i>You or he will do it.</i>
Je les verrai, lui et sa sœur.	<i>I will see him and his sister.</i>
Il nous a avertis, eux et moi .	<i>He has warned them and me.</i>

(5) As indirect objects after a preposition :

Nous parlions de toi .	<i>We were speaking of you.</i>
C'est pour lui que je le fais.	<i>It is for him that I do it.</i>
Irez-vous avec eux ?	<i>Will you go with them?</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 136-138.)

§ 181. IMPORTANT OBSERVATION.—The preposition *à*, which is understood before personal pronouns with most verbs governing the dative, must be expressed (except when *y* may be used) and followed by a disjunctive pronoun—

(1) When the direct object is of the first or second person :

Envoyez-moi à eux .	<i>Send me <u>to them</u>.</i>
Je te confie à lui .	<i>I intrust you <u>to him</u>.</i>
Qui vous a adressé à moi ?	<i>Who has directed you <u>to me</u>?</i>

(2) With reflexive verbs :

Il se recommande à toi .	<i>He recommends himself <u>to you</u>.</i>
Pourquoi s'en prendre à moi ?	<i>Why lay the blame <u>on me</u>?</i>

(3) With verbs of motion taken in their literal sense (*aller*, *to go*; *courir*, *to run*; *venir*, *to come*, etc.), and a few others, as *accoutumer*, *to accustom*; *aspirer*, *to aspire*; *être*, *to belong*; *penser*, *to think*; *renoncer*, *to renounce*; *viser*, *to aim* :

Il courut à moi .	<i>He ran <u>to me</u>.</i>
Je n'aspire pas à elle .	<i>I do not aspire <u>to her</u>.</i>
Nous pensions à toi .	<i>We were thinking <u>of you</u>.</i>
Renoncez à lui .	<i>Give <u>him up</u>.</i>

(4) When the verb is used with *ne . . . que* (= *only*):

Il ne plaît qu' à toi .	<i>He pleases <u>you only</u>.</i>
Je n'obéirai qu' à lui .	<i>I will obey <u>him alone</u>.</i>

§ 182. THE REFLEXIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN *soi*.—When the reflexive disjunctive pronoun *soi* (L. *sibi*) refers to *persons*, it is used, as a rule, in an indeterminate sense, *i.e.* after an indefinite pronoun, like *chacun*, *nul*, *on*, *personne*, expressed or implied :

Chacun pour *soi*.

Every one for himself.

L'amour de *soi*.

Self-love.

Il ne faut pas toujours parler de *soi*.

We must not always speak of ourselves.

But Est il chez lui?

Is he at home?

In speaking of *things*, it may be used with reference to a determinate noun, almost invariably in the singular :

La vertu trouve sa récompense en *soi*.

Virtue finds its reward in itself.

(See *Syntax*, § 141.)

B.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 183. The Possessive Pronouns are—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
M. Le mien	les miens	} <i>mine.</i>	Le nôtre	} les nôtres	<i>ours.</i>
(L. meum)			(L. nostrum)		
F. La mienne	les miennes	} <i>thine.</i>	La nôtre	} les vôtres	<i>yours.</i>
M. Le tien	les tiens		Le vôtre		
(L. tuum)		} <i>his, hers, its.</i>	(L. vostrum)	} les leurs	<i>theirs.</i>
F. La tienne	les tiennes		La vôtre		
M. Le sien	les siens		Le leur		
(L. suum)			(L. illorum)		
F. La sienne	les siennes		La leur		

Obs. 1. The pronouns *nôtre* and *vôtre* take a circumflex accent over the *o*—contrary to the adjectives *notre* and *votre*,—the tonic accent resting on them, whilst it does not on the corresponding adjectives.

Obs. 2. Notice further that the plural of the adjectives *notre*, *votre*, is *nos*, *vos*, whilst the pronouns *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, become in the plural *les nôtres*, *les vôtres*.

Obs. 3. Out of politeness, *le vôtre* is used instead of *le tien* in the same way as *votre* instead of *ton* (see § 142, *Obs. 3*).

§ 184. Possessive pronouns agree in person with the possessor, but in gender and number with the object possessed :

Sa sœur et la mienne.

His sister and mine.

Voici mes livres, où sont les
siens?

*Here are my books, where are his (or
hers)?*

§ 185. They are generally replaced by *à moi*, *à toi*, etc., after the verb *être* expressed or understood :

Ce crayon est-il *à vous* ou *à lui*?

Is this pencil yours or his?

Tout *à vous*.

Yours truly.

(See *Syntax*, §§ 142-145.)

C.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 186. Of the six Demonstrative Pronouns, three are invariable—

Ce (L. ecce hoc, O.F. iço, go)

this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they,

Ceci (formed by affixing *ci*; cf. § 145)

this,

Cela (formed by affixing *là*; cf. § 145)

that,

whilst the others have distinct forms for the feminine and plural—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
M. Celui (oblique case of O.F. icel, L. eccillum) } <i>that, the one,</i> F. Celle (L. eccillam) } <i>he, she</i>	ceux (L. eccillos) } celles (L. eccillas) } <i>those, the ones, they.</i>
M. Celui-ci } F. Celle-ci } <i>this one, the latter</i>	ceux-ci } celles-ci } <i>these, the latter.</i>
M. Celui-là } F. Celle-là } <i>that one, the former</i>	ceux-là } celles-là } <i>those, the former.</i>

§ 187. CHIEF USES OF *ce*.—The demonstrative pronoun *ce* is generally used before—

(1) A relative pronoun (*qui*, *que*, *dont*, *à quoi*) :

Ce qui m'amuse.

What amuses me.

Ce que j'aime.

What I like.

Ce dont nous parlons.

What we are speaking of.

Ce à quoi je pense.

What I am thinking of.

(2) The verb **être**, which may be preceded by the verbs **devoir**, **pouvoir**, and **savoir** (in the sense of **pouvoir**):

C'est vrai.		<i>It is true.</i>
Ce doit être vrai.		<i>It must be true.</i>
Ce ne peut être vrai.	}	<i>It cannot be true.</i>
Ce ne saurait être vrai.		

§ 138. **Ce** is used with **être** to translate the demonstrative pronouns *this, that, these, those*, connected with a *following noun*:

Ce sont de bien pauvres raisons.	<i>Those are very poor reasons.</i>
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Obs. The adverb **là** is often used emphatically after **être**:

Sont-ce là vos livres?	<i>Are these your books?</i>
------------------------	------------------------------

§ 139. **Ce** is used with **être** to translate not only *this, that*, but also the pronoun *it* taken impersonally—

(1) In connection with **ce que** and all interrogative pronouns and adverbs:

Je sais ce que c'est.	<i>I know what it is.</i>
Qui est-ce?	<i>Who is it?</i>
Qu'est-ce? Qu'est-ce que c'est?	<i>What is it?</i>
Combien est-ce? Où est-ce?	<i>How much is it? Where is it?</i>

Obs. Notice, however, the difference between **ce** and **il** in the following sentences:

Quelle heure est-ce?	<i>What o'clock is that?</i>
Quelle heure est-il?	<i>What o'clock is it?</i>

(2) Before a qualificative adjective, an infinitive or an adverb, when referring to a *previous statement*:

Ils ont raison, c'est évident.	}	<i>It is evident that they are right.</i>
But Il est évident qu'ils ont raison.		
C'est à craindre.		<i>It is to be feared.</i>
But Il est à craindre que . . .		<i>It is to be feared that . . .</i>
C'est bien.		<i>It is well.</i>

(3) Before a conjunction :

C'est comme vous le dites.*It is as you say.*

§ 190. **Ce** is, besides, used with **être** to translate *he, she, it, they*, before—

(1) A proper name :

C'est Alfred et Georges.*It is Alfred and George.*

(2) A noun determined by an article, a possessive or a demonstrative adjective :

C'est l'artiste dont je vous ai parlé.*He is the artist of whom I spoke to you.***C'était un vaillant capitaine.***He was a valiant captain.***Ce sont des Américains.***They are Americans.***C'est mon cousin.***It is my cousin.***C'est cet homme.***It is that man.*

But **Il est artiste, ils sont Américains, etc.**

(3) A superlative relative :

Lisez ces vers, **ce sont les plus beaux.***Read these verses, they are the finest.*

(4) A personal, possessive, or demonstrative pronoun :

Ce sont eux.*It is they.***À qui est ce livre?—C'est le mien.***Whose book is that? —It is mine.***C'est celui de mon frère.***It is my brother's.***C'est cela.***That's it.*

§ 191. Lastly, **ce** is used *expletively* with **être**—

(1) When the first member of the sentence begins with **ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi**, and the verb **être**, at the beginning of the second, is followed by a noun (not used adjectively) or a personal pronoun :

Ce qui me console, ce sont vos bontés.*What comforts me is your kindness.***Ce que je redoute, c'est lui.***It is he whom I fear.*

(2) Between two infinitives, the first of which is subject of the verb **être** :

Vouloir, c'est pouvoir.*Where there is a will, there is a way.*

(3) Often, but not necessarily, when the order of the two parts of the sentence may be inverted :

Le courage, **c'est** sa seule vertu.

Courage is his only virtue.

Sa seule vertu, **c'est** le courage.

His only virtue is courage.

(4) When, for the sake of emphasis, the subject is placed at the end of the sentence, in which case it is generally preceded by the conjunction **que** :

C'est se moquer de nous **que**
d'agir ainsi.

To act thus is to laugh at us.

C'est une belle ville **que** Paris.

Paris is a beautiful town.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 146-151.)

§ 192. **Ceci** AND **cela**.—**Ceci** (=this), **cela** (=that), are used in referring—

(1) To something pointed at (not to an object already mentioned, in which case **celui-ci**, **celui-là**, must be used) :

Ceci est bon, **cela** est meilleur.

This is good, that is better.

(2) To a whole clause :

Je ne vous dis que **ceci** : il n'y a
pas de temps à perdre.

*I only tell you this : there is no time to
lose.*

Qu'il le fasse ou non, **cela**
m'importe peu.

*Whether he does it or not, that matters
little to me.*

Obs. 1. **Ceci** refers to what is going to be said ; **cela**, to what has been said already.

Obs. 2. **Cela**, which is often contracted into **ça** in colloquial style, is also used instead of **ce** to translate the pronoun *it* referring to a previous statement—

[a] With other verbs than **être** :

Cela me paraît impossible.

It seems to me impossible.

[b] Often, but not necessarily, with **être** itself :

Cela (or **ce**) sera admirable.

It will be admirable.

(See *Syntax*, §§ 152, 153.)

§ 193. **USES OF celui**.—**Celui**, **celle**, **ceux**, **celles**, are only used—

(1) Before a relative pronoun, in the sense of *he who*, *she who*, *they who*, *the one which*, *those which* :

Malheur à **celui** qui l'a dit !

Woe to him who said it !

Voici vos livres et **ceux** que je
vous ai promis.

*Here are your books and those which I
promised you.*

- (2) Before **du, de la, des, de**, in the sense of *that, those* :

J'ai sa parole et **celle** de son frère. *I have his word and that of his brother.*

§ 194. **USES OF celui-ci, celui-là.**—Contrary to **celui**, the pronouns **celui-ci, celui-là**, are never followed by a genitive, and, contrary to **ceci, cela**, they always refer to persons or things already mentioned :

De ces divers tableaux, lequel préférez-vous?—Je préfère **celui-ci**. *Of these various pictures, which do you prefer?—This one.*

Celui-ci me paraît meilleur que **celui-là**. *This one seems to me better than that one.*

(See *Syntax*, § 156.)

D.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

- § 195. The Relative Pronouns are—

- (1) **Qui** (L. qui), masculine and feminine, singular and plural.

N. **Qui** [used alike of persons, animals, and things] *who, which.*
 G. **de qui** (generally replaced by **dont**) { [used only of persons] } *whose, of whom.*
 D. **à qui** { and personified things } *to whom.*
 A. **que** (L. quem) [used alike of persons, animals, and things] *whom, which.*

- (2) **Dont** (L. de unde), masculine and feminine, singular and plural, used alike of persons, animals, and things } *whose, of whom, of which.*

- (3) **Quoi** (L. quid), used, as a rule, after a preposition } *what, which.*
 (see § 202)

- (4) **Lequel**, with special forms for masculine and feminine, singular and plural, used alike of persons, animals, and things :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	
N. Lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>who, which, that.</i>
G. duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>whose, of which.</i>
D. auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
A. lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>whom, which.</i>

To the above may be added—

<p>[a] The compound ce qui :</p> <p>N. Ce qui (that) <i>which, what.</i></p> <p>G. Ce dont (that) <i>of which, of what.</i></p> <p>D. (Ce) à quoi (that) <i>to which, to what.</i></p> <p>A. Ce que (that) <i>which, what.</i></p>	<p>[b] The adverb où (= <i>where</i>), often used in the sense of <i>in which, to which, etc.</i> :</p> <p>Le siècle où il vi- <i>The age in which he</i> vait. <i>lived.</i></p>
--	---

§ 196. Relative pronouns agree in gender, number, and person with their antecedent :

Moi qui en suis convaincu.
Elle qui en est convaincue.
Nous qui en sommes convaincus.

I who am
She who is
We who are } *convinced of it.*

§ 197. Relative pronouns can never be omitted as in English :

Le livre **que** vous lisez.
 L'enfant **dont** elle parlait.

The book you are reading.
The child she was speaking of.

§ 198. **Qui**, governed by a *preposition*, can only refer to *persons* or *personified things* :

L'homme sur qui je comptais.
But **La lettre sur laquelle** (not *sur qui*) **je comptais.**

The man upon whom I relied.
The letter upon which I relied.

§ 199. **Que** can only be governed by a verb, **not** by a preposition :

Les poètes }
 Les poèmes } **que** nous préférons.

The poets
The poems } *we prefer.*

§ 200. **Dont** is generally preferred to **de qui**, **duquel**, etc. :

La personne **dont** *The person of whom*
 vous parlez. *you are speaking.*

Les bienfaits **dont** *The blessings which*
 nous jouissons. *we enjoy.*

La manière **dont** il *The way in which he*
 a agi. *has acted.*

EXCEPTION.—**Duquel**, etc., for persons or things, **de qui** for persons only, must be used instead of **dont**, when the relative pronoun depends on a noun preceded by a preposition :

Voici l'homme **au** *Here is the man to*
courage de qui *whose courage I owe*
 (or **duquel**) **je** *my life.*
 dois la vie.

§ 201. The noun which follows **dont** always takes the article, and must be placed after the verb when standing as object or appositive complement :

L'écrivain **dont** vous venez de lire
la biographie.

*The writer whose biography you have
just read.*

La pauvre femme, **dont** cet enfant
était la seule joie.

*The poor woman, whose only joy this
child was.*

§ 202. **Quoi** refers to an indefinite antecedent (**ce, rien**) or to a whole clause, or stands without any antecedent expressed :

C'est en **quoi** vous vous trompez.

You are mistaken in that.

Il lut la lettre, après **quoi** il
me dit . . .

*He read the letter, after which he said to
me . . .*

Donnez-moi de **quoi** écrire.

Give me writing materials.

§ 203. **Lequel, laquelle**, etc., are used instead of **qui**—

(1) After a preposition, in speaking of *things* :

La cause **pour laquelle** (not
pour qui) il avait tant fait.

*The cause for which he had done so
much.*

Obs. In speaking of persons, either **qui** or **lequel** may be used :

L'homme **à qui** (or **auquel**) vous
vous êtes adressé.

The man to whom you have applied.

(2) To avoid ambiguity, when the relative pronoun does not come immediately after its antecedent :

L'énergie de **ce** peuple, **laquelle**
est extraordinaire.

*The energy of that people, which is extra-
ordinary.*

Obs. **Lequel** is seldom used as subject or direct object, except in the latter case.

§ 204. **Ce qui, ce que**, etc., are used, not only in the sense of *what, that which*, but also to translate *which* referring to a whole clause, i.e. meaning *a thing which* :

Il le fit, **ce qui** surprit tout le
monde.

He did it, which surprised everybody.

Il le fit, **ce que** personne
n'aurait jamais cru.

*He did it, a thing which no one
would ever have believed.*

(See *Syntax*, §§ 157-171.)

E.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 205. The Interrogative Pronouns are—

(1) IN SPEAKING OF PERSONS.

N. Qui?	} or emphatically	qui est-ce qui?	who?
G. de qui?		de qui est-ce que?	whose? or whom?
D. à qui?		à qui est-ce que?	to whom?
A. qui?		qui est-ce que?	whom?

(2) IN SPEAKING OF THINGS.

N. { (Que? quoi?) ¹ Qu'est-ce qui? ²	} or emphatically	qu'est-ce qui?	what?
G. de quoi?		de quoi est-ce que?	of what?
D. à quoi?		à quoi est-ce que?	to what?
A. que? (quoi?) ¹		qu'est-ce que?	what?

(3) IN SPEAKING OF PERSONS OR THINGS.

Lequel? which has the same forms as the relative lequel (see § 195 [4]), which?

§ 206. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE RELATIVE AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS—

(1) The *relative* **qui**, when it is not governed by a preposition, may be used of things as well as of persons; the *interrogative* **qui?** is used of persons only:**Qui** voulez-vous dire?**Whom** do you mean?But **Que** voulez-vous dire?**What** do you mean?(2) The accusative of the *relative* **qui** is **que**; the accusative of the *interrogative* **qui?** is **qui?****Qui** cherchez-vous?**Whom** are you looking for?(3) The *relative* **whose** is generally translated by **dont**; the *interrogative* **whose?** is **never** translated by **dont**, but generally by **à qui** when possession is implied, and by **de qui** in other cases:**À qui** sont ces livres?**Whose** books are these?**De qui** êtes-vous fils?**Whose** son are you?¹ Only used in special cases (see § 206).² Generally used.

(4) The interrogative **que?** like the relative **que**, is never governed by a preposition ; but, contrary to the relative, it may be used :

[a] As subject, with a few impersonal verbs :

Que vous semble de cela?

What do you think of that?

[b] As appositive complement, with **être**, **devenir**, **paraître**, etc. :

Que sont devenus mes livres?

What has become of my books?

[c] As indirect object, in a few expressions (a preposition being understood) :

Que sert de pleurer?

What is the use of crying?

(5) The interrogative **quoi?** like the relative **quoi**, is generally governed by a preposition :

À **quoi** pensez-vous?

What are you thinking of?

But, contrary to the relative, it may be used—

[a] As subject of a verb understood, followed by **de** and an adjective generally in the comparative :

Quoi de plus simple?

What can be simpler?

Simple.

[b] As direct object in a few phrases :

Je ne sais **quoi**.

I don't know what.

Simple.

[c] By itself :

Quoi? Quoi!

What? What!

§ 207. **Lequel?** is used to mark a distinction between two or more objects, when there is a genitive expressed or understood :

Lequel de ces livres lisez-vous?

Which of these books are you reading?

Lequel lisez-vous?

Which are you reading?

Obs. 1. Immediately before a noun **quel** should be used, not **lequel** :

Quel livre lisez-vous?

What book are you reading?

Obs. 2. **Quel** may also stand immediately before **être** when there is no genitive understood :

Quel est le livre que vous lisez?

What is the book you are reading?

F.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 208. The Indefinite Pronouns are—

Aucun, aucune, aucuns, aucunes ¹		any one, any, no one, none.		
L'autre, les autres ¹		the other, the others.		
Un	} or	autre, d'autres ¹	another, others.	
Une				
L'un	} or	les uns	} les autres	one another, each other.
L'une		les unes		
L'un	} or	les uns	} et les autres	both.
L'une		les unes		
L'un	} or	les uns	} ou les autres	either.
L'une		les unes		
Ni l'un	} or	ni les uns	} ni les autres	neither.
Ni l'une		ni les unes		
Autrui		others, other people.		
Certains, certaines ¹		certain people, some.		
Chacun (L. quisque unus), chacune		every one, each one, each.		
Nul, nulle, nuls, nulles ¹		no one, nobody, none.		
On, l'on (L. homo, O.F. hom, om) (invariable)		one, they, we, people, etc.		
Pas un, pas une ¹		not one, none, any.		
Personne (L. personam) (invariable)		{ any one, anybody; no one, not any one, nobody, not anybody.		
Plusieurs ¹		several.		
Quelque chose (invariable)		anything, something.		
Quelqu'un (quelque and un), quelques-uns		anybody, somebody, some.		
Quelqu'un, quelques-uns	} or or	(of things as well as of persons)	} one, any, some.	
Quelqu'une, quelques-unes				
Qui que (invariable)		} whoever, whomsoever.		
Qui que ce soit qui, qui que ce soit que				
Qui que ce soit (invariable)				
Quiconque (L. quicumque) (invariable)		whoever, whomsoever.		

¹ May also be used as adjectives (see § 149).

Quoi que (invariable)	}	<i>whatever.</i>
Quoi que ce soit qui, quoi que ce soit que		
Quoi que ce soit (invariable)		<i>anything whatever.</i>
Rien (L. rem) (invariable)	{	<i>anything, not anything, nothing.</i>
Tel, telle, tels, telles ¹	{	<i>such a one, such, he, she, many a one.</i>
Tout ¹	{	<i>all, everything, anything, sometimes every one.</i>
Tous, toutes ¹		<i>all.</i>
Tous deux, toutes deux, tous les deux, toutes les deux	}	<i>both.</i>
Tout le monde		<i>everybody.</i>
L'un, l'une, les uns, les unes		<i>one, some.</i>

§ 209. The negative **ne** is always required before the verb with **ni l'un ni l'autre** and **nul** :

Ni les uns ni les autres ne le savent.	<i>Neither know it.</i>
Nul ne périt.	<i>None perished.</i>

It is also required with **aucun**, **pas un**, **personne**, and **rien**, but only when used in a negative sense :

Aucun n'est prophète chez soi.	<i>No one is a prophet in his own country.</i>
Pas un ne revint.	<i>Not one came back.</i>
Personne ne le croira.	<i>No one will believe it.</i>
Nous n'avons trouvé personne.	<i>We have not found any one.</i>
Rien ne l'amuse.	<i>Nothing amuses him.</i>
Je n'ai rien dit.	<i>I have not said anything.</i>

Ne should be omitted when **aucun**, **pas un**, **personne**, **rien** are taken in their affirmative sense, which is chiefly the case in interrogative or dubitative sentences, after a negative expression or after a comparative :

Personne le sait-il ?	<i>Does any one know it ?</i>
Avez-vous rien vu de pareil ?	<i>Have you seen anything like it ?</i>
Je doute qu'aucun réussisse.	<i>I doubt whether any will succeed.</i>
Je ne crois pas que rien le satisfasse.	<i>I do not think that anything will satisfy him.</i>
Vous le savez mieux que personne	<i>You know it better than any one.</i>

¹ May also be used as adjectives (see § 149).

§ 210. *L'un l'autre, les uns les autres*, are used—

(1) Together with a reflexive pronoun, to avoid ambiguity when the verb governs the accusative or dative :

Ils se flattent.	{ <i>They flatter themselves,</i> or <i>They flatter one another.</i>
But Ils se flattent les uns les autres.	<i>They flatter one another.</i>

(2) Without a reflexive pronoun, when the verb cannot have a complement in the accusative or dative :

Ils marchèrent l'un contre l'autre.	<i>They marched against one another.</i>
Ils diffèrent beaucoup l'un de l'autre.	<i>They differ much from one another.</i>

Obs. 1. The preposition is always placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

Obs. 2. The plural, *les uns les autres*, is generally used in speaking of more than two, unless the objects mentioned are considered as acting one by one.

Obs. 3. *Autrui* always stands as complement, generally after a preposition :

Le bien d'autrui.	<i>The property of others.</i>
-------------------	--------------------------------

§ 211. *On* can only be used as subject, and always requires the finite verb in the singular :

<i>On</i> a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.	<i>We often stand in need of one less than ourselves.</i>
---	---

Obs. 1. *On* is often used to translate the English passive voice :

<i>On</i> dit, <i>on</i> raconte.	<i>It is said, it is related.</i>
<i>Vous permet-on</i> de le faire ?	<i>Are you allowed to do it ?</i>

Obs. 2. *L'on* frequently stands, for the sake of euphony, instead of *on*, chiefly after *et, ou, où, qui, que, quoi, si*, and at the beginning of a sentence :

<i>Et l'on</i> n'a rien dit ?	<i>And they said nothing ?</i>
<i>Si l'on</i> vient . . .	<i>If any one comes . . .</i>

On, however, should be used when the next word begins with an *l* :

<i>Et on</i> le croit ?	<i>And they believe it ?</i>
-------------------------	------------------------------

§ 212. *Personne, quelque chose, quelqu'un* and *rien* require the preposition *de* before adjectives and adverbs :

<i>Quelque chose d'amusant.</i>	<i>Something amusing.</i>
<i>Quelqu'un de brave et de prudent.</i>	<i>Some one brave and prudent.</i>
<i>Rien de plus ou de moins.</i>	<i>Nothing more or less.</i>

§ 213. *Qui que, qui que ce soit, qui, quoi que, quoi que ce soit, qui*, require the Subjunctive :

<i>Qui que vous soyez . . .</i>	<i>Whoever you may be . . .</i>
<i>Qui que ce soit qui vous l'ait dit, je suis sûr que c'est impossible.</i>	<i>Whoever may have told you so, I am sure that it is impossible.</i>
<i>Quoi que Quoi que ce soit } vous fas- } siez . . .</i>	<i>Whatever you may do . . .</i>

§ 214. *Quiconque*, which has no plural, and is generally masculine, requires the Indicative or Conditional :

<i>Quiconque violait la loi était mis à mort.</i>	<i>Whoever transgressed the law was put to death.</i>
---	---

§ 215. *Tel*, as an indefinite pronoun, may be used indifferently in the singular or plural :

<i>Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera.</i>	<i>Laugh to-day, cry to-morrow.</i>
<i>Tels le disent qui n'en croient rien.</i>	<i>Some say it who do not believe it.</i>

§ 216. *Tout*, in the singular, generally refers to things :

<i>Tout me plaît en lui.</i>	<i>Everything pleases me in him.</i>
------------------------------	--------------------------------------

But it may also refer to persons :

<i>Femmes, enfants, tout périt.</i>	<i>Women, children, all perished.</i>
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

(For more details on Indefinite Pronouns, see *Syntax*, §§ 179-197.)

THE VERB.

A.—INTRODUCTORY.

§ 217. There are in French two great classes of verbs—**transitive** verbs, which have a passive voice, and can govern both a direct and an indirect object, and **intransitive** (or *neuter*) verbs, which have no passive voice, and can only govern an indirect object.

I.—Conjugations.

§ 218. French verbs are commonly divided, according to the termination of their **Present Infinitive**, into four conjugations ¹—

FIRST CONJUGATION: verbs ending in -er ; as aimer , <i>to love</i> .			
SECOND	”	”	-ir ; as finir , <i>to finish</i> .
THIRD	”	”	-oir ; as recevoir , <i>to receive</i> .
FOURTH	”	”	-re ; as vendre , <i>to sell</i> .

Obs. 1. The stem of a verb is what remains of the Present Infinitive when the ending is cut off: **aim-**, **fin-**, **recev-**, **vend-**.

Obs. 2. The stem of all *regular* verbs remains unaltered throughout their conjugation.

Obs. 3. The stem of the verbs of the **third conjugation** always undergoes some alteration, hence these verbs are all really *irregular* ; but those which are conjugated like **recevoir** (see § 252) are generally called *regular*.

§ 219. The first conjugation contains more than 3600 verbs, *i.e.* about nine-tenths of all the verbs in the language. It corresponds to the

¹ The third conjugation, however, may be considered as another form of the fourth.

Latin conjugation in *-are* (*aimer*, L. *amare*), but comprises also a few verbs taken from the other Latin conjugations (*absorber*, L. *absorbere*; *imprimer*, L. *imprimere*; *tousser*, L. *tussire*, etc.).

Many verbs in *-er* are of purely French formation, most of them coming from nouns, as *envier* (=to envy), from *envie* (=envy); *farder* (=to paint, to rouge), from *fard* (=paint, rouge).

§ 220. The second conjugation, which contains about 350 verbs, corresponds to the Latin conjugation in *-ire* (*finir*, L. *finire*), but comprises also some verbs of the second and third Latin conjugations (*abolir*, L. *abolere*; *courir*, L. *currere*, etc.).

Most French verbs in *-ir* add *is* or *iss* to the stem in some of their tenses formed on the model of Latin inceptive verbs in *-escere* or *-iscere*, but in spite of this irregularity they have been called regular, as they far exceed in number the truly regular verbs which do not add this inceptive form.

Many verbs of the second conjugation are of purely French formation, and chiefly come from adjectives, as *blanchir* (=to whiten) from *blanc* (=white), *vieillir* (=to grow old) from *viell* (=old).

§ 221. The third conjugation, which only includes thirty verbs, corresponds to the second Latin conjugation in *-ēre* (*avoir*, L. *habere*), but comprises also verbs taken from the third in *-ere* and transformed, through bad pronunciation, into weak verbs (*recevoir*, L.L. *recipere* for *recipere*).

All verbs in *-oir* undergo some alteration of the stem in some of their tenses (see § 218, *Obs.* 3).

§ 222. The fourth conjugation contains about sixty verbs, most of them coming from Latin verbs of the third conjugation in *-ere* (*vendre*, L. *vendere*), a few from weak verbs in *-ere* transformed, through bad pronunciation, into strong verbs (*plaire*, L.L. *placere*, for *placere*).

Obs. The first and second conjugations are the only ones to which new verbs are still added, and for this reason are called *living*, whilst the third and fourth are called *dead*.

II.—Moods.

§ 223. French verbs have six Moods, four of which—the Indicative, Conditional, Imperative, and Subjunctive—are finite, *i.e.* have personal inflections, whilst the other two—the Infinitive and Participle—are unpersonal.

III.—Tenses.

§ 224. Each Mood has at least two tenses.

The tenses are either *simple* or *compound*, the latter being formed with the help of an auxiliary (*avoir* for transitive [active] verbs, *avoir* or *être* for intransitive verbs [see §§ 259-262], *être* for passive and reflexive verbs).

§ 225. The **Indicative Mood** has four simple and four compound tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Latin present :

J'aime (L. *amo*, O.F. *aim*). *I am loving, I love.*

(2) The **Imperfect**, from the Latin imperfect :

J'aimais (L. *amabam*, O.F. *amève*, *amoié*). *I was loving, I used to love, I loved.*

(3) The **Preterite** or **Past Definite**, from the Latin perfect :

J'aimai (L. *amavi*). *I loved.*

(4) The **Future Simple** or **Future Present**, from the Present Infinitive by the adjunction of the Present Indicative of *avoir* in the singular, and of its terminations in the plural :

J'aimerai (*aimer, ai*). *I shall (or will) love.*

(5) The **Past Indefinite**, from the Present Indicative of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

J'ai aimé. *I have loved, I loved.*

(6) The **Pluperfect**, from the Imperfect indicative of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

J'avais aimé. *I had loved.*

(7) The **Past Anterior**, from the Preterite of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

J'eus aimé. *I had loved.*

(8) The **Future Past** or **Future Anterior**, from the Future Present of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

J'aurai aimé. *I shall (or will) have loved.*

§ 226. The **Conditional Mood** has two tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Present Infinitive by the adjunction of the terminations of the Imperfect Indicative of **avoir** :

J'aimerais (*aimer, ais for avais*). *I should (or would) love.*

(2) The **Past**, from the Present Conditional of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

J'aurais aimé. *I should (or would) have loved.*

§ 227. The **Imperative Mood** has two tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Latin Present Imperative :

Aime (L. ama, O.F. aim). *Love (thou).*

(2) The **Future Past**, but little used, from the Present Imperative of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

Aie aimé. *Have loved.*

§ 228. The **Subjunctive Mood** has two simple and two compound tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Latin Present Subjunctive :

Que j'aime (L. amem). *That I may love.*

(2) The **Imperfect**, from the Latin Pluperfect Subjunctive :

Que j'aimasse (L. amavissem). *That I might love.*

(3) The **Past or Perfect**, from the Present Subjunctive of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

Que j'aie aimé. *That I may have loved.*

(4) The **Pluperfect**, from the Imperfect Subjunctive of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

Que j'eusse aimé. *That I might have loved.*

§ 229. The **Infinitive Mood** has two tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Latin Present Infinitive :

Aimer (L. amare). *To love.*

(2) The **Past**, from the Present Infinitive of the auxiliary and the Past Participle of the verb :

Avoir aimé. *To have loved.*

§ 230. The Participle Mood has two tenses—

(1) The **Present**, from the Latin Present Participle :

Aimant (L. *amantem*).

Loving.

(2) The **Perfect**, from the Present Participle of the auxiliary and the Past (or Passive) Participle of the verb :

Ayant aimé.

Having loved.

§ 231. **PRIMITIVE TENSES OR PRINCIPAL PARTS.**—It has just been seen that all simple tenses—except the Future Present, the Conditional Present, and the Imperfect Subjunctive—come from the corresponding Latin tenses. For the sake of convenience, however, French grammarians distinguish five **Primitive Tenses or Principal Parts**, from which they derive all others—

(1) **Present Indicative**; (2) **Preterite or Past Definite**; (3) **Present Infinitive**; (4) **Present Participle**; (5) **Past Participle**.

§ 232. From the **Present Indicative** are formed the **second person singular**, and the **first and second plural of the Imperative**, by omitting the pronoun of the corresponding persons :

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

Tu aimes	nous aimons	vous aimez.	Aime ¹	aimons	aimez.
Tu finis	nous finissons	vous finissez.	Finis	finissons	finissez.
Tu reçois	nous recevons	vous recevez.	Reçois	recevons	recevez.
Tu vends	nous vendons	vous vendez.	Vends	vendons	vendez.

(The third person (singular and plural) of the Imperative is always borrowed from the Present Subjunctive.)

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Avoir , <i>to have</i> :	aie	ayons	ayez.
(2) Être , <i>to be</i> :	sois	soyons	soyez.
(3) Savoir , <i>to know</i> :	sache	sachons	sachez.
(4) Vouloir , <i>to wish, to want</i> :	veuille	veuille	veuillez.

Obs. **Veuille** means *be so good as to . . .* The regular forms *veux, voulons, voulez*, are sometimes used emphatically to express a strong will.

¹ The **s** of the second person singular of the Present Indicative is dropped in the Imperative of the **first conjugation**, and of a few irregular verbs which take the same inflection (see § 238); but it reappears, for the sake of euphony, before the pronouns **en** and **y** :

Parles-en; vas-y.

Speak of it; go there.

§ 233. From the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** is formed the **Imperfect Subjunctive**, by changing the final *s* of the second person singular into *-sse*, *-sses*, *-t*, *-ssions*, *-ssiez*, *-ssent*, and putting a circumflex over the last vowel of the third person singular (except in *haïr*, *to hate*, which keeps the diaeresis instead of taking a circumflex) :

PRETERITE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Tu aimas.	Aimasse, aimasses, aimât, aimassions, aimassiez, aimassent.
Tu finis.	Finisse, finisses, finît, finissions, finissiez, finissent.
Tu reçus.	Reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.
Tu vendis.	Vendisse, vendisses, vendît, vendissions, vendissiez, vendissent.

Obs. There is NO exception.

§ 234. From the **Present Infinitive** are formed—

(a) The **Future Present**, by adding *-ai*, *-as*, *-a*, *-ons*, *-ez*, *-ont* (and dropping *oi* in the *third* conjugation, and the final *e* in the *fourth*) :

PRESENT
INFINITIVE.

FUTURE PRESENT.

Aimer.	Aimerai, aimeras, aimera, aimerons, aimez, aimeront.
Finir.	Finirai, finiras, finira, finirons, finirez, finiront.
Recevoir.	Recevrai, recevras, recevra, recevrons, recevrez, recevront.
Vendre.	Vendrai, vendras, vendra, vendrons, vendrez, vendront.

(b) The **Conditional Present**, by adding *-ais*, *-ais*, *-ait*, *-ions*, *-iez*, *-aient* (and dropping *oi* in the *third* conjugation, and the final *e* in the *fourth*) :

PRESENT
INFINITIVE.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

Aimer.	Aimerais, aimerais, aimerait, aimerions, aimeriez, aimeraient.
Finir.	Finirais, finirais, finirait, finirions, finiriez, finiraient.
Recevoir.	Recevrais, recevrais, recevrait, recevriions, recevriez, recevraient.
Vendre.	Vendrais, vendrais, vendrait, vendrions, vendriez, vendraient.

EXCEPTIONS.

(1) Acquérir, ¹ <i>to acquire</i> :	j'acquerrai	j'acquerrais.
(2) Aller, <i>to go</i> :	j'irai	j'irais.
(3) Avoir, <i>to have</i> :	j'aurai	j'aurais.
(4) Courir, ² <i>to run</i> :	je courrai	je courrais.

[Continued on next page.]

¹ So the other compounds of *quérir*—*conquérir*, *to conquer* ; *s'enquérir*, *to inquire* ; *requérir*, *to require*.

² So all its compounds—*accourir*, *to hasten to* ; *concourir*, *to concur*, etc.

(5) Cueillir, ¹ <i>to pluck, to gather</i> :	je cueillerai	je cueillerais.
(6) Déchoir, ² <i>to decay</i> :	je décherrai	je décherrais.
(7) Envoyer, ³ <i>to send</i> :	j'enverrai	j'enverrais.
(8) Être, <i>to be</i> :	je serai	je serais.
(9) Faillir, ⁴ <i>to fail</i> :	je faudrai	je faudrais.
(10) Faire, ⁵ <i>to do, to make</i> :	je ferai	je ferais.
(11) Falloir, <i>to be necessary, must</i> :	il faudra	il faudrait.
(12) Mourir, <i>to die</i> :	je mourrai	je mourrais.
(13) Pouvoir, <i>to be able</i> :	je pourrai	je pourrais.
(14) Saillir, ⁶ <i>to jut out</i> :	il saillera	il saillerait.
(15) Savoir, <i>to know</i> :	je saurai	je saurais.
(16) Seoir, ⁷ <i>to fit</i> :	il siéra	il sierait.
(17) Tenir, ⁸ <i>to hold</i> :	je tiendrai	je tiendrais.
(18) Valoir, ⁹ <i>to be worth</i> :	je vaudrai	je vaudrais.
(19) Venir, ¹⁰ <i>to come</i> :	je viendrai	je viendrais.
(20) Voir, ¹¹ <i>to see</i> :	je verrai	je verrais.
(21) Vouloir, <i>to wish</i> :	je voudrai	je voudrais.

§ 235. From the Present Participle are formed—

(a) The plural of the Present Indicative, by changing -ant into -ons, -ez, -ent :

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE PLURAL.		
Aimant.	nous aimons	vous aimez	ils aiment.
Finissant.	nous finissons	vous finissez	ils finissent.
Recevant.	nous recevons	vous recevez	EXCEPTION [see (c), EXC. II.]
Vendant.	nous vendons	vous vendez	ils vendent.

¹ So its compounds—accueillir, *to welcome, to receive*; recueillir, *to gather*.

² So the other compound of choir—échoir, *to fall due* (il écherra).

³ So its compound renvoyer, *to send back, to dismiss, to postpone*.

⁴ So its compound défaillir, *to fail, to faint* (see, however, § 317).

⁵ So all its compounds—contrefaire, *to feign*, défaire, *to undo*, etc.

⁶ Its compounds are regular in the Future and Conditional: assaillir, *to assail*, j'assaillirai, j'assaillirais; tressaillir, *to tremble, to start*, je tressaillirai, je tressaillirais; (saillir, *to gush*, is regular throughout, but has no first or second person).

⁷ So its compounds asseoir, *to seat*, j'assiérai (or j'assoirai), j'assiérais (or j'assoirais), and rasseoir, *to resent, to settle*, je rassiérai (or je rassoirai), je rassiérais (or je rassoirais)—but not surseoir, *to postpone*, je surseoirai, je surseoirais.

⁸ So all its compounds—s'abstenir, *to abstain*; appartenir, *to belong*, etc.

⁹ So all its compounds—équivaloir, *to be equivalent*; prévaloir, *to prevail*, etc.

¹⁰ So all its compounds—convenir, *to suit, to agree*; revenir, *to come back*, etc.

¹¹ So its compounds, except pourvoir, *to provide*: je pourvoirai, je pourvoirais, and prévoir, *to foresee*: je prévoirai, je prévoirais.

(When the stem of the Present Participle ends with a *y*, the *y* changes into *i* in the third person plural: *fuir*, to *flee*, *fuyant*, ils *fuyaient*.¹)

EXCEPTIONS.

- | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| (1) Avoir, <i>to have</i> : | ayant | nous avons | vous avez | ils ont. |
| (2) Déchoir, <i>to (wanting) decay</i> : | nous déchoyons | vous déchoyez | ils déchoient. | |
| (3) Dire, ² <i>to say</i> : | disant (regular) | vous dites | (regular) | |
| (4) Être, <i>to be</i> : | étant | nous sommes | vous êtes | ils sont. |
| (5) Faire, ³ <i>to do, to make</i> : | faisant (regular) | vous faites | ils font. | |
| (6) Savoir, <i>to know</i> : | sachant | nous savons | vous savez | ils savent. |

For other irregularities in the *third person plural*, see (c), Exc.

(b) The Imperfect Indicative, by changing *-ant* into *-ais*, *-ais*, *-ait*, *-ions*, *-iez*, *-aient*:

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Aimant.	Aimais, aimais, aimait, aimions, aimiez, aimaient.
Finissant.	Finissais, finissais, finissait, finissions, finissiez, finissaient.
Recevant.	Recevais, recevais, recevait, recevions, receviez, recevaient.
Vendant.	Vendais, vendais, vendait, vendions, vendiez, vendaient.

EXCEPTIONS.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| (1) Avoir, <i>to have</i> : | ayant | j'avais, etc. |
| (2) Échoir, <i>to fall due</i> : | échéant | il échoyait. |
| (3) Falloir, <i>to be necessary</i> : | (wanting) | il fallait. |
| (4) Savoir, <i>to know</i> : | sachant | je savais, etc. |

(c) The Present Subjunctive, by changing *-ant* into *-e*, *-es*, *-e*, *-ions*, *-iez*, *-ent*:

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Aimant.	Aime, aimes, aime, aimions, aimiez, aiment.
Finissant.	Finisse, finisses, finisse, finissions, finissiez, finissent.
Recevant.	Exc. Exc. Exc., recevions, receviez, Exc.
Vendant.	Vende, vendes, vende, vendions, vendiez, vendent.

(When the stem of the Present Participle ends with a *y*, the *y* changes into *i* in the three persons singular and the third person plural: *fuir*, to *flee*, *fuyant*, que je *fuisse*, que tu *fusses*, qu'il *fût*, qu'ils *fussent*.⁴)

¹ Except in verbs in *-ayer*, in which the *y* may be preserved (see § 293).

² So *redire*, to *say again*, etc.: vous *redites*, but not the other compounds of *dire*.

³ So all its compounds: vous *contrefaîtes*, vous *défâîtes*, etc.

⁴ Except in verbs in *-ayer*, which may preserve the *y* (see § 293).

EXCEPTIONS.

I. The verb **avoir** forms the third person singular and the first and second persons plural of the Present Subjunctive irregularly :

Avoir , <i>to have</i> :	} PRES. SUBJ.	qu'il ait,
ayant		que nous ayons ,
		que vous ayez .

II. The verbs conjugated like **recevoir** form the third person plural of the Present Indicative, and the singular and third person plural of the Present Subjunctive, irregularly :

Recevoir :	} PRES. IND.	} PRES. SUBJ.	que je reçoive	qu'il reçoive ,
recevant			que tu reçoives	qu'ils reçoivent .

So the following :

PRES. INF. AND PARTIC.		PRES. IND.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
(1) { Acquérir , ¹ <i>to acquire</i> :	} ils acquiè-	rent	que j' acquiè re	qu'il acquiè re,
acquérant			que tu acquiè res	qu'ils acquiè rent.
(2) { Aller , <i>to go</i> :	} ils vont		que j' aille	qu'il aille ,
allant			que tu ailles	qu'ils ailent .
(3) { Boire , <i>to drink</i> :	} ils boivent		que je boive	qu'il boive ,
buvant			que tu boives	qu'ils boivent .
(4) { Mourir , <i>to die</i> :	} ils meu-	rent.	que je meure	qu'il meure ,
mourant			que tu meures	qu'ils meurent .
(5) { Mouvoir , ² <i>to move</i> :	} ils meu-	vent.	que je meuve	qu'il meuve ,
mouvant			que tu meuves	qu'ils meuvent .
(6) { Prendre , ³ <i>to take</i> :	} ils pren-	nent	que je prenne	qu'il prenne ,
prenant			que tu prennes	qu'ils prennent .
(7) { Tenir , ⁴ <i>to hold</i> :	} ils tien-	nent	que je tienne	qu'il tienne ,
tenant			que tu tiennes	qu'ils tiennent .
(8) { Valoir , ⁵ <i>to be worth</i> :	} (regular)		que je vaille	qu'il vaille ,
valant			que tu vailles	qu'ils vailent .
(9) { Venir , ⁶ <i>to come</i> :	} ils vien-	nent	que je vienne	qu'il vienne ,
venant			que tu viennes	qu'ils viennent .
(10) { Vouloir , <i>to wish</i> :	} ils veulent		que je veuille	qu'il veuille ,
voulant			que tu veuilles	qu'ils veillent .

¹ So all the compounds of **quérir**.

² So **émouvoir**, *to affect* (**promouvoir**, *to promote*, is seldom used except in the Infinitive, Past Part., and compound tenses).

³ So all its compounds—**apprendre**, *to learn*, **comprendre**, *to understand*, etc.

⁴ So all its compounds—**s'abstenir**, *to abstain*, **appartenir**, *to belong*, etc.

⁵ So its compounds, except **prévaloir**, *to prevail*: que je **prévale**, que tu **prévales**, etc.

⁶ So all its compounds—**convenir**, *to suit*, *to agree*, **devenir**, *to become*, etc.

III. The following verbs form the whole of the Present Subjunctive irregularly :

(1)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Déchoir, } to \\ \text{decay:} \\ \text{No PRESENT} \\ \text{PART.} \end{array} \right\}$	que je déchoie	que tu déchoies	qu'il déchoie ,
		que nous dé- choyions	que vous dé- choyiez	qu'ils déchoient .
(2)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Être, } to \text{ be:} \\ \text{étant} \end{array} \right\}$	que je sois	que tu sois	qu'il soit ,
		que n. soyons	que v. soyez	qu'ils soient .
(3)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Faire,}^1 \text{ } to \\ \text{do, to make:} \\ \text{faisant} \end{array} \right\}$	que je fasse	que tu fasses	qu'il fasse ,
		que n. fassions	que v. fassiez	qu'ils fassent .
(4)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Pouvoir,}^2 \text{ } to \\ \text{be able:} \\ \text{pouvant} \end{array} \right\}$	que je puisse	que tu puisses	qu'il puisse ,
		que n. puis- sions	que v. puissiez	qu'ils puissent .

Notice also—

Échoir, *to fall due*, seldom used in the first or second person : **échéant**, ils **échoient** (or ils **échéent**), qu'il **échoie**, qu'ils **échoient**.

Falloir, *to be necessary*, which is impersonal : qu'il **faille**.

Seoir,³ *to fit, to become*, only used in the third persons : **seyant**, ils **siéent**, qu'il **siée**, qu'ils **siéent**.

§ 236. From the Past Participle are formed—

(a) All compound tenses, with **avoir** or **être** (see §§ 259-262).

(b) The whole of the **Passive Voice**, with **être** (see § 256).

¹ So all its compounds—**contrefaire**, *to feign*, **défaire**, *to undo*, etc.

² The third person plural of the Present Indicative of **pouvoir** is also irregular—ils **peuvent**.

³ **Seoir**, when it means *to sit, to be situated*, makes in the Present Participle **séant**, and in the third plural of the Present Indicative ils **seyent** or **seient** (rarely used). The Present Subjunctive is wanting.

<p>From the PRESENT INDICATIVE,</p> <p>tu aimes, nous aimons, vous aimez,</p> <p>tu finis, nous finissons, vous finissez,</p> <p>tu reçois, nous recevons, vous recevez,</p> <p>tu vends, nous vendons, vous vendez,</p> <p>comes</p> <p>THE IMPERATIVE,</p> <p>by omitting the Personal Pronouns :</p> <p>aime,¹ aimons, aimez,</p> <p>finis, finissons, finissez,</p> <p>reçois, recevons, receivez,</p> <p>vends, vendons, vendez.</p>	<p>From the second person singular of the PRETERITE,</p> <p>tu aimas, tu finis, tu reçus, tu vendis,</p> <p>comes</p> <p>THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE,</p> <p>by changing the final s into -sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent, and putting a circumflex over the last vowel of the third person singular :</p> <p>{ aimeasse, aimasses, aimât,</p> <p>{ aimassions, aimassiez, aimassent,</p> <p>{ finisse, finisses, finît, finissions, finissiez, finissent,</p> <p>{ reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussent,</p> <p>{ vendisse, vendisses, vendît, vendissions, vendissiez, vendissent.</p> <p>Obs. There is no exception. Hair (=to hate) keeps, however, the diaeresis in the third person singular instead of taking a circumflex.</p>	<p>From the PRESENT INFINITIVE,</p> <p>aimer, finir, recevoir, vendre,</p> <p>come</p> <p>(1) THE FUTURE PRESENT,</p> <p>by adding -ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont (and dropping oi in the 3d conjugation, and the final e in the 4th) :</p> <p>{ aimerai, aimeras, aimera, aimerons, aimerez, aimeront,</p> <p>{ finirai, finiras, finira, finirons, finirez, finiront,</p> <p>{ recevrai, recevras, recevra, recevrons, recevrez, recevront,</p> <p>{ vendrai, vendras, vendra, vendrons, vendrez, vendront.</p> <p>(2) THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT,</p> <p>by adding -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient (and dropping oi in the 3rd conjugation, and the final e in the 4th) :</p> <p>{ aimerais, aimeras, aimerais, aimerions, aimeriez, aimeraient,</p> <p>{ finirais, finiras, finirait, finirions, finiriez, finiraient,</p> <p>{ recevrais, recevrais, recevrait, recevrons, recevriez, recevraient,</p> <p>{ vendrais, vendrais, vendrait, vendrions, vendriez, vendraient.</p>	<p>From the PRESENT PARTICIPLE,</p> <p>aimant, finissant, recevant, vendant,</p> <p>come</p> <p>(1) THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PLURAL,</p> <p>by changing -ant into -ons, -ez, -ent :</p> <p>{ aimons, aimez, aimant, finissons, finissez, finissant, recevons, recevez, ———,¹ vendons, vendez, vendant.</p> <p>(2) THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE,</p> <p>by changing -ant into -ais, -ais, -aient, -aient, -aient, -aient :</p> <p>{ aimais, aimais, aimait, aimions, aimiez, aimaient, finissais, finissais, finissait, finissions, finissiez, finissaient, ———, ———, ———,¹ recevais, recevais, recevait, recevions, receviez, recevaient, vendais, vendais, vendait, vendions, vendiez, vendaient.</p> <p>(3) THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE,</p> <p>by changing -ant into -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent :</p> <p>{ aime, aime, aime, aimions, aimiez, aimant, finisse, finisses, finisse, finissions, finissiez, finissent, ———, ———, ———,¹ recevions, receviez, ———,¹ vende, vende, vende, vendions, vendiez, vendant.</p>	<p>From the PAST PARTICIPLE,</p> <p>aimé, fini, reçu, vendu,</p> <p>come</p> <p>(1) ALL COMPOUND TENSES.</p> <p>(2) THE WHOLE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.</p>
--	--	---	--	---

IV.—Persons.

§ 237. FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.—The first person singular ends—

(1) In e—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of all verbs of the **first conjugation** (except *aller, to go*—*je vais, I am going*) :

Aimer	to love	j'aime,
-------	---------	---------

and of the following (and their compounds), which belong to the second :

Assaillir	to assail	j'assaille.
Tressaillir	to start, to shudder	je tressaille.
Couvrir	to cover	je couvre.
Cueillir	to gather, to pluck	je cueille.
Offrir	to offer	j'offre.
Ouvrir	to open	j'ouvre.
Souffrir	to suffer	je souffre.

[b] In the **Present Subjunctive** of all verbs (except *être, to be*—*que je sois, that I may be*) :

Que j'aime que je finisse que je reçoive que je vende.

[c] In the **Imperfect Subjunctive** of all verbs without exception :

Que j'aimasse que je finisse que je reçusse que je vendisse.

(2) In s¹—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of *aller (je vais)* and of all verbs of the **second, third, and fourth conjugations** :

Je finis	je reçois	je vends,
----------	-----------	-----------

except—

Avoir	to have	j'ai,
Faillir	to fail	je faux, ²
Pouvoir	to be able	je peux, ³
Valoir	to be worth	je vaux,
Vouloir	to wish	je veux,

and the verbs given in (1), [a].

¹ Obs. The first person singular had no s in early French, as there was none in Latin. The s was probably added by analogy with the second person; but the poets of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries often omitted it for the sake of rhyme, and the same omission can still be noticed, though less frequently, in contemporary poetry.

² Hardly ever used.

³ There is another form—*je puis*, always used in questions.

[b] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs (except those of the first conjugation) :

Je finis je reçus je vendis.

[c] In the **Imperfect Indicative** of all verbs without exception :

J'aimais je finissais je recevais je vendais.

[d] In the **Present Conditional** of all verbs without exception :

J'aimerais je finirais je recevrais je vendrais.

(3) In **ai**—

[a] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs of the first conjugation without exception : j'aimai.

[b] In the **Future Present** of all verbs without exception :

J'aimerai je finirai je recevrai je vendrai.

238. SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.—The second person singular ends in **s** in every tense of every verb, except the Present Indicative of **faillir**, **pouvoir**, **valoir**, and **vouloir** (see § 237, (2), [a]), and the **Imperative** of **aller**, **avoir**, **savoir**, **valoir**, and **vouloir** :

Va, go ; **aie**, have ; **sache**, know ; **vaux**, be worth ; **veuille**, be so good as to . . . ,

and of the verbs which end in **e** in the **Present Indicative** (see § 237, (1), [a]).

Obs. 1. The second person singular of the **Imperative** had no **s** in early French, as there was none in Latin. Here again the **s** was added by analogy with the other second persons.

Obs. 2. An **s** is added, for the sake of euphony, to the second person singular of the **Imperatives** which have none (except, of course, *vaux*), when they are followed by **en** or **y** (see § 232, note).

§ **239. THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.**—The third person singular ends—

(1) In **e**—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of all verbs ending in **e** in the first person of the same tense (see § 237, (1), [a]) :

Il aime il cueille il souffre.

[b] In the **Present Subjunctive** of all verbs (except **avoir** and **être**) :

Qu'il aime qu'il finisse qu'il reçoive qu'il vende.

(2) In t—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of all verbs of the **second** and **third conjugations** (except *avoir*, *il a*, and the verbs mentioned in 1, [a]):

Il finit

il reçoit,

and of all irregular verbs of the **fourth** (except *coudre*, *moudre*, *prendre*, which end with the *d* of the stem, like *vendre*, and *vaincre*, which ends with the *c* of the stem—*il vainc*).

[b] In the **Imperfect Indicative** of all verbs without exception :

Il aimait

il finissait

il recevait

il vendait.

[c] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs (except those of the **first conjugation**):

Il finit

il reçut

il vendit.

[d] In the **Present Conditional** of all verbs without exception :

Il aimerait

il finirait

il recevrait

il vendrait.

[e] In the **Present Subjunctive** of *avoir* and *être* :

Qu'il ait

qu'il soit.

[f] In the **Imperfect Subjunctive** of all verbs without exception :¹

Qu'il aimât

qu'il finît

qu'il reçût

qu'il vendît.

(3) In a—

[a] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs of the **first conjugation** without exception :

Il aima

il alla.²

[b] In the **Future Present** of all verbs without exception :

Il aimera

il finira

il recevra

il vendra.

Obs. In early French, as in Latin, there was always a *t* in the third person singular. It is that *t* which reappears in modern French, for the sake of euphony, in inverted constructions, when the verb is followed by *il*, *elle*, or *on* :

Aime-t-il? Does he love? Aimera-t-il? Will he love? Puisse-t-il! May he!

¹ The circumflex accent, which is always placed over the vowel preceding the *t*, marks the dropping of an *s*: *qu'il aimât*, O.F. *qu'il aimast*, L. *amavisset*.

² Notice also the third sing. pres. indic. of *aller*—*il va*.

§ 240. FIRST PERSON PLURAL.—The first person plural ends—

(1) In **ons**—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of all verbs (except *être*) :

Nous aimons nous finissons nous recevons nous vendons.

[b] In the **Future Present** of all verbs without exception :

Nous aimerons nous finirons nous recevrons nous vendrons.

[c] In the **Imperative** of all verbs without exception :

Aimons finissons recevons vendons.

(2) In **ions**—

[a] In the **Imperfect Indicative** of all verbs without exception :

Nous aimions nous finissions nous recevions nous vendions.

[b] In the **Present Conditional** of all verbs without exception :

Nous aimerions nous finirions nous recevions nous vendrions.

[c] In the **Present Subjunctive** of all verbs except *avoir* and *être* (que nous ayons, que nous soyons) :

Que nous aimions	que nous finissions
Que nous recevions	que nous vendions.

[d] In the **Imperfect Subjunctive** of all verbs without exception :

Que nous aimassions	que nous finissions
Que nous reçussions	que nous vendissions.

(3) In **mes**—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of *être* : nous sommes.

[b] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs without exception :

Nous aimâmes nous finîmes nous reçûmes nous vendîmes.

Obs. 1. The termination *ons* (L. *amus*) was in old French *omes*, which has been preserved in *nous sommes*.

Obs. 2. The circumflex accent always placed over the vowel which precedes the termination *-mes* of the **Preterite** comes from a contraction :

Nous aimâmes, from L. *amavimus*.

§ 241. SECOND PERSON PLURAL.—The second person plural ends—

(1) In *ez*—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of all verbs except *être*, *dire*, *redire*, and *faire* and its compounds :

Vous aimez *vous finissez* *vous recevez* *vous vendez.*

[b] In the **Future Present** of all verbs without exception :

Vous aimerez *vous finirez* *vous recevrez* *vous vendrez.*

[c] In the **Imperative** of all verbs except *dire*, *redire*, and *faire* and its compounds :

Aimez *finissez* *recevez* *vendez.*

(2) In *iez*—

[a] In the **Imperfect Indicative** of all verbs without exception :

Vous aimiez *vous finissiez* *vous receviez* *vous vendiez.*

[b] In the **Present Conditional** of all verbs without exception :

Vous aimeriez *vous finiriez* *vous recevriez* *vous vendriez.*

[c] In the **Present Subjunctive** of all verbs except *avoir* and *être* (*que vous ayez, que vous soyez*) :

Que vous aimiez *que vous finissiez*
Que vous receviez *que vous vendiez.*

[d] In the **Imperfect Subjunctive** of all verbs without exception :

Que vous aimassiez *que vous finissiez.*
Que vous reçussiez *que vous vendissiez.*

(3) In *tes*—

[a] In the **Present Indicative** of *être*, *dire*, *redire*, and *faire* and its compounds :

Vous êtes *vous dites* *vous redites* *vous faites.*

[b] In the **Imperative** of *dire*, *redire*, and *faire* and its compounds :

Dites *redites* *faites.*

[c] In the **Preterite** or **Past Definite** of all verbs without exception :

Vous aimâtes *vous finîtes* *vous reçûtes* *vous vendîtes.*

Obs. 1. Êtes, dites, faites come regularly from *L. estis, dicitis, facitis*.

Obs. 2. The circumflex accent always placed over the vowel which precedes the termination *-tes* of the **Preterite** comes from the dropping of an *s* :

Vous aimâtes, from *L. amastis*, for *amavistis*.

§ 242. **THIRD PERSON PLURAL**.—The third person plural always ends in *ent*, except—

[*a*] In the Present Indicative of **avoir**, **être**, **aller**, **faire** and its compounds :

Ils ont ils sont ils vont ils font.

[*b*] In the **Future Present** of all verbs, regular or irregular :

Ils aimeront ils finiront ils recevront ils vendront.

V.—Agreement of the Verb with the Subject.

§ 243. **AGREEMENT WITH ONE SUBJECT**.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person :

L'obscurité **est** le royaume de *Obscurity is the kingdom of error.*
l'erreur.

Nous **riions**, d'autres **pleurent**. *We laugh, others weep.*

Obs. 1. If the subject is a collective noun in the singular, not followed by a noun in the genitive, the verb agrees with it, according to the general rule, and is put in the singular :

(Le peuple, trahi par son souverain, *The people, betrayed by their sovereign,*
le **déposa**. *deposed him.*

Obs. 2. If the collective noun is followed by another noun in the genitive, the verb agrees with the more important of the two, *i.e.* (as a rule) with the collective noun when it is *general*, and with its complement when the collective noun is *partitive* :¹

La foule de ses amis l'**abandonna**. *The multitude of his friends forsook him.*

Une foule d'amis l'**abandonnèrent**. *A multitude of friends forsook him.*

¹ A collective noun is *general* when it expresses a distinct whole or a determinate number, in which case it is usually preceded by the definite article ; as, *l'armée, la foule, le peuple* ; *partitive*, when it denotes a partial or indeterminate number, in which case it is generally preceded by the indefinite article ; as, *une foule, une multitude, une quantité*.

Obs. 3. If the subject is an adverb of quantity, the verb agrees with the complement of the adverb, whether expressed or understood :

Peu (de chose) **suffit** au sage.

Little is enough for the wise.

Beaucoup (de gens) le **croient**.

Many think so.

(For more details and exceptions, see *Syntax*, §§ 198, 199.)

§ 244. AGREEMENT WITH SEVERAL SUBJECTS.—When there are several subjects, the verb is put in the plural, and when the subjects are of different persons, in the first person, if there is one ; if not, in the second (the pronouns **nous** or **vous** being, in that case, generally placed before the verb) :

La raison et la liberté **sont** incompatibles avec la faiblesse.

Reason and liberty are incompatible with weakness.

Vous et moi **nous** l'avons vu.

You and I have seen it.

Vous et lui **vous** l'avez vu.

You and he have seen it.

Obs. The verb agrees with the *last subject only*, when the subjects are connected by **ni** or **ou**, and the state or action expressed by the verb only refers to one (which is seldom the case with **ni**, and almost always with **ou**) :

Ni lui ni son frère ne **sera** choisi pour ce poste.

Neither he nor his brother will be chosen for this post.

Lui ou son frère **viendra**.

He or his brother will come.

If, however, the subjects are of different persons, the verb must always be put in the plural :

Son frère ou moi **nous** **vien-**
drons.

Either his brother or I will come.

(For other exceptions, see *Syntax*, §§ 200-203.)

B.—AUXILIARY VERBS.

§ 245. As already stated (§ 224), two auxiliary verbs are used in order to form the compound tenses: **avoir**, *to have*, and **être**, *to be*.

Obs. 1. The verb **avoir** is used to form its own compound tenses and those of **être**, of all transitive (active) verbs [except the reflexive] and of most intransitive verbs.

The verb **être** is used to form the compound tenses of all reflexive and of some intransitive verbs (see §§ 259-262), and the whole of the Passive Voice.

Obs. 2. Both **avoir** and **être** may be used independently of any other verb :

J'ai votre livre.

I have your book.

Je suis Français.

I am a Frenchman.

§ 246.

AVOIR (L. habere), to have.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

J'ai	<i>I have.</i>
tu as	<i>thou hast.</i>
il (or elle) a	<i>he (or she) has.</i>
nous avons	<i>we have.</i>
vous avez	<i>you have.</i>
ils (or elles) ont	<i>they have.</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai eu	<i>I (have) had.</i>
tu as eu	<i>thou (hast) had.</i>
il a eu	<i>he (has) had.</i>
nous avons eu	<i>we (have) had.</i>
vous avez eu	<i>you (have) had.</i>
ils ont eu	<i>they (have) had.</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'avais	<i>I had (I used to have).</i>
tu avais	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il avait	<i>he had.</i>
nous avions	<i>we had.</i>
vous aviez	<i>you had.</i>
ils avaient	<i>they had.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais eu	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu	<i>they had had.</i>

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

J'eus	<i>I had.</i>
tu eus	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il eut	<i>he had.</i>
nous eûmes	<i>we had.</i>
vous eûtes	<i>you had.</i>
ils eurent	<i>they had.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus eu	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eu	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu	<i>they had had.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aurai	<i>I shall have.</i>
tu auras	<i>thou wilt have.</i>
il aura	<i>he will have.</i>
nous aurons	<i>we shall have.</i>
vous aurez	<i>you will have.</i>
ils auront	<i>they will have.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu	<i>I shall have had.</i>
tu auras eu	<i>thou wilt have had.</i>
il aura eu	<i>he will have had.</i>
nous aurons eu	<i>we shall have had.</i>
vous aurez eu	<i>you will have had.</i>
ils auront eu	<i>they will have had.</i>

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

J'aurais	<i>I should have.</i>
tu aurais	<i>thou wouldst have.</i>
il aurait	<i>he would have.</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should have.</i>
vous auriez	<i>you would have.</i>
ils auraient	<i>they would have.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais (or eusse) eu	<i>I should have had.</i>
tu aurais (or eusses) eu	<i>thou wouldst have had.</i>
il aurait (or eût) eu	<i>he would have had.</i>
nous aurions (or eussions) eu	<i>we should have had.</i>
vous auriez (or eussiez) eu	<i>you would have had.</i>
ils auraient (or eussent) eu	<i>they would have had.</i>

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Aie	<i>have (thou).</i>
qu'il ait	<i>let him have.</i>
ayons	<i>let us have.</i>
ayez	<i>have (ye).</i>
qu'ils aient	<i>let them have.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aie eu	<i>have had.</i>
qu'il ait eu	<i>let him have had.</i>
ayons eu	<i>let us have had.</i>
ayez eu	<i>have had.</i>
qu'ils aient eu	<i>let them have had.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que j'aie	<i>that I may have.</i>
que tu aies	<i>that thou mayst have.</i>
qu'il ait	<i>that he may have.</i>
que nous ayons	<i>that we may have.</i>
que vous ayez	<i>that you may have.</i>
qu'ils aient	<i>that they may have.</i>

PAST or PERFECT.

Que j'aie eu	<i>that I may have had.</i>
que tu aies eu	<i>that thou mayst have had.</i>
qu'il ait eu	<i>that he may have had.</i>
que nous ayons eu	<i>that we may have had.</i>
que vous ayez eu	<i>that you may have had.</i>
qu'ils aient eu	<i>that they may have had.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Que j'eusse	<i>that I might have.</i>
que tu eusses	<i>that thou mightest have.</i>
qu'il eût	<i>that he might have.</i>
que nous eussions	<i>that we might have.</i>
que vous eussiez	<i>that you might have.</i>
qu'ils eussent	<i>that they might have.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse eu	<i>that I might have had.</i>
que tu eusses eu	<i>that thou mightest have had.</i>
qu'il eût eu	<i>that he might have had.</i>
que nous eussions eu	<i>that we might have had.</i>
que vous eussiez eu	<i>that you might have had.</i>
qu'ils eussent eu	<i>that they might have had.</i>

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST OR PERFECT.	
Avoir	to have.	Avoir eu	to have had.

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Ayant	having.	Ayant eu	having had.

§ 247. The verb **avoir** corresponds in a few expressions to the English *to be* :

J'ai besoin d'aide	I am in need of help.	Vous aviez soin de . . .	you were careful to . . .
Tu as chaud	thou art hot.	Ils avaient sommeil	they were sleepy.
Il a froid	he is cold.	Quel âge aura-t-il?	how old will he be?
Nous avons envie de . . .	we are (feel) inclined to . . .	Il aura trente ans	he will be thirty.
Vous avez faim	you are hungry.	Elle avait les cheveux blonds	she was fair-haired.
Ils ont soif	they are thirsty.	J'ai eu froid aux pieds	my feet were cold.
J'avais honte de . . .	I was ashamed to . . .	Avez-vous mal aux yeux?	are your eyes sore?
Tu avais peur	thou wast afraid.	Il a le mal du pays	he is home-sick.
Il avait raison	he was right.		
Nous avions tort	we were wrong.		

§ 248. ÊTRE (L.L. *essere*, for *esse*), *to be*.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je suis	I am.	J'ai été	I have been.
tu es	thou art.	tu as été	thou hast been.
il (or elle) est	he (or) she is.	il a été	he has been.
nous sommes	we are.	nous avons été	we have been.
vous êtes	you are.	vous avez été	you have been.
ils (or elles) sont	they are.	ils ont été	they have been.
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
J'étais	I was (I used to be).	J'avais été	I had been.
tu étais	thou wast.	tu avais été	thou hadst been.
il était	he was.	il avait été	he had been.
nous étions	we were.	nous avions été	we had been.
vous étiez	you were.	vous aviez été	you had been.
ils étaient	they were.	ils avaient été	they had been.

INDICATIVE—continued.

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

Je fus	<i>I was.</i>
tu fus	<i>thou wast.</i>
il fut	<i>he was.</i>
nous fûmes	<i>we were.</i>
vous fûtes	<i>you were.</i>
ils furent	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai	<i>I shall be.</i>
tu seras	<i>thou wilt be.</i>
il sera	<i>he will be.</i>
nous serons	<i>we shall be.</i>
vous serez	<i>you will be.</i>
ils seront	<i>they will be.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus été	<i>I had been.</i>
tu eus été	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il eut été	<i>he had been.</i>
nous eûmes été	<i>we had been.</i>
vous eûtes été	<i>you had been.</i>
ils eurent été	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été	<i>I shall have been.</i>
tu auras été	<i>thou wilt have been.</i>
il aura été	<i>he will have been.</i>
nous aurons été	<i>we shall have been.</i>
vous aurez été	<i>you will have been.</i>
ils auront été	<i>they will have been.</i>

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je serais	<i>I should be.</i>
tu serais	<i>thou wouldst be.</i>
il serait	<i>he would be.</i>
nous serions	<i>we should be.</i>
vous seriez	<i>you would be.</i>
ils seraient	<i>they would be.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais (or eusse) été	<i>I should have been.</i>
tu aurais (or eusses) été	<i>thou wouldst have been.</i>
il aurait (or eût) été	<i>he would have been.</i>
nous aurions (or eussions) été	<i>we should have been.</i>
vous auriez (or eussiez) été	<i>you would have been.</i>
ils auraient (or eussent) été	<i>they would have been.</i>

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Sois	<i>be (thou).</i>
qu'il soit	<i>let him be.</i>
soyons	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez	<i>be (ye).</i>
qu'ils soient	<i>let them be.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aie été	<i>have been.</i>
qu'il ait été	<i>let him have been.</i>
ayons été	<i>let us have been.</i>
ayez été	<i>have been.</i>
qu'ils aient été	<i>let them have been.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je sois	<i>that I may be.</i>
que tu sois	<i>that thou mayst be.</i>
qu'il soit	<i>that he may be.</i>
que nous soyons	<i>that we may be.</i>
que vous soyez	<i>that you may be.</i>
qu'ils soient	<i>that they may be.</i>

PAST or PERFECT.

Que j'aie été	<i>that I may have been.</i>
que tu aies été	<i>that thou mayst have been.</i>
qu'il ait été	<i>that he may have been.</i>
que nous ayons été	<i>that we may have been.</i>
que vous ayez été	<i>that you may have been.</i>
qu'ils aient été	<i>that they may have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE—continued.

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je fusse	<i>that I might be.</i>	Que j'eusse été	<i>that I might have been.</i>
que tu fusses	<i>that thou mightest be.</i>	que tu eusses été	<i>that thou mightest have been.</i>
qu'il fût	<i>that he might be.</i>	qu'il eût été	<i>that he might have been.</i>
que nous fussions	<i>that we might be.</i>	que nous eussions été	<i>that we might have been.</i>
que vous fussiez	<i>that you might be.</i>	que vous eussiez été	<i>that you might have been.</i>
qu'ils fussent	<i>that they might be.</i>	qu'ils eussent été	<i>that they might have been.</i>

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Être	<i>to be.</i>	Avoir été	<i>to have been.</i>

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Étant	<i>being.</i>	Ayant été	<i>having been.</i>

Obs. 1. Être borrows from the old Latin verb *fuere* its Preterite *fus* (L. *fui*) and its Imperfect Subjunctive *fusse* (L. *fuissem*), and from *stare* its Past Participle *été* (O.F. *esté*, L. *status*).

Obs. 2. The Past Participle *été* always remains invariable.

Obs. 3. Être, in its compound tenses, is frequently used instead of *aller*, *to go* :

Avez-vous été à Londres ?

Did you go to London ?

Aller, however, should be used when the subject is still in the place mentioned :

Où est-il?—Il est allé à la campagne.

Where is he?—He is gone to the country.

§ 249. Several other verbs—**aller**, **devoir**, **faire**, **falloir**, **pouvoir**, **venir**—are frequently used as auxiliaries to form idiomatic tenses—

(1) **Aller**, *to go* :

Je vais	} <i>partir</i>	I am	} <i>going</i>	J'allais	} <i>écrire.</i>	I was	} <i>going</i>
tu vas		thou art		tu allais		thou wast	
il va		he is		il allait		he was	
nous allons		we are		nous allions		we were	
vous allez		you are		vous alliez		you were	
ils vont		they are		ils allaient		they were	

(2) **Devoir**, *to be obliged to, to have to, to be to, to intend to, ought to, must* :

Je dois	} parler.	{ I am, I have, I intend thou art he is we are you are they are	} to speak.	Je devais	} chan- ter.	{ I was, I had, I intended thou wast he was we were you were they were	} to sing.
tu dois				tu devais			
il doit				il devait			
nous devons				nous devions			
vous devez				vous deviez			
ils doivent		ils devaient					
Je devrais	} sor- tir.	{ I should I ought to thou shouldst he should we should you should they should	} go out.	J'aurais	} dû re- fuser.	{ I should I ought to thou shouldst he should we should you should they should	} have re- fused.
tu devrais				tu aurais			
il devrait				il aurait			
nous devrions				nous aurions			
vous devriez				vous auriez			
ils devraient		ils auraient					
J'ai dû	} revenir.			I have had			to come back, or I (etc.) must have come back.
tu as dû				thou hast had			
il a dû				he has had			
nous avons dû				we have had			
vous avez dû				you have had			
ils ont dû		they have had					

(3) **Faire**, *to make, to order, to cause, to have* :

Je fais bâtir une maison.	I have a house being built.
Tu faisais rire tout le monde.	Thou wast making everybody laugh.
Il a fait fermer la fenêtre.	He has had the window shut.
Nous avons fait venir son frère.	We had sent for his brother.
Vous me le ferez voir.	You will let me see it; show it to me.
Ils l'auraient fait attendre.	They would have made him wait.

Obs. 1. The verb used with **faire** is always in the *Infinitive Active* and stands *directly* after **faire**.

Obs. 2. If the following infinitive has a direct object, the name of the person is put in the dative :

J'ai fait lire les enfants.	I have made the children read.
But J'ai fait lire cette page aux enfants.	I have made the children read this page.

(4) **Falloir**, *to be necessary, ought to, must, to want* :

Il me faut partir.	} I must set out.
Il faut que je parte.	
Il lui fallait un dictionnaire.	He wanted a dictionary.
Il nous aurait fallu revenir tout de suite, etc.	We ought to have (or we should have had to) come back directly, etc.

(See § 346.)

(5) **Pouvoir, can, may :**

Pourraient-ils mieux faire?

Vous pourriez rester.

Ils auraient pu terminer.

*Could they do better?**You might stay.**They might have finished.*(6) **Venir de, to have just :**

Je viens	de com- men- cer.	I have	just be- gun.	Je venais	de finir.	I had	just fin- ished.
tu viens		thou hast		tu venais		thou hadst	
il vient		he has		il venait		he had	
nous venons		we have		nous venions		we had	
vous venez		you have		vous veniez		you had	
ils viennent		they have		ils venaient		they had	

C.—ACTIVE VERBS.

First Conjugation (in *-ER*).

§ 250.

AIMER (L. *amare*), *to love*.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
J'aime	<i>I love (I am loving).</i>	J'ai aimé	<i>I (have) loved.</i>
tu aimes	<i>thou lovest.</i>	tu as aimé	<i>thou hast loved (thou lovedst)</i>
il aime	<i>he loves.</i>	il a aimé	<i>he (has) loved.</i>
nous aimons	<i>we love.</i>	nous avons aimé	<i>we (have) loved.</i>
vous aimez	<i>you love.</i>	vous avez aimé	<i>you (have) loved.</i>
ils aiment	<i>they love.</i>	ils ont aimé	<i>they (have) loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
J'aimais	<i>I was loving (I used to love).</i>	J'avais aimé	<i>I had loved.</i>
tu aimais	<i>thou wast loving.</i>	tu avais aimé	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>
il aimait	<i>he was loving.</i>	il avait aimé	<i>he had loved.</i>
nous aimions	<i>we were loving.</i>	nous avions aimé	<i>we had loved.</i>
vous aimiez	<i>you were loving.</i>	vous aviez aimé	<i>you had loved.</i>
ils aimaient	<i>they were loving.</i>	ils avaient aimé	<i>they had loved.</i>

INDICATIVE—continued.

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

J'aimai	<i>I loved.</i>
tu aimas	<i>thou lovedst.</i>
il aimait	<i>he loved.</i>
nous aimâmes	<i>we loved.</i>
vous aimâtes	<i>you loved.</i>
ils aimèrent	<i>they loved.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus aimé	<i>I had loved.</i>
tu eus aimé	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>
il eut aimé	<i>he had loved.</i>
nous eûmes aimé	<i>we had loved.</i>
vous eûtes aimé	<i>you had loved.</i>
ils eurent aimé	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aimerai	<i>I shall love.</i>
tu aimeras	<i>thou wilt love.</i>
il aimera	<i>he will love.</i>
nous aimerons	<i>we shall love.</i>
vous aimerez	<i>you will love.</i>
ils aimeront	<i>they will love.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai aimé	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
tu auras aimé	<i>thou wilt have loved.</i>
il aura aimé	<i>he will have loved.</i>
nous aurons aimé	<i>we shall have loved.</i>
vous aurez aimé	<i>you will have loved.</i>
ils auront aimé	<i>they will have loved.</i>

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

J'aimerais	<i>I should love.</i>
tu aimerais	<i>thou wouldst love.</i>
il aimerait	<i>he would love.</i>
nous aimerions	<i>we should love.</i>
vous aimeriez	<i>you would love.</i>
ils aimeraient	<i>they would love.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais (or eusse) aimé	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have loved.</i>
tu aurais (or eusses) aimé	<i>thou wouldst</i>	
il aurait (or eût) aimé	<i>he would</i>	
nous aurions (or eussions) aimé	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez (or eussiez) aimé	<i>you would</i>	
ils auraient (or eussent) aimé	<i>they would</i>	

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Aime	<i>love (thou).</i>
qu'il aime	<i>let him love.</i>
aimons	<i>let us love.</i>
aimez	<i>love (ye).</i>
qu'ils aiment	<i>let them love.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aie aimé	<i>have loved.</i>
qu'il ait aimé	<i>let him have loved.</i>
ayons aimé	<i>let us have loved.</i>
ayez aimé	<i>have loved.</i>
qu'ils aient aimé	<i>let them have loved.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Que j'aime	that I may love.	Que j'aie aimé	that I may
que tu aimes	that thou mayst love.	que tu aies aimé	that thou
			mayst
qu'il aime	that he may love.	qu'il ait aimé	that he may
que nous aimions	that we may love.	que nous ayons aimé	that we may
que vous aimiez	that you may love.	que vous ayez aimé	that you may
qu'ils aiment	that they may love.	qu'ils aient aimé	that they may
			} have loved.
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que j'aimasse	that I might love.	Que j'eusse aimé	that I might
que tu aimasses	that thou mightest love.	que tu eusses aimé	that thou
			mightest
qu'il aimât	that he might love.	qu'il eût aimé	that he might
que nous aimassions	that we might love.	que nous eussions aimé	that we might
			} have loved.
que vous aimassiez	that you might love.	que vous eussiez aimé	that you
			might
qu'ils aimassent	that they might love.	qu'ils eussent aimé	that they
			might

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Aimer	to love.	Avoir aimé	to have loved.

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Aimant	loving.	Ayant aimé	having loved.

Second Conjugation (in *-IR*).

§ 251.

FINIR (L. finire), to finish.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je finis	I finish (I am finishing).	J'ai fini	I (have) finished.
tu finis	thou finishest.	tu as fini	thou hast finished (thou finishedst).
il finit	he finishes.	il a fini	he (has) finished.
nous finissons	we finish.	nous avons fini	we (have) finished.
vous finissez	you finish.	vous avez fini	you (have) finished.
ils finissent	they finish.	ils ont fini	they (have) finished.

INDICATIVE—continued.

IMPERFECT.

Je finissais	<i>I was finishing (I used to finish).</i>
tu finissais	<i>thou wast finishing.</i>
il finissait	<i>he was finishing.</i>
nous finissions	<i>we were finishing.</i>
vous finissiez	<i>you were finishing.</i>
ils finissaient	<i>they were finishing.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini	<i>I had finished.</i>
tu avais fini	<i>thou hadst finished.</i>
il avait fini	<i>he had finished.</i>
nous avions fini	<i>we had finished.</i>
vous aviez fini	<i>you had finished.</i>
ils avaient fini	<i>they had finished.</i>

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

Je finis	<i>I finished.</i>
tu finis	<i>thou finishedst.</i>
il finit	<i>he finished.</i>
nous finîmes	<i>we finished.</i>
vous finîtes	<i>you finished.</i>
ils finirent	<i>they finished.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini	<i>I had finished.</i>
tu eus fini	<i>thou hadst finished.</i>
il eut fini	<i>he had finished.</i>
nous eûmes fini	<i>we had finished.</i>
vous eûtes fini	<i>you had finished.</i>
ils eurent fini	<i>they had finished.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je finirai	<i>I shall finish.</i>
tu finiras	<i>thou wilt finish.</i>
il finira	<i>he will finish.</i>
nous finirons	<i>we shall finish.</i>
vous finirez	<i>you will finish.</i>
ils finiront	<i>they will finish.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have finished.</i>
tu auras fini	<i>thou wilt</i>	
il aura fini	<i>he will</i>	
nous aurons fini	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez fini	<i>you will</i>	
ils auront fini	<i>they will</i>	

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je finirais	<i>I should finish.</i>
tu finirais	<i>thou wouldst finish.</i>
il finirait	<i>he would finish.</i>
nous finirions	<i>we should finish.</i>
vous finiriez	<i>you would finish.</i>
ils finiraient	<i>they would finish.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais fini	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have finished.</i>
tu aurais fini	<i>thou wouldst</i>	
il aurait fini	<i>he would</i>	
nous aurions fini	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez fini	<i>you would</i>	
ils auraient fini	<i>they would</i>	

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Finis	<i>finish (thou).</i>
qu'il finisse	<i>let him finish.</i>
finissons	<i>let us finish.</i>
finissez	<i>finish (ye).</i>
qu'ils finissent	<i>let them finish.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aie fini	<i>have finished.</i>
qu'il ait fini	<i>let him have finished.</i>
ayons fini	<i>let us have finished.</i>
ayez fini	<i>have finished.</i>
qu'ils aient fini	<i>let them have finished.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Que je finisse	<i>that I may finish.</i>	Que j'aie fini	<i>that I may</i>
que tu finisses	<i>that thou mayst finish.</i>	que tu aies fini	<i>that thou</i>
			<i>mayst</i>
qu'il finisse	<i>that he may finish.</i>	qu'il ait fini	<i>that he may</i>
que nous finissions	<i>that we may finish.</i>	que nous ayons fini	<i>that we may</i>
que vous finissiez	<i>that you may finish.</i>	que vous ayez fini	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils finissent	<i>that they may finish.</i>	qu'ils aient fini	<i>that they may</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je finisse	<i>that I might finish.</i>	Que j'eusse fini	<i>that I might</i>
que tu finisses	<i>that thou mightest finish.</i>	que tu eusses fini	<i>that thou</i>
			<i>mightest</i>
qu'il finît	<i>that he might finish.</i>	qu'il eût fini	<i>that he might</i>
que nous finissions	<i>that we might finish.</i>	que nous eussions fini	<i>that we might</i>
que vous finissiez	<i>that you might finish.</i>	que vous eussiez fini	<i>that you</i>
			<i>might</i>
qu'ils finissent	<i>that they might finish.</i>	qu'ils eussent fini	<i>that they</i>

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Finir	<i>to finish.</i>	Avoir fini	<i>to have finished.</i>

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
Finissant	<i>finishing.</i>	Ayant fini	<i>having finished.</i>

Third Conjugation (in -OIR).

§ 252.

RECEVOIR (L. recipere), *to receive*.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.	
Je reçois	<i>I receive (I am receiving).</i>	J'ai reçu	<i>I (have) received.</i>
tu reçois	<i>thou receivest.</i>	tu as reçu	<i>thou hast received (thou receivedst).</i>
il reçoit	<i>he receives.</i>	il a reçu	<i>he (has) received.</i>
nous recevons	<i>we receive.</i>	nous avons reçu	<i>we (have) received.</i>
vous recevez	<i>you receive.</i>	vous avez reçu	<i>you (have) received.</i>
ils reçoivent	<i>they receive.</i>	ils ont reçu	<i>they (have) received.</i>

INDICATIVE—continued.

IMPERFECT.

Je recevais	<i>I was receiving (I used to receive).</i>
tu recevais	<i>thou wast receiving.</i>
il recevait	<i>he was receiving.</i>
nous recevions	<i>we were receiving.</i>
vous receviez	<i>you were receiving.</i>
ils recevaient	<i>they were receiving.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu	<i>I had received.</i>
tu avais reçu	<i>thou hadst received.</i>
il avait reçu	<i>he had received.</i>
nous avions reçu	<i>we had received.</i>
vous aviez reçu	<i>you had received.</i>
ils avaient reçu	<i>they had received.</i>

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

Je reçus	<i>I received.</i>
tu reçus	<i>thou receivedst.</i>
il reçut	<i>he received.</i>
nous reçûmes	<i>we received.</i>
vous reçûtes	<i>you received.</i>
ils reçurent	<i>they received.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu	<i>I had received.</i>
tu eus reçu	<i>thou hadst received.</i>
il eut reçu	<i>he had received.</i>
nous eûmes reçu	<i>we had received.</i>
vous eûtes reçu	<i>you had received.</i>
ils eurent reçu	<i>they had received.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je recevrai	<i>I shall receive.</i>
tu recevras	<i>thou wilt receive.</i>
il recevra	<i>he will receive.</i>
nous recevrons	<i>we shall receive.</i>
vous recevrez	<i>you will receive.</i>
ils recevront	<i>hey will receive.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have received</i>
tu auras reçu	<i>thou wilt</i>	
il aura reçu	<i>he will</i>	
nous aurons reçu	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez reçu	<i>you will</i>	
ils auront reçu	<i>they will</i>	

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je recevrais	<i>I should receive.</i>
tu recevrais	<i>thou wouldst receive.</i>
il recevrait	<i>he would receive.</i>
nous recevriions	<i>we should receive.</i>
vous recevriez	<i>you would receive.</i>
ils recevraient	<i>they would receive.</i>

PAST.

J'aurais (or eusse) reçu	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have received.</i>
tu aurais (or eusses) reçu	<i>thou wouldst</i>	
il aurait (or eût) reçu	<i>he would</i>	
nous aurions (or eussions) reçu	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez (or eussiez) reçu	<i>you would</i>	
ils auraient (or eussent) reçu	<i>they would</i>	

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

Reçois	<i>receive (thou).</i>
qu'il reçoive	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez	<i>receive (ye).</i>
qu'ils reçoivent	<i>let them receive.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aie reçu	<i>have received.</i>
qu'il ait reçu	<i>let him have received.</i>
ayons reçu	<i>let us have received.</i>
ayez reçu	<i>have received.</i>
qu'ils aient reçu	<i>let them have received.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST OR PERFECT.	
Que je reçoive	that I may receive.	Que j'aie reçu	that I may
que tu reçoives	that thou mayst receive.	que tu aies reçu	that thou mayst
qu'il reçoive	that he may receive.	qu'il ait reçu	that he may
que nous recevions	that we may receive.	que nous ayons reçu	that we may
que vous receviez	that you may receive.	que vous ayez reçu	that you may
qu'ils reçoivent	that they may receive.	qu'ils aient reçu	that they may
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Que je reçusse	that I might receive.	Que j'eusse reçu	that I might
que tu reçusses	that thou mightest receive.	que tu eusses reçu	that thou mightest
qu'il reçût	that he might receive.	qu'il eût reçu	that he might
que nous reçussions	that we might receive.	que nous eussions reçu	that we might
que vous reçussiez	that you might receive.	que vous eussiez reçu	that you might
qu'ils reçussent	that they might receive.	qu'ils eussent reçu	that they might

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST OR PERFECT.
Recevoir to receive.	Avoir reçu to have received.

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Recevant receiving.	Ayant reçu having received.

Obs. 1. The only verbs conjugated like **recevoir** are—

Concevoir to conceive.	Redevenir to remain in debt, to owe still.
Décevoir to deceive.	Percevoir to collect (taxes, etc.), to perceive (philos.).
Devoir to owe.	Apercevoir to perceive.

Obs. 2. These seven verbs drop the **ev** of the Infinitive before **oi** and before **u**, and drop **oi** in the Future and Conditional.

Obs. 3. Those which end in **-cevoir** take a cedilla under the **c** before **o** and **u**.

Obs. 4. **Devoir** and **redevenir** take a circumflex accent in the masculine singular of the Past Participle, **dû**, **redû**, but neither in the feminine singular nor in the plural of both genders : **due**, **redue**, **dus**, **redus**, **dues**, **redues**.

Fourth Conjugation (in *-RE*).

§ 253.

VENDRE (L. *vendere*), *to sell*.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je vends	<i>I sell (I am selling).</i>
tu vends	<i>thou sellest.</i>
il vend	<i>he sells.</i>
nous vendons	<i>we sell.</i>
vous vendez	<i>you sell.</i>
ils vendent	<i>they sell.</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu	<i>I (have) sold.</i>
tu as vendu	<i>thou hast sold (thou soldest).</i>
il a vendu	<i>he (has) sold.</i>
nous avons vendu	<i>we (have) sold.</i>
vous avez vendu	<i>you (have) sold.</i>
ils ont vendu	<i>they (have) sold.</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je vendais	<i>I was selling (I used to sell).</i>
tu vendais	<i>thou wast selling.</i>
il vendait	<i>he was selling.</i>
nous vendions	<i>we were selling.</i>
vous vendiez	<i>you were selling.</i>
ils vendaient	<i>they were selling.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

J'avais vendu	<i>I had sold.</i>
tu avais vendu	<i>thou hadst sold.</i>
il avait vendu	<i>he had sold.</i>
nous avions vendu	<i>we had sold.</i>
vous aviez vendu	<i>you had sold.</i>
ils avaient vendu	<i>they had sold.</i>

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

Je vendis	<i>I sold.</i>
tu vendis	<i>thou soldest.</i>
il vendit	<i>he sold.</i>
nous vendîmes	<i>we sold.</i>
vous vendîtes	<i>you sold.</i>
ils vendirent	<i>they sold.</i>

PAST ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu	<i>I had sold.</i>
tu eus vendu	<i>thou hadst sold.</i>
il eut vendu	<i>he had sold.</i>
nous eûmes vendu	<i>we had sold.</i>
vous eûtes vendu	<i>you had sold.</i>
ils eurent vendu	<i>they had sold.</i>

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je vendrai	<i>I shall sell.</i>
tu vendras	<i>thou wilt sell.</i>
il vendra	<i>he will sell.</i>
nous vendrons	<i>we shall sell.</i>
vous vendrez	<i>you will sell.</i>
ils vendront	<i>they will sell.</i>

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai vendu	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have sold.</i>
tu auras vendu	<i>thou wilt</i>	
il aura vendu	<i>he will</i>	
nous aurons vendu	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez vendu	<i>you will</i>	
ils auront vendu	<i>they will</i>	

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
Je vendrais	<i>I should sell.</i>	J'aurais (or eusse) vendu	<i>I should</i>
tu vendrais	<i>thou wouldst sell.</i>	tu aurais (or eusses) vendu	<i>thou wouldst</i>
il vendrait	<i>he would sell.</i>	il aurait (or eût) vendu	<i>he would</i>
nous vendrions	<i>we should sell.</i>	nous aurions (or eussions) vendu	<i>we should</i>
vous vendriez	<i>you would sell.</i>	vous auriez (or eussiez) vendu	<i>you would</i>
ils vendraient	<i>they would sell.</i>	ils auraient (or eussent) vendu	<i>they would</i>

} have sold.

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE. *		FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
Vends	<i>sell (thou).</i>	Aie vendu	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'il vende	<i>let him sell.</i>	qu'il ait vendu	<i>let him have sold.</i>
vendons	<i>let us sell.</i>	ayons vendu	<i>let us have sold.</i>
vendez	<i>sell (ye).</i>	ayez vendu	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'ils vendent	<i>let them sell.</i>	qu'ils aient vendu	<i>let them have sold.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Que je vende	<i>that I may sell.</i>	Que j'aie vendu	<i>that I may</i>
que tu vendes	<i>that thou mayst sell.</i>	que tu aies vendu	<i>that thou mayst</i>
qu'il vende	<i>that he may sell.</i>	qu'il ait vendu	<i>that he may</i>
que nous vendions	<i>that we may sell.</i>	que nous ayons vendu	<i>that we may</i>
que vous vendiez	<i>that you may sell.</i>	que vous ayez vendu	<i>that you may</i>
qu'ils vendent	<i>that they may sell.</i>	qu'ils aient vendu	<i>that they may</i>

} have sold.

IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse	<i>that I might sell.</i>
que tu vendisses	<i>that thou mightest sell.</i>
qu'il vendit	<i>that he might sell.</i>
que nous vendissions	<i>that we might sell.</i>
que vous vendissiez	<i>that you might sell.</i>
qu'ils vendissent	<i>that they might sell.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse vendu	<i>that I might</i>
que tu eusses vendu	<i>that thou mightest</i>
qu'il eût vendu	<i>that he might</i>
que nous eussions vendu	<i>that we might</i>
que vous eussiez vendu	<i>that you might</i>
qu'ils eussent vendu	<i>that they might</i>

} have sold.

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PAST or PERFECT.
Vendre	<i>to sell.</i>
	Avoir vendu
	<i>to have sold.</i>

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
Vendant	<i>s elling.</i>
	Ayant vendu
	<i>having sold.</i>

D.—PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 254. The Passive Voice is formed by adding to the verb *être* the Past Participle of the verb to be conjugated.

§ 255. The Past Participle thus conjugated with the verb *être* always agrees in *gender* and *number* with the *subject*.

Obs. When the pronoun *vous* is used instead of *tu*, the Past Participle remains in the singular, but it is of course put in the feminine if the pronoun *vous* represents a woman.

§ 256. ÊTRE AIMÉ, *to be loved.*

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(*I am loved.*)

Je suis	} aimé
tu es	} or
il (or elle) est	} aimée.
nous sommes	} aimés
vous êtes	} or
ils (or elles) sont	} aimées.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have been loved.*)

J'ai été	} aimé
tu as été	} or
il (or elle) a été	} aimée.
nous avons été	} aimés
vous avez été	} or
ils (or elles) ont été	} aimées.

IMPERFECT.

(*I was [I used to be] loved.*)

J'étais	} aimé
tu étais	} or
il (or elle) était	} aimée.
nous étions	} aimés
vous étiez	} or
ils (or elles) étaient	} aimées.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had been loved.*)

J'avais été	} aimé
tu avais été	} or
il (or elle) avait été	} aimée.
nous avions été	} aimés
vous aviez été	} or
ils (or elles) avaient été	} aimées.

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE,

(*I was loved.*)

Je fus	} aimé
tu fus	} or
il (or elle) fut	} aimée.
nous fûmes	} aimés
vous fûtes	} or
ils (or elles) furent	} aimées.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had been loved.*)

J'eus été	} aimé
tu eus été	} or
il (or elle) eut été	} aimée.
nous eûmes été	} aimés
vous eûtes été	} or
ils (or elles) eurent été	} aimées.

INDICATIVE—continued.

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

(I shall be loved.)

Je serai	} aimé
tu seras	} or
il (or elle) sera	} aimée.
nous serons	} aimés
vous serez	} or
ils (or elles) seront	} aimées.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall have been loved.)

J'aurai été	} aimé
tu auras été	} or
il (or elle) aura été	} aimée.
nous aurons été	} aimés
vous aurez été	} or
ils (or elles) auront été	} aimées.

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(I should be loved.)

Je serais	} aimé
tu serais	} or
il (or elle) serait	} aimée.
nous serions	} aimés
vous seriez	} or
ils (or elles) seraient	} aimées.

PAST.

(I should have been loved.)

J'aurais été	} aimé
tu aurais été	} or
il (or elle) aurait été	} aimée.
nous aurions été	} aimés
vous auriez été	} or
ils (or elles) auraient été	} aimées.

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

(Be loved.)

Sois	} aimé or
qu'il (or qu'elle) soit	} aimée.
soyons	} aimés
soyez	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) soient	} aimées.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(Have been loved.)

Aie été	} aimé or
qu'il (or qu'elle) ait été	} aimée.
ayons été	} aimés
ayez été	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) aient été	} aimées.

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(That I may be loved.)

Que je sois	} aimé
que tu sois	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) soit	} aimée.
que nous soyons	} aimés
que vous soyez	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) soient	} aimées.

PAST or PERFECT.

(That I may have been loved.)

Que j'aie été	} aimé
que tu aies été	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) ait été	} aimée.
que nous ayons été	} aimés
que vous ayez été	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) aient été	} aimées.

IMPERFECT.

(That I might be loved.)

Que je fusse	} aimé
que tu fusses	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) fût	} aimée.
que nous fussions	} aimés
que vous fussiez	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) fussent	} aimées.

PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have been loved.)

Que j'eusse été	} aimé
que tu eusses été	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) eût été	} aimée.
que nous eussions été	} aimés
que vous eussiez été	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) eussent été	} aimées.

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Être aimé (-e, -s, -es) *to be loved.*

PAST or PERFECT.

Avoir été aimé (-e, -s, -es) *to have been loved.*

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.

Étant aimé (-e, -s, -es) *being loved.*

PERFECT.

Ayant été aimé (-e, -s, -es) *having been loved.*

E.—INTRANSITIVE OR NEUTER VERBS.

§ 257. Intransitive or neuter verbs are conjugated like transitive verbs, except that a few form their compound tenses with *être*, and a few sometimes with *avoir*, sometimes with *être*, according to the sense.

Obs. When the compound tenses are formed with *être*, the Past Participle always agrees with the subject.

§ 258. MODEL OF AN INTRANSITIVE VERB CONJUGATED WITH *être*.—

ARRIVER (L.L. adripare), *to arrive*,

[The simple tenses being formed like those of *aimer*, the compound tenses alone are given.]

1. INDICATIVE.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have arrived.*)

Je suis	}	arrivé
tu es		or
il (or elle) est	}	arrivée.
nous sommes		arrivés
vous êtes	}	or
ils (or elles) sont		arrivées.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had arrived.*)

J'étais	}	arrivé
tu étais		or
il (or elle) était	}	arrivée.
nous étions		arrivés
vous étiez	}	or
ils (or elles) étaient		arrivées.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had arrived.*)

Je fus	}	arrivé
tu fus		or
il (or elle) fut	}	arrivée.
nous fûmes		arrivés
vous fûtes	}	or
ils (or elles) furent		arrivées.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*I shall have arrived.*)

Je serai	}	arrivé
tu seras		or
il (or elle) sera	}	arrivée.
nous serons		arrivés
vous serez	}	or
ils (or elles) seront		arrivées.

2. CONDITIONAL.

PAST.

(I should have arrived.)

Je serais	} arrivé
tu serais	} or
il (or elle) serait	} arrivée.
nous serions	} arrivés
vous seriez	} or
ils (or elles) seraient	} arrivées.

3. IMPERATIVE.

FUTURE PAST or ANTERIOR.

(Have arrived.)

Sois	} arrivé
qu'il (or qu'elle) soit	} or
soyons	} arrivée.
soyez	} arrivés
qu'ils (or qu'elles) soient	} or
	} arrivées.

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PAST or PERFECT.

(That I may have arrived)

Que je sois	} arrivé
que tu sois	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) soit	} arrivée.
que nous soyons	} arrivés
que vous soyez	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) soient	} arrivées.

PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have arrived.)

Que je fusse	} arrivé
que tu fusses	} or
qu'il (or qu'elle) fût	} arrivée.
que nous fussions	} arrivés
que vous fussiez	} or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) fussent	} arrivées.

5. INFINITIVE.

PAST or PERFECT.

Être arrivé (-e, -s, -es) to have arrived.

6. PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT.

Étant arrivé (-e, -s, -es) having arrived.

§ 259. The following intransitive verbs are always conjugated with être :

Aller	to go, to suit.	Venir	to come.
Arriver	to arrive.	✓ Devenir	to become. (so also fit)
Choir	to fall.	✓ Redevenir	to become again. (")
Échoir	to fall due.	✓ Intervenir	to interfere. (")
Décéder	to die.	✓ Parvenir	to reach, to succeed. (")
Éclorre	to be hatched, to bloom.	✓ Provenir	to come from. (")
Mourir	to die.	✓ Revenir	to come back, to please. (")
Naître	to be born.	✓ Survenir	to come up, to happen. (")

§ 260. To the above list may be added the following verbs which, according to some grammarians, take avoir to express an action and être to express a state, but as a matter of fact are commonly conjugated with être only :

Entrer	to go in.	Retourner	to return, to come back.
Rentrer	to go in again.	Sortir	to go out.
Partir	to set out.	Ressortir	to go out again.
Repartir	to set out again.	Tomber	to fall.
Rester	to stay, to remain.	Retomber	to fall again, to fall.

Obs. 1. It is obvious that all intransitive verbs which may be used transitively must, when so used, be conjugated with **avoir** :

Ils n'**avaient** pas encore rentré
le foin.

They had not yet taken in the hay.

Quelle carte **avez-vous** retournée?

What card did you turn up?

Obs. 2. **Repartir** and **ressortir** are conjugated with **avoir** in a special sense (see § 262).

§ 261. The following take **avoir** to denote action, **être** to denote the state resulting from the action :

✓ Aborder	to land.	✓ Réchapper	to escape again.
✓ Déborder	to overflow.	✓ Échouer	to strand, to fail.
✓ Accourir	to run to.	✓ Embellir	to grow handsomer.
✓ Apparaître	to appear.	✓ Empirer	to get worse.
✓ Disparaître	to disappear.	✓ Expirer	to expire.
✓ Baisser	to fall, to decline.	✓ Fleurir	to blossom.
✓ Cesser	to cease.	✓ Défleuir	to lose its blossom.
✓ Changer	to change.	✓ Refleuir	to blossom again.
✓ Croître	to grow.	✓ Grandir	to grow up.
✓ Accroître	to increase.	✓ Monter	to go up.
✓ Décroître	to decrease.	✓ Remonter	to go up again.
✓ Déchoir	to decay.	✓ Passer	to pass.
✓ Dégénérer	to degenerate.	✓ Repasser	to pass again.
✓ Demeurer	to dwell, to remain.	✓ Rajeunir	to grow young again
✓ Descendre	to go down.	✓ Ressusciter	to rise again.
✓ Redescendre	to go down again.	✓ Sonner	to toll, to strike.
✓ Échapper	to escape.	✓ Vieillir	to grow old.

EXAMPLES.

WITH **avoir**.

Le fleuve a crû de trois pieds depuis hier.	<i>The river has risen three feet since yesterday.</i>
Il a demeuré un an en Italie avant de se fixer ici.	<i>He stayed a year in Italy before settling here.</i>
Ils ont passé en Australie en 1880.	<i>They went to Aus- tralia in 1880.</i>
L'heure a sonné à l'instant.	<i>The hour has just struck.</i>
Elle a vieilli bien vite.	<i>She has grown old very quickly.</i>

WITH **être**.

Le fleuve est crû.	<i>The river is swollen.</i>
Il est demeuré ici pour vous voir.	<i>He has remained here to see you.</i>
Ils sont passés en Australie depuis 1880.	<i>They have been in Australia since 1880.</i>
L'heure est sonnée depuis longtemps.	<i>The hour struck long ago.</i>
Elle est certainement vieillie.	<i>She is certainly grown old.</i>

Obs. 1. When the subject is a person, *cesser* and *échouer* (meaning *to fail*) are always conjugated with **avoir**.

Obs. 2. *Demeurer* is always conjugated with *être* in the expressions *demeurer d'accord*, *to agree*, *demeurer sur la place*, *to be left dead on the spot*; with *avoir* in the sense of '*to be a long time*' :

Vous **avez** demeuré bien long-
temps en route.

You have been a very long time coming.

Obs. 3. According to some grammarians, *échapper* takes **avoir** when it denotes something forgotten, omitted, or not understood, *être* when it expresses something said inadvertently :

Le dernier couplet m'a échappé.	<i>I have forgotten the last stanza.</i>	Un cri lui est échappé.	<i>He uttered an in- voluntary cry.</i>
Cette ligne m' avait échappé.	<i>I had skipped over that line.</i>	Son secret lui était échappé.	<i>He had let out his secret.</i>
Le sens du passage m'a échappé.	<i>I have not understood the sense of the passage.</i>	Ce mot m' est échappé.	<i>This word slipped from me unawares.</i>

Obs. 4. *Fleurir* and *refleurir* always take **avoir** when used figuratively :

Les arts **ont** fleuri sous son règne.

Arts flourished in his reign.

§ 262. Notice besides the difference in the meaning of the following verbs, according to the auxiliary used :

WITH avoir .		WITH être .	
Convenir	<i>to suit, to become.</i>	Convenir	<i>to agree.</i>
Disconvenir	<i>not to suit.</i>	Disconvenir	<i>to deny.</i>
Repartir	<i>to reply.</i>	Repartir	<i>to set out again.</i>
Ce plan ne leur a pas convenu.	<i>This plan did not suit them.</i>	Ils étaient convenus de refuser.	<i>They had agreed to refuse.</i>
Vous lui avez fort bien reparti.	<i>You have replied to him very well.</i>	Ils sont repartis ce matin.	<i>They set out again this morning.</i>

Obs. Ressortir, *to go out again, to stand out, to result*, is irregular and conjugated with *être*, whilst *ressortir (de)*, *to be in the jurisdiction (of)*, is regular and conjugated with **avoir**.

F.—REFLEXIVE VERBS.

§ 263. Some verbs are reflexive by nature, *i.e.* exclusively reflexive, as :—

S'abstenir	to abstain.	s'enfuir	to run away.
s'adonner ¹	to apply one's-self, to be addicted.	s'enquérir	to inquire.
s'arroger	to arrogate to one's-self.	s'évader	to escape.
se cabrer	to rear.	s'évanouir	to faint, to vanish.
se dédire	to retract.	se lamenter	to lament.
s'écrier	to exclaim.	se récrier	to cry out.
s'écrouler	to fall down.	se réfugier	to take refuge.
s'emparer de	to take possession of.	se repentir, etc.	to repent, etc.

But most transitive, and a few intransitive, verbs may become accidentally reflexive ; as, *s'amuser*, to amuse one's-self ; *se nuire*, to injure one's-self, etc.

§ 264. All reflexive and reciprocal verbs, whether exclusively or accidentally reflexive, form their compound tenses with ÊTRE.

§ 265. The Past Participle of reflexive and reciprocal verbs agrees in gender and number with the *direct object preceding it* :

Nous nous sommes réjouis. We have rejoiced.

(The second pronoun *nous* is here in the accusative.)

Les lettres **que** nous nous sommes écrites. The letters we have written to each other.

(The second pronoun *nous* is here in the dative, but the Participle agrees with the *direct object que* which precedes.)

Obs. The Past Participle of all verbs reflexive by nature (except *s'arroger*) agrees with the reflexive pronoun, this pronoun being in the accusative.

§ 266. When there is no direct object, or when the direct object does not precede the verb, the Past Participle remains invariable :

Nous nous sommes écrit. We have written to each other.

(The second pronoun *nous* is here in the dative, and there is no direct object.)

Nous nous sommes écrit plusieurs lettres. We have written several letters to each other.

(The second pronoun *nous* is in the dative, and the direct object *lettres* follows the verb.)

¹ *Adonner* is only used as a nautical term, meaning to veer aft.

§ 267.

S'AMUSER, to amuse one's-self.

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(I amuse myself.)

Je m'amuse.
 tu t'amuses.
 il s'amuse.
 nous nous amusons.
 vous vous amusez.
 ils s'amusent.

IMPERFECT.

(I was amusing myself.)

Je m'amusais.
 tu t'amusais.
 il s'amusait.
 nous nous amusions.
 vous vous amusiez.
 ils s'amusaient.

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

(I amused myself.)

Je m'amusai.
 tu t'amusas.
 il s'amusa.
 nous nous amusâmes.
 vous vous amusâtes.
 ils s'amusèrent.

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

(I shall amuse myself.)

Je m'amuserai.
 tu t'amuseras.
 il s'amusera.
 nous nous amuserons.
 vous vous amuserez.
 ils s'amuseront.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(I [have] amused myself.)

Je me suis	}	amusé
tu t'es		or
il (or elle) s'est	}	amusée.
nous nous sommes		amusés
vous vous êtes	}	or
ils (or elles) se sont		amusées.

PLUPERFECT.

(I had amused myself.)

Je m'étais	}	amusé
tu t'étais		or
il (or elle) s'était	}	amusée.
nous nous étions		amusés
vous vous étiez	}	or
ils (or elles) s'étaient		amusées.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(I had amused myself.)

Je me fus	}	amusé
tu te fus		or
il (or elle) se fut	}	amusée.
nous nous fûmes		amusés
vous vous fûtes	}	or
ils (or elles) se furent		amusées.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall have amused myself.)

Je me serai	}	amusé
tu te seras		or
il (or elle) se sera	}	amusée.
nous nous serons		amusés
vous vous serez	}	or
ils (or elles) se seront		amusées.

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(I should amuse myself.)

Je m'amuserais.
 tu t'amuserais.
 ils s'amuserait.
 nous nous amuserions.
 vous vous amuseriez.
 ils s'amuseraient.

PAST.

(I should have amused myself.)

Je me serais	}	amusé
tu te serais		or
il (or elle) se serait	}	amusée.
nous nous serions		amusés
vous vous seriez	}	or
ils (or elles) se seraient		amusées.

3. IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.

Amuse-toi	<i>amuse thyself.</i>
qu'il s'amuse	<i>let him amuse himself.</i>
amusons-nous	<i>let us amuse ourselves.</i>
amusez-vous	<i>amuse yourselves.</i>
qu'ils s'amusent	<i>let them amuse themselves.</i>

NEGATIVE.

Ne t'amuse pas	<i>do not amuse thyself.</i>
qu'il ne s'amuse pas	<i>let him not amuse himself.</i>
ne nous amusons pas	<i>let us not amuse ourselves.</i>
ne vous amusez pas	<i>do not amuse yourselves.</i>
qu'ils ne s'amusent pas	<i>let them not amuse themselves.</i>

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(That I may amuse myself.)

Que je m'amuse.
 que tu t'amuses.
 qu'il s'amuse.
 que nous nous amusions.
 que vous vous amusiez.
 qu'ils s'amusent.

PAST or PERFECT.

(That I may have amused myself.)

Que je me sois	}	amusé
que tu te sois		or
qu'il (or qu'elle) se soit	}	amusée.
que nous nous soyons		amusés
que vous vous soyez	}	or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) se soient		amusées.

IMPERFECT.

(That I might amuse myself.)

Que je m'amusasse.
 que tu t'amusasses.
 qu'il s'amusât.
 que nous nous amusassions.
 que vous vous amusassiez.
 qu'ils s'amusassent.

PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have amused myself.)

Que je me fusse	}	amusé
qu tu te fusses		or
qu'il (or qu'elle) se fût	}	amusée.
que nous nous fussions		amusés
que vous vous fussiez	}	or
qu'ils (or qu'elles) se fussent		amusées.

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.
S'amuser	<i>to amuse one's-self.</i>	S'être amusé (-e, -s, -es) <i>to have amused one's-self.</i>

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.
S'amusant	<i>amusing one's-self.</i>	S'étant amusé (-e, -s, -es), <i>having amused one's-self.</i>

G.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 268. The only person in which Impersonal Verbs can be used is the third person singular, with the pronoun *il* (L. *illud*) taken in an indefinite sense.

This third person is inflected like the third person of other verbs.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs proper have neither Present Participle nor Imperative.

Obs. 2. Their Past Participle is always invariable.

§ 269.

NEIGER, *to snow.*

1. INDICATIVE.

PRES.	Il neige	<i>it snows.</i>	PAST INDEF.	Il a neigé	<i>it has snowed.</i>
IMP.	Il neigeait	<i>it was snowing.</i>	PLUP.	Il avait neigé	} <i>it had snowed.</i>
PRET.	Il neigea	<i>it snowed.</i>	PAST ANTER.	Il eut neigé	
FUT. PRES.	Il neigera	<i>it will snow.</i>	FUT. PAST.	Il aura neigé	<i>it will have snowed.</i>

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRES.	Il neigerait	<i>it would snow.</i>	PAST.	Il aurait neigé	<i>it would have snowed.</i>
-------	--------------	-----------------------	-------	-----------------	------------------------------

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	Qu'il neige	<i>that it may snow.</i>	PAST.	Qu'il ait neigé	<i>that it may have snowed.</i>
IMP.	Qu'il neigeât	<i>that it might snow.</i>	PLUP.	Qu'il eût neigé	<i>that it might have snowed.</i>

4. INFINITIVE.

PRES.	Neiger	<i>to snow.</i>	PAST.	Avoir neigé	<i>to amuse</i> <i>or</i> <i>amused.</i>
-------	--------	-----------------	-------	-------------	--

5. PAST PARTIC. : neigé, snowed.

§ 270. The following verbs (besides *neiger*) are impersonal by nature :

Bruiner, to drizzle : *il bruine*, etc.

Falloir,¹ to be necessary : *il faut*, etc.

Grêler, to hail : *il grêle*, etc.

Pleuvoir,² to rain : *il pleut*, etc.

Tonner, to thunder : *il tonne*, etc.

Venter, to be windy : *il vente*, etc.

To them may be added the two law-terms—

Apparaître, to appear, only used in the Infinitive and the Present Indicative : *il apparaît*.

Constater (now obsolete), to appear : *il constate*, etc.

Obs. 1. *Grêler* is also used transitively :

L'orage a grêlé les vignes, *The hail has ravaged the vines*,

and *grêler*, *pleuvoir* and *tonner* may be used figuratively with a noun-subject instead of *il*, even in the plural :

Les forts tonnaient. *The forts were thundering*.

Obs. 2. *Venter* is sometimes used with the noun *vent* (=wind) as its subject :

De quelque côté que vente le vent . . . *From whatever quarter the wind blows . . .*

§ 271. The following verbs are the most important of those which are occasionally impersonal :

(1) *Advenir* or *avenir*, to happen (see § 336).

(2) *Agir*, in *s'agir de*, to be in question, to be at stake, etc. :

<i>La chose dont il s'agit.</i>	<i>The thing in question.</i>
<i>Il s'agira de le faire.</i>	<i>The question will be to do it.</i>
<i>De quoi s'agit-il?</i>	<i>What is the matter?</i>
<i>De qui s'agit-il?</i>	<i>Who is concerned?</i>
<i>Il s'agissait de notre honneur.</i>	<i>Our honour was at stake.</i>

(3) *Aller*, in *y aller de*, to be at stake :

<i>Il y va de votre gloire.</i>	<i>Your glory is at stake.</i>
<i>Il y allait du salut de l'État.</i>	<i>The safety of the state was at stake.</i>

¹ See § 326.

² See § 349.

(4) **Arriver, to happen, to occur :**

Il arrive à tout le monde de se
tromper.

It happens to everybody to err.

(5) **Avoir, in y avoir, there . . . to be :**

Il y a des gens qui le pensent.

There are people who think so.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un ici?

Is there any one here?

Il y avait lieu de croire . . .

There was reason to believe . . .

N'y aura-t-il pas de musique?

Will there not be any music?

Il y aura bientôt deux heures
que je les attends.

*I have been waiting for them nearly two
hours.*

Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Bath?

How far is it from here to Bath?

Combien y avait-il qu'il était
parti?

How long was it since he had gone?

Tant il y a qu'il n'est pas revenu.

At any rate he has not come back.

(6) **Convenir, to suit, to be proper (see § 336) :**

Il convient que vous le fassiez.

It is proper that you should do it.

(7) **Dépendre, to depend :**

Il dépend de vous de l'empêcher.

It depends on you to prevent it.

(8) **Éclairer, to lighten :**

Il a éclairé toute la nuit.

It has lightened the whole night.

(9) **S'ensuivre, to follow (see § 431) :**

Il s'ensuit qu'il a tort.

It follows that he is wrong.

(10) **Être, to be, etc. :**

S'il en est ainsi. . .

If it be so . . .

Il est des hommes qui . . .

There are men who . . .

Quelle heure est-il?—Il est
tard.

What o'clock is it?—It is late.

Il était de son devoir d'ac-
cepter.

It was his duty to accept.

Il n'est pas en mon pouvoir
de le faire.

It is not possible for me to do it.

Il n'est pas que vous ne le
sachiez.

You cannot but know it.

Il n'est que de se taire.

There is nothing like keeping silent.

Il en est de même de lui.

It is the same with him.

Il n'en est rien.

There is no truth in it.

(11) *Faire, to be—*

[a] Denoting the state of the atmosphere :

Quel temps fait-il?—Il fait beau.	<i>What sort of weather is it?—It is fine.</i>
Il fait chaud, froid, doux, frais, sec, etc.	<i>It is warm, cold, mild, cool, dry, etc.</i>
Il fait jour, nuit, noir, sombre, etc.	<i>It is daylight, night, dark, etc.</i>
Il fait soleil, clair de lune.	<i>The sun, the moon shines.</i>
Il fait du brouillard, des éclairs, de l'orage, de la pluie, de la poussière, du vent, etc.	<i>It is foggy, it lightens, it is stormy rainy, dusty, windy, etc.</i>

[b] Denoting manner of being :

Il ne ferait pas bon essayer.	<i>It would not be safe to try.</i>
Fait-il cher vivre ici ?	<i>Is living dear here ?</i>

[c] Reflexively :

Comment se fait-il que vous soyez venu ?	<i>How is it that you came ?</i>
Il se fait tard.	<i>It is getting late.</i>

(12) *Geler, to freeze :*

Gèle-t-il ?	<i>Is it freezing ?</i>
-------------	-------------------------

So *dégeler, to thaw*, and *regeler, to freeze again*.

(13) *Importer, to be of importance :*

Il importe que vous veniez.	<i>It is important you should come.</i>
-----------------------------	---

(14) *Paraître, to appear* (see § 413) :

Il paraît qu'il a quitté.	<i>It appears that he has left.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

(15) *Plaire, to please, to suit* (see § 416) ;

Vous plaît-il de venir ?	<i>Does it suit you to come ?</i>
--------------------------	-----------------------------------

(16) *Pouvoir, in il se peut, it may be, etc.* (see § 351) :

Il se peut qu'il se soit trompé.	<i>It may be that he made a mistake.</i>
----------------------------------	--

(17) *Sembler, to seem :*

Il me semble qu'il a raison.	<i>It seems to me that he is right.</i>
------------------------------	---

(18) *Seoir, to fit, to become* (see § 353) :

Il ne vous sied pas de parler ainsi.	<i>It does not become you to speak so.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

(19) **Suffire**, *to suffice* (see § 430) :

Il suffit que je le veuille.

It is enough that I wish it.

(20) **Tarder**, *to long* :

Il me tardait de le savoir.

I was longing to know it.

(21) **Valoir**, in **valoir la peine**, *to be worth while* ; **valoir autant**, *to be as well* ; **valoir mieux**, *to be better* :

Il ne vaut pas la peine de
rester.

It is not worth while to stay.

Il vaut mieux qu'il vienne.

It is better that he should come.

§ 272. The impersonal construction is frequently used with other verbs, the pronoun **il** being placed before the verb as its grammatical subject, and the noun, which is the real subject, following the verb :

Il est venu plusieurs per-
sonnes.

Several persons have come.

H.—VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

§ 273. The negative *not*, used with a verb, is generally expressed in French by the words **ne . . . pas** or **ne . . . point**.¹

Ne is placed between the subject and the verb in simple tenses, and between the subject and the auxiliary in compound tenses.

Pas (or **point**) stands after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses:

Il n'écoute pas ; **il n'a pas**
écouté.

He is not listening ; he did not listen.

Obs. When the verb is in the Present Infinitive, **pas** (or **point**) is placed, as a rule, immediately after **ne** :

Ne pas écouter.

Not to listen.

If the verb is in the Past Infinitive, **pas** and **point** may come either immediately after **ne** or after the auxiliary :

Ne pas avoir écouté.
N'avoir pas écouté.

}

Not to have listened.

¹ The words *do*, *did*, used to mark negation or interrogation, are not expressed in French.

§ 274. *Ne* is also used—without *pas* or *point*—with the following words :—

<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>aucun</i>	<i>no, not any.</i>	<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>nullement</i>	<i>not at all.</i>
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>aucunement</i>	<i>not at all.</i>	<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>nulle part</i>	<i>nowhere, not any- where.</i>
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>guère</i>	<i>hardly, but little.</i>	<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>personne</i>	<i>nobody, not any- body.</i>
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>jamais</i>	<i>never.</i>	<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>plus</i>	<i>no longer, no more.</i>
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>ni . . . ni . . .</i>	<i>} neither . . . nor . . .</i>	<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>que</i>	<i>only.</i>
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>ni . . . ne . . .</i>		<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>rien</i>	<i>nothing, not any- thing.</i>
<i>Ni</i> . . . <i>ni . . . ne . . .</i>			
<i>Ne</i> . . . <i>nul</i>	<i>no, not any.</i>		

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je ne le connais aucunement.</i>	<i>I do not know him at all.</i>
<i>Ce mot ne s'emploie guère.</i>	<i>That word is but little used.</i>
<i>Il ne fera jamais cela.</i>	<i>He will never do that.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons ni plumes ni encre.</i>	<i>We have neither pens nor ink.</i>
<i>Elle ne boit ni ne mange.</i>	<i>She neither drinks nor eats.</i>
<i>Ni lui ni moi ne le pensons.</i>	<i>Neither he nor I think so.</i>
<i>Je ne vois mon livre nulle part.</i>	<i>I do not see my book anywhere.</i>
<i>Vous ne trouverez personne.</i>	<i>You will not find anybody.</i>
<i>Sa famille ne demeure plus ici.</i>	<i>His family no longer lives here.</i>
<i>Il ne restera que trois jours.</i>	<i>He will only stay three days.</i>
<i>Je n'en sais rien.</i>	<i>I know nothing about it.</i>

Obs. 1. When the verb is in a compound tense, *aucun*, *nul*, and *personne* follow the past participle :

<i>Je n'avais averti personne.</i>	<i>I had not warned any one.</i>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------

Obs. 2. It is obvious that *aucun*, *nul*, *personne*, and *rien* should precede *ne* and the verb when they are used as subjects :

<i>Nul obstacle ne les arrête.</i>	<i>No obstacle stops them.</i>
<i>Personne n'est venu.</i>	<i>No one has come.</i>
<i>Rien ne l'amuse.</i>	<i>Nothing amuses him.</i>

§ 275. Notice that, when the verb governs one or more personal pronouns, *ne* always precedes :

<i>Il ne nous a pas parlé.</i>	<i>He did not speak to us.</i>
<i>Ne le leur donnez pas.</i>	<i>Do not give it them.</i>
<i>Vous ne les y auriez pas trouvés.</i>	<i>You would not have found them there.</i>

§ 276.

MODEL OF NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

NE PAS AIMER, *not to love.*

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(I do not love.)

Je n'aime pas.
 tu n'aimes pas.
 il n'aime pas.
 nous n'aimons pas.
 vous n'aimez pas.
 ils n'aiment pas.

IMPERFECT.

(I was not loving.)

Je n'aimais pas.
 tu n'aimais pas.
 il n'aimait pas.
 nous n'aimions pas.
 vous n'aimiez pas.
 ils n'aimaient pas.

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

(I did not love.)

Je n'aima pas.
 tu n'aimas pas.
 il n'aima pas.
 nous n'aimâmes pas.
 vous n'aimâtes pas.
 ils n'aimèrent pas.

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

(I shall not love.)

Je n'aimerai pas.
 tu n'aimeras pas.
 il n'aimera pas.
 nous n'aimerons pas.
 vous n'aimerez pas.
 ils n'aimeront pas.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(I have not loved.)

Je n'ai pas aimé.
 tu n'as pas aimé.
 il n'a pas aimé.
 nous n'avons pas aimé.
 vous n'avez pas aimé.
 ils n'ont pas aimé.

PLUPERFECT.

(I had not loved.)

Je n'avais pas aimé.
 tu n'avais pas aimé.
 il n'avait pas aimé.
 nous n'avions pas aimé.
 vous n'aviez pas aimé.
 ils n'avaient pas aimé.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(I had not loved.)

Je n'eus pas aimé.
 tu n'eus pas aimé.
 il n'ent pas aimé.
 nous n'eûmes pas aimé.
 vous n'eûtes pas aimé.
 ils n'eurent pas aimé.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall not have loved.)

Je n'aurai pas aimé.
 tu n'anras pas aimé.
 il n'aura pas aimé.
 nous n'aurons pas aimé.
 vous n'aurez pas aimé.
 ils n'auront pas aimé.

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(*I should not love.*)

Je n'aimerais pas.
tu n'aimerais pas.
il n'aimerait pas.
nous n'aimerions pas.
vous n'aimeriez pas.
ils n'aimeraient pas.

PAST.

(*I should not have loved.*)

Je n'aurais (or eusse) pas aimé.
tu n'aurais (or eusses) pas aimé.
il n'aurait (or eût) pas aimé.
nous n'aurions (or eussions) pas aimé.
vous n'auriez (or eussiez) pas aimé.
ils n'auraient (or eussent) pas aimé.

3. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT or FUTURE.

(*Do not love.*)

N'aime pas.
qu'il n'aime pas.
n'aimons pas.
n'aimez pas.
qu'ils n'aient pas.

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(*Have not loved.*)

N'aie pas aimé.
qu'il n'ait pas aimé.
n'ayons pas aimé.
n'ayez pas aimé.
qu'ils n'aient pas aimé.

4. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

(*That I may not love.*)

Que je n'aime pas.
que tu n'aimes pas.
qu'il n'aime pas.
que nous n'aimions pas.
que vous n'aimiez pas.
qu'ils n'aient pas.

PAST or PERFECT.

(*That I may not have loved.*)

Que je n'aie pas aimé.
que tu n'aies pas aimé.
qu'il n'ait pas aimé.
que nous n'ayons pas aimé.
que vous n'ayez pas aimé.
qu'ils n'aient pas aimé.

IMPERFECT.

(*That I might not love.*)

Que je n'aimasse pas.
que tu n'aimasses pas.
qu'il n'aimât pas.
que nous n'aimassions pas.
que vous n'aimassiez pas.
qu'ils n'aimassent pas.

PLUPERFECT.

(*That I might not have loved.*)

Que je n'eusse pas aimé.
que tu n'eusses pas aimé.
qu'il n'eût pas aimé.
que nous n'eussions pas aimé.
que vous n'eussiez pas aimé.
qu'ils n'eussent pas aimé.

5. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.		PAST or PERFECT.	
Ne pas aimer	} <i>Not to love.</i>	Ne pas avoir aimé	} <i>Not to have loved.</i>
or (<i>less frequently</i>)		or (<i>less frequently</i>)	
N'aimer pas		N'avoir pas aimé	

6. PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
N'aimant pas	<i>Not loving.</i>	N'ayant pas aimé	<i>Not having loved.</i>

I.—VERBS CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

§ 277. Verbs can be conjugated interrogatively in all their tenses, but in two moods only—the **Indicative** and **Conditional**.

§ 278. To conjugate a verb interrogatively, the pronoun-subject is placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses :

Écoutez-vous ?	Avez-vous	<i>Are you listening ?</i>	<i>Did you listen ?</i>
écouté ?			

Obs. 1. This rule applies to all personal pronouns, to the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, and to the indefinite pronoun *on* :

Est-ce commencé ?	Avait-on	<i>Is it begun ?</i>	<i>Had they finished ?</i>
fini ?			

Obs. 2. The pronoun-subject is always joined to the finite verb which precedes by a hyphen.

Obs. 3. If the first person singular of the Present Indicative ends with an *e* mute, this *e* mute is changed into *é* : *Aimé-je ? Am I loving ?*

The final *e* mute of the auxiliary in the first person singular of the Past Conditional (second form) is likewise changed into *é* : *Eussé-je aimé ? Should I have loved ?*

Obs. 4. Whenever the third person singular ends with a vowel (*e* in the Present Indicative of the first conjugation and of a few irregular verbs of the second, *a* in the Present Indicative of *aller* and *avoir*, the Preterite of the first conjugation and the Future of all verbs), the letter

t, preceded and followed by a hyphen, is inserted, for the sake of euphony, between the verb and the pronouns *il, elle, on* :

Aime-t-il ? A-t-elle ? Finira-t-on ? *Does he like ? Has she ? Will they finish ?*

[This *t* comes from the Latin termination of the third person singular, and was part of the verb in Old French : *il aimet.*]

§ 279. When the subject is neither a personal pronoun, nor *ce*, nor *on*, it generally precedes the verb, and one of the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, according to the gender and number of the subject, is placed after the verb in simple tenses, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses :

Votre frère arrivera-t-il ce soir ? *Will your brother arrive this evening ?*
La guerre a-t-elle commencé ? *Has the war begun ?*

Obs. If the sentence is introduced by the interrogative pronoun *que*, the subject, however, follows the verb in simple tenses, and the Past Participle in compound tenses :

Que dira Qu'a dit } son père ? *What will What did } his father say ?*

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 22 and 23.)

§ 280. Questions may also be introduced by *est-ce que*, in which case the subject, whatever it may be, always precedes the verb in simple tenses, and the auxiliary in compound tenses :

Est-ce que votre frère arrivera ce soir ? *Will your brother arrive this evening ?*
Est-ce que la guerre a commencé ? *Has the war begun ?*
Est-ce qu'on chantera ? *Will they sing ?*

Obs. *Est-ce que* is especially used—

(1) To express surprise or doubt :

Est-ce qu'il a vraiment quitté ? *Has he really left ?*

¹ The above observations apply to all cases in which the order is inverted (in parenthetical clauses, exclamations, etc.):

"Adieu," dit-il. *"Farewell," said he.*
Puisse-t-il réussir ! *May he succeed !*
Prenez garde ! *Notice also* *Puissé-je !* *may I be able !* *dussé-je !* *even though I should !*

(2) To avoid hard sounds, chiefly with the first person singular of the Present Indicative :

Est-ce que je prends ? (instead of <i>prends-je ?</i>)	<i>Am I taking ?</i>
Est-ce que je réponds ? (instead of <i>réponds-je ?</i>)	<i>Am I answering ?</i>

This is notably the case when this first person is a monosyllable, but the following are exceptions :

Ai-je ? Dis-je ? Dois-je ?	<i>Have I ? Do I say ? Must I ?</i>
Fais-je ?	<i>Am I doing ?</i>
Puis-je ? Sais-je ? Suis-je ?	<i>Can I ? (or may I ?) Do I know ? Am I ?</i>
Vais-je ? Vois-je ?	<i>Am I going ? Do I see ?</i>

§ 281. MODEL OF INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

AIMÉ-JE ? *am I loving ?*

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT. (<i>Am I loving ?</i>)	PAST INDEFINITE. (<i>Have I loved ?</i>)
Aimé-je ?	Ai-je aimé ?
aimes-tu ?	as-tu aimé ?
aime-t-il ?	a-t-il aimé ?
aimons-nous ?	avons-nous aimé ?
aimez-vous ?	avez-vous aimé ?
aiment-ils ?	ont-ils aimé ?
IMPERFECT. (<i>Was I loving ?</i>)	PLUPERFECT. (<i>Had I loved ?</i>)
Aimais-je ?	Avais-je aimé ?
aimais-tu ?	avais-tu aimé ?
aimait-il ?	avait-il aimé ?
aimions-nous ?	avions-nous aimé ?
aimiez-vous ?	aviez-vous aimé ?
aimaient-ils ?	avaient-ils aimé ?
PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE. (<i>Did I love ?</i>)	PAST ANTERIOR. (<i>Had I loved ?</i>)
Aimai-je ?	Eus-je aimé ?
aimas-tu ?	eus-tu aimé ?
aima-t-il ?	eut-il aimé ?
aimâmes-nous ?	eûmes-nous aimé ?
aimâtes-vous ?	eûtes-vous aimé ?
aimèrent-ils ?	eurent-ils aimé ?

INDICATIVE—*continued*.

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

(Shall I love?)

Aimerai-je ?
 aimeras-tu ?
 aimera-t-il ?
 aimerons-nous ?
 aimerez-vous ?
 aimeront-ils ?

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE PERFECT.

(Shall I have loved?)

Aurai-je aimé ?
 auras-tu aimé ?
 aura-t-il aimé ?
 aurons-nous aimé ?
 aurez-vous aimé ?
 auront-ils aimé ?

2. CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

(Should I love?)

Aimerais-je ?
 aimerais-tu ?
 aimerait-il ?
 aimerions-nous ?
 aimeriez-vous ?
 aimeraient-ils ?

PAST.

(Should I have loved?)

Aurais-je (or eussé-je) aimé ?
 aurais-tu (or eusses-tu) aimé ?
 aurait-il (or eût-il) aimé ?
 aurions-nous (or eussions-nous) aimé ?
 auriez-vous (or eussiez-vous) aimé ?
 auraient-ils (or eussent-ils) aimé ?

J.—VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY-INTERROGATIVELY.

§ 282. A verb is conjugated negatively-interrogatively by placing *ne* before its interrogative form, and *pas* or *point* after the pronoun-subject :

N'écoute-t-il pas ? N'a-t-il
 pas écouté ?

Does he not listen ? Has he not listened ?

La guerre n'a-t-elle pas
 commencé ?

Has not the war begun ?

Obs. 1. In questions introduced by *est-ce que*, the place of the two parts of the negative is the same as if there was no interrogation :

Est-ce qu'il n'écoute pas ?

Does he not listen ?

Est-ce qu'il n'a pas écouté ?

Has he not listened ?

Est-ce que la guerre n'a
 pas commencé ?

Has not the war begun ?

Obs. 2. Notice the use of *n'est-ce pas* ?

Il écoute, n'est-ce pas ?

He listens, does he not ?

Vous écouterez, n'est-ce pas ?

You will listen, won't you ?

Elle a écouté, n'est-ce pas ?

She listened, did she not ?

Ils n'avaient pas écouté, n'est
 ce pas ?

They had not listened, had they ?

§ 283. MODEL OF NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

N'AIMÉ-JE PAS? *am I not loving?*

1. INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

(Am I not loving?)

N'aimé-je pas?
 n'aimes-tu pas?
 n'aime-t-il pas?
 n'aimons-nous pas?
 n'aimez-vous pas?
 n'aiment-ils pas?

IMPERFECT.

(Was I not loving?)

N'aimais-je pas?
 n'aimais-tu pas?
 n'aimait-il pas?
 n'aimions-nous pas?
 n'aimiez-vous pas?
 n'aimaient-ils pas?

PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.

(Did I not love?)

N'aimai-je pas?
 n'aimas-tu pas?
 n'aima-t-il pas?
 n'aimâmes-nous pas?
 n'aimâtes-vous pas?
 n'aimèrent-ils pas?

FUTURE PRESENT or FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

(Shall I not love?)

N'aimerai-je pas?
 n'aimeras-tu pas?
 n'aimera-t-il pas?
 n'aimerons-nous pas?
 n'aimerez-vous pas?
 n'aimeront-ils pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

(Have I not loved?)

N'ai-je pas aimé?
 n'as-tu pas aimé?
 n'a-t-il pas aimé?
 n'avons-nous pas aimé?
 n'avez-vous pas aimé?
 n'ont-ils pas aimé?

PLUPERFECT.

(Had I not loved?)

N'avais-je pas aimé?
 n'avais-tu pas aimé?
 n'avait-il pas aimé?
 n'avions-nous pas aimé?
 n'aviez-vous pas aimé?
 n'avaient-ils pas aimé?

PAST ANTERIOR.

(Had I not loved?)

N'eus-je pas aimé?
 n'eus-tu pas aimé?
 n'eut-il pas aimé?
 n'eûmes-nous pas aimé?
 n'eûtes-vous pas aimé?
 n'eurent-ils pas aimé?

FUTURE PAST or FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(Shall I not have loved?)

N'aurai-je pas aimé?
 n'auras-tu pas aimé?
 n'aura-t-il pas aimé?
 n'aurons-nous pas aimé?
 n'aurez-vous pas aimé?
 n'auront-ils pas aimé?

2. CONDITIONAL

PRESENT.

(Should I not love?)

N'aimerais-je pas?
 n'aimerais-tu pas?
 n'aimerait-il pas?
 n'aimerions-nous pas?
 n'aimeriez-vous pas?
 n'aimeraient-ils pas?

PAST.

(Should I not have loved?)

N'aurais-je (or n'eussé-je)	} pas aimé?
n'aurais-tu (or n'eusses-tu)	
n'aurait-il (or n'eût-il)	
n'aurions-nous (or n'eussions-nous)	
n'auriez-vous (or n'eussiez-vous)	
n'auraient-ils (or n'eussent-ils)	

§ 284. Passive and reflexive verbs may also be conjugated—

NEGATIVELY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Je ne suis pas aimé. | <i>I am not loved.</i> |
| Elle n'aurait pas été aimée. | <i>She would not have been loved.</i> |
| Que nous n'eussions pas été aimés, etc. | <i>That we might not have been loved, etc.</i> |
| (b) Il ne s'amusait pas. | <i>He was not amusing himself.</i> |
| Vous ne vous étiez pas amusés. | <i>You had not amused yourselves.</i> |
| Nous ne nous serions pas amusés, etc. | <i>We should not have amused ourselves, etc.</i> |

INTERROGATIVELY.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| (a) Sont-elles aimées? | <i>Are they loved?</i> |
| Avons-nous été aimés? | <i>Have we been loved?</i> |
| Auront-ils été aimés? etc. | <i>Will they have been loved?</i> |
| (b) S'amusera-t-il? | <i>Will he amuse himself?</i> |
| Nous sommes-nous amusés? | <i>Have we amused ourselves?</i> |
| Vous seriez-vous amusés? etc. | <i>Would you have amused yourselves? etc.</i> |

NEGATIVELY-INTERROGATIVELY.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (a) N'étais-je pas aimé? | <i>Was I not loved?</i> |
| N'avez-vous pas été aimés? | <i>Have you not been loved?</i> |
| Ne seront-elles pas aimées? etc. | <i>Will they not be loved? etc.</i> |
| (b) Ne s'amusent-ils pas? | <i>Do they not amuse themselves?</i> |
| Ne nous étions-nous pas amusés? | <i>Had we not amused ourselves?</i> |
| Ne se seraient-ils pas amusés? etc. | <i>Would they not have amused themselves? etc.</i> |

K.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

I.—Verbs in *-CER*.

§ 285. In all verbs in *-CER* the *c* takes a cedilla before *a* and *o*, so as to retain its soft sound throughout the whole conjugation.

TRACER, *to trace*.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE. nous traçons.	3. PAST DEFINITE or PRÉTERITE. Je traçai. tu traças. il traça. nous traçâmes. vous traçâtes.	5. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je traçasse. que tu traçasses. qu'il traçât. que nous traçassions. que vous traçassiez. qu'ils traçassent.
2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. Je traçais. tu traçais. il traçait. ils traçaient.	4. IMPERATIVE. traçons.	6. PRESENT PARTICIPLE. Traçant.

Conjugate thus—

Annoncer	<i>to announce.</i>
Dénoncer	<i>to denounce.</i>
Énoncer	<i>to state, to declare.</i>
Prononcer	<i>to pronounce.</i>
Avancer	<i>to advance.</i>
Devancer	<i>to precede, to out-run.</i>
Bercer	<i>to rock, to lull.</i>
Commencer	<i>to begin.</i>
Courroucer	<i>to incense.</i>

Effacer	<i>to efface.</i>
Exaucer	<i>to hear favourably, to hearken to.</i>
Exercer	<i>to exercise.</i>
Forcer	<i>to force.</i>
Glacer	<i>to freeze.</i>
Lancer	<i>to hurl.</i>
Menacer	<i>to threaten.</i>
Percer	<i>to pierce.</i>
Placer	<i>to place, etc.</i>

II.—Verbs in *-ELER* and *-ETER*.

§ 286. Most verbs in *-ELER* and *-ETER* double the *l* and *t* before an *e* mute, *i.e.* before *e*, *es*, *ent*.¹

APPELER, *to call.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE. J'appelle. tu appelles. il appelle. ils appellent.	3. CONDITIONAL PRESENT. J'appellerais. tu appellerais. il appellerait. nous appellerions. vous appelleriez. ils appelleraient.
2. FUTURE PRESENT. J'appellerai. tu appelleras. il appellera. nous appellerons. vous appellerez. ils appelleront.	4. IMPERATIVE. Appelle. qu'il appelle. qu'ils appellent.
5. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. Que j'appelle. que tu appelles. qu'il appelle. qu'ils appellent.	

JETER, *to throw.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE. Je jette. tu jettes. il jette. ils jettent.	3. CONDITIONAL PRESENT. Je jetterais. tu jetterais. il jetterait. nous jetterions. vous jetteriez. ils jetteraient.
2. FUTURE PRESENT. Je jetterai. tu jetteras. il jettera. nous jetterons. vous jetterez. ils jetteront.	4. IMPERATIVE. Jette. qu'il jette. qu'ils jettent.
5. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. Que je jette. que tu jettes. qu'il jette. qu'ils jettent.	

EXCEPTIONS.

The following verbs take a grave accent before an *e* mute instead of doubling the *l* or *t*—

(1) **Bourreler** *to goad, to torment.*
Celer *to conceal.*

Congeler *to congeal.*
Déceler *to disclose.*

[Continued on next page.]

¹ This change is due to the influence of the tonic accent, which falls on the same syllable in French as in Latin (see § 8): *appèllo, j'appèlle; appellâmus, nous appelôns.*

Dégeler	to thaw.	Harceler	to harass.
Démanteler	to dismantle.	Marteler	to hammer; to worry.
Écarteler	to quarter.	Modeler	to model, to mould.
Geler	to freeze.	Peler	to peel.
(2) Acheter	to buy.	Décolleter	to bare the neck.
Becqueter	to peck.	Étiqueter	to label, to ticket.
Colleter	to collar, to take by the collar.	Racheter	to redeem, to buy again.

EXAMPLES.—Je bourrèle, il cèlera, achète, etc.

Obs. The following may either double the *l* or *t*, or take a grave accent—

[a] Botteler	to bottle, to bind up (hay, etc.).	Ciseler	to chisel.
[b] Banqueter	to banquet.	Épousseter	to dust.
Breveter	to patent.	Trompeter	to trumpet; to scream (of the eagle).
Crocheter	to pick (a lock).		

III.—Other Verbs with an *e* mute in the Penultimate Syllable.

§ 287. Other verbs with an *e* mute in the penultimate syllable change *e* into *è* before a mute syllable, *i.e.* a syllable ending in *-e*, *-es*, *-ent*.

LEVER, *to raise*.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.	2. FUTURE PRESENT.	3. CONDITIONAL PRESENT.
Je lève.	Je lèverai.	Je lèverais.
tu lèves.	tu lèveras.	tu lèverais.
il lève.	il lèvera.	il lèverait.
	nous lèverons.	nous lèverions.
	vous lèverez.	vous lèveriez.
ils lèvent.	ils lèveront.	ils lèveraient.
4. IMPERATIVE.	5. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Lève.	Que je lève.	
qu'il lève.	que tu lèves.	
	qu'il lève.	
qu'ils lèvent.	qu'ils lèvent.	

Conjugate thus—

Achever	<i>to complete.</i>
Grever	<i>to burden, to encumber.</i>
Mener	<i>to lead, to bring.</i>
Amener	<i>to bring.</i>
Ramener	<i>to bring back.</i>

Emmener	<i>to take away.</i>
Peser	<i>to weigh.</i>
Soupeser	<i>to weigh (in the hand).</i>
Semer	<i>to sow.</i>
Parsemer	<i>to strew, etc.</i>

IV.—Verbs with an *é* in the Penultimate Syllable.

§ 288. Verbs with an *é* in the penultimate syllable change it into *è* before a mute syllable, *i.e.* before a syllable ending in *-e, -es, -ent*.

EXCEPTIONS.—They retain, however, the acute accent in the *Future* and *Conditional Present*, in which the *e* mute, being placed between an *é* and an accented syllable, is hardly pronounced at all.

CÉDER, *to yield.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.	2. IMPERATIVE.	3. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Je cède.		Que je cède.
tu cèdes.	cède.	que tu cèdes.
il cède.	qu'il cède.	qu'il cède.
ils cèdent.	qu'ils cèdent.	qu'ils cèdent.

But—je céderai, tu céderas, etc. ; je céderais, tu céderais, etc.

Obs. Verbs in *-éer* retain the acute accent throughout, even before *e, es, ent* ; as, je crée, tu crées, ils créent, je créerai, etc., from *créer* (= *to create*).

In the feminine of their Past Participle there are three *e*'s following, two with an acute accent and the third mute : *créée*.

Conjugate like *céder*—

Accélérer	<i>to accelerate.</i>
Altérer	<i>to alter.</i>
Différer	<i>to defer ; to differ.</i>
Espérer	<i>to hope.</i>
Désespérer	<i>to despair.</i>
Exagérer	<i>to exaggerate.</i>
Exaspérer	<i>to exasperate.</i>
Inquiéter	<i>to disquiet.</i>
Insérer	<i>to insert.</i>

Lacérer	<i>to lacerate.</i>
Pénétrer	<i>to penetrate.</i>
Posséder	<i>to possess.</i>
Régler	<i>to regulate.</i>
Répéter	<i>to repeat.</i>
Révéler	<i>to reveal.</i>
Suggerer	<i>to suggest.</i>
Tolérer	<i>to tolerate.</i>
Vénérer	<i>to venerate, etc.</i>

V.—Verbs in *-GER*.

§ 289. Verbs in *-GER* insert an *e* mute before *a* and *o*, so as to retain the soft sound of the *g* throughout the whole conjugation.

BOUGER, *to stir*.

<p>1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.</p> <p>nous bougeons.</p>	<p>3. PAST DEFINITE or PRETERITE.</p> <p>Je bougeai. tu bougeas. il bougea. nous bougeâmes. vous bougeâtes.</p>	<p>5. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.</p> <p>Que je bougeasse. que tu bougeasses. qu'il bougeât. que nous bougeassions. que vous bougeassiez. qu'ils bougeassent.</p>
<p>2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.</p> <p>Je bougeais. tu bougeais. il bougeait. ils bougeaient.</p>	<p>4. IMPERATIVE.</p> <p>bougeons.</p>	<p>6. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.</p> <p>Bougeant.</p>

Conjugate thus—

Affliger *to afflict.*
Alléger *to lighten.*
Changer *to change.*
Charger *to load.*
Corriger *to correct.*
Encourager *to encourage.*
Forger *to forge.*
Interroger *to question.*
Juger *to judge.*

Manger *to eat.*
Mélanger *to mix.*
Négliger *to neglect.*
Obliger *to oblige.*
Plonger *to plunge.*
Songer *to think.*
Soulager *to relieve.*
Venger *to avenge.*
Voyager *to travel, etc.*

VI.—Verbs in *-IER*.

§ 290. Verbs in *-ier* are naturally spelt with two *i*'s in every person the ending of which begins with an *i*, that is, in the first and second persons plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive :

ÉTUDIER, *to study.*

1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	2. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Nous étudiiions.	Que nous étudiiions.
vous étudiiiez.	que vous étudiiiez.

Conjugate thus—

Apprécier *to appreciate.*

Certifier *to certify.*

Châtier *to chastise.*

Confier *to intrust.*

Copier *to copy.*

Crier *to cry, to scream.*

Expier *to expiate.*

Lier *to tie.*

Manier *to handle.*

Mendier *to beg.*

Négocier *to negotiate.*

Nier *to deny*

Parier *to bet.*

Plier *to fold.*

Prier *to pray.*

Publier *to publish.*

Remercier *to thank.*

Scier *to saw, etc.*

VII.—Verbs in *-UER*.

§ 291. Verbs in *-uer*, in which the *u* is pronounced separately or forms with an *o* the compound vowel *ou*, take, according to some grammarians, a diaeresis over the *i* in the first and second persons plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive.

CONTRIBUER, *to contribute.*

JOUER, *to play.*

1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	2. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Nous contribuions.	Que nous contribuions.
vous contribuiez.	que vous contribuiez.

1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	2. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.
Nous jouions.	Que nous jouions.
vous jouiez.	que vous jouiez.

§ 292. The verb *arguer*, *to argue*, takes, besides, a diaeresis over the *e* mute following the *u*, to show that the *u* is to be pronounced separately :

j'arguë, tu arguës, il arguë, ils arguënt, j'arguërai, etc.

VIII.—Verbs in *-YER*.

✓ § 293. Verbs in *-yer* change, as a rule, the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, *i.e.* before *e*, *es*, *ent*.

ABOYER, *to bark.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE. J'aboie. tu aboies. il aboie. ils aboient.	2. FUTURE PRESENT. J'aboierai. tu aboieras. il aboiera. nous aboierons. vous aboierez. ils aboieront.	3. CONDITIONAL PRESENT. J'aboierais. tu aboierais. il aboierait. nous aboierions. vous aboieriez. ils aboieraient.
4. IMPERATIVE. Aboie. qu'il aboie. qu'ils aboient.	5. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. Que j'aboie. que tu aboies. qu'il aboie. qu'ils aboient.	

EXCEPTIONS.

✓ (1) Verbs in *-ayer* may either change the *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, or preserve it throughout their conjugation : *je paie* or *je paye*, etc.

In the Future and Conditional they may besides contract *ye* or *ie* into *i* : *je paierai*, *je payerai*, or *je pairai*. This contracted form is chiefly used in poetry.

✓ (2) Verbs in *-eyer*, like *grasseyer*, *to lisp*, the only one in common use, keep the *y* throughout.

§ 294. In all verbs in *-yer* the *y* is naturally followed by an *i* in every person the ending of which begins with an *i*, that is, in the first and second persons plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive :

ESSAYER, *to try.*

1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. Nous essayions. vous essayiez.	2. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. Que nous essayions. que vous essayiez.
---	--

Conjugate according to the above rules—

Apitoyer	<i>to move to pity.</i>	Employer	<i>to employ.</i>
Appuyer	<i>to support, to back.</i>	Effrayer	<i>to frighten.</i>
Balayer	<i>to sweep.</i>	Ennuyer	<i>to weary.</i>
Bégayer	<i>to stammer.</i>	Louvoyer	<i>to manoeuvre.</i>
Broyer	<i>to crush, to pound.</i>	Nettoyer	<i>to clean.</i>
Choyer	<i>to pet.</i>	Ployer	<i>to bend.</i>
Côtoyer	<i>to coast.</i>	Rayer	<i>to streak, to strike out.</i>
Coudoyer	<i>to elbow.</i>	Rudoyer	<i>to treat roughly.</i>
Déployer	<i>to display.</i>	Tutoyer	<i>to thee-and-thou, etc.</i>

L.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

BÉNIR (L. *benedicere*), *to bless ; to consecrate.*

§ 295. **Bénir**, in the sense of *to bless*, is perfectly regular ; but when it means *to consecrate by a religious ceremony*, its Past Participle is **béni** :

Du pain **béni**. *Consecrated bread.* | De l'eau **bénite**. *Holy water.*

Obs. **Béni** was the only form in Old French (from L. *benedictum*, just as **dit** from L. *dictum*).

FLEURIR (L. *florere*), *to blossom ; to flourish.*

§ 296. **Fleurir**, in the sense of *to blossom*, is perfectly regular ; but when it means *to be prosperous, to flourish*, its Present Participle is **florissant** and its Imperfect Indicative **je florissais**, etc.

The regular form of the Imperfect may, however, be used figuratively in speaking of things.

Obs. 1. The forms **florissant**, **florissais**, come from the old verb **florir**.

Obs. 2. **Refleurir**, *to blossom again, to flourish again*, is conjugated like **fleurir**.

HAÏR (O.F. *hadir*, A.S. *hatian*), *to hate.*

§ 297. **Haïr** does not take the diaeresis in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative and in the second person singular of the Imperative : **je hais, tu hais, il hait, hais**.

The diaeresis, on the contrary, is preserved in the first two persons plural of the Preterite Indicative, and in the third person singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive, which have no circumflex accent ; **nous haïmes, vous haïtes, qu'il haït**.

§ 298. The following verbs are regular, but defective—

- | | |
|--|---|
| (1) Brouir (cf. Germ. brühen), <i>to blast, to blight</i> | } used in the Infinitive,
Past Participle, and
third persons. |
| (2) Chancier (L. canutire), <i>to get mouldy,</i> | |
| (3) Jaillir (L. jaculari), <i>to gush forth,</i> | |

Partir (L. partiri), in the sense of *to part, to divide*, is obsolete except in the expression *avoir maille à partir avec quelqu'un*, *to have a crow to pluck with some one*.

M.—REMARKS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BATTRE (L.L. *batere*), *to beat*.

§ 299. **Battre** loses one of the *t*'s of the stem in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative, and in the second person singular of the Imperative: *je bats, tu bats, il bat, bats*.

Obs. Notice that *se battre* means *to fight*.

Conjugate thus—

Abattre	<i>to throw down, to fell, to cast down.</i>	Rabattre	<i>to beat down, to abate.</i>
Combattre	<i>to fight, to combat.</i>	Rebattre	<i>to beat again, to say over and over again.</i>
Débattre	<i>to debate, to discuss.</i>		

ROMPRE (L. *rumpere*), *to break*.

§ 300. **Rompre** takes a *t* after the *p* in the third person singular of the Present Indicative: *il rompt*.

Conjugate thus—*corrompre, to corrupt; interrompre, to interrupt*.

Obs. This *t* comes regularly from the Latin *t* (*rumpit*), which is dropped in *vendre*, as it could not be pronounced after the *d* of the stem.

SOURDRE (L. *surgere*), *to gush forth*.

§ 301. **Sourdre** is regular, but has no Past Participle (hence no compound tenses), and is only used in the third persons.

N.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 302. It has been seen already (§§ 232-235) that there are some verbs—called *anomalous*—which do not form all their tenses according to the rules of tense-formation; but all other irregular verbs follow those

rules, and therefore all that is wanted in order to conjugate them is to know their Principal Parts.

I.—Mnemonical Notes on the Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs.

(Simple verbs only are mentioned, as a rule.)

§ 303. PRESENT INDICATIVE (Singular).

I. FIRST CONJUGATION:—There are only two really irregular verbs in the First Conjugation, **aller** and **envoyer**, and the former alone is irregular in the Present Indicative:

Je vais, tu vas, il va.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.—(1) **Fuir** is the only irregular verb of the Second Conjugation which ends in **-is** in the Present Indicative:

Je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit.¹

(2) **Courir** only adds **-s, -s, -t**, and **vêtir -s, -s, —**, to the stem of the Infinitive:

Je cours, tu cours, il court. | Je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt.

(3) **Cueillir, couvrir, offrir, ouvrir, souffrir**, add **-e, -es, -e**:

Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille. | J'offre, tu offres, il offre.
Je couvre, tu couvres, il couvre. | J'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre.
Je souffre, tu souffres, il souffre.

Notice also **saillir**, only used in the third person: **il saille**.

(4) **Dormir, mentir, partir, se repentir, sentir, servir, sortir**, drop the final stem-consonant:

Je dors, tu dors, il dort. | Je me repens, tu te repens, il se repent.
Je mens, tu mens, il ment. | Je sens, tu sens, il sent.
Je pars, tu pars, il part. | Je sers, tu sers, il sert.
Je sors, tu sors, il sort.

Notice also **bouillir**, which drops **-ill**:

Je bous, tu bous, il bout.

(5) **Acquérir** changes **é**—and **tenir, venir**, change **e**—into **ie**:

J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert. | Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient.
Je viens, tu viens, il vient.

(6) **Mourir** changes **ou** into **eu**:

Je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt.

¹ Notice the defective verb **gésir**: —, —, 'il git.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Notice especially that—

- (1) **Mouvoir, pouvoir, vouloir**, change *ou* into *eu* :

Je meus, tu meus, il meut. | Je peux (or je puis), tu peux, il peut.
Je veux, tu veux, il veut.

- (2) **Falloir, valoir**, change *ll* or *l* into *u* :

—, —, il faut ; je vau*x*, tu vau*x*, il vau*t*.

- (3) **Peux, veux, vau*x***, are the only instances in verbs of an *x* standing for an *s* (cf. cheval, cheva*ux*).

Obs. Je fau*x*, tu fau*x*, from faillir, are obsolete.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—(1) All irregular verbs in *-dre* (except *coudre, moudre, prendre*), all verbs in *-tre* without any exception, and *sivre* and *vivre*, drop the final stem-consonant :

Je crains (from <i>craindre</i>), tu crains, il craint, etc.	Je suis, tu suis, il suit.
Je parais (from <i>paraître</i>), tu parais, il paraît, etc.	Je vis, tu vis, il vit.

- (2) All have a *t* instead of a *d* in the third person singular except *coudre, moudre, prendre, vaincre* :

Il cou*d*, il mou*d*, il prend, il vainc.

- (3) All verbs not mentioned above add *-s, -s, -t* to the stem of the Infinitive.

§.304. PRETERITE OR PAST DEFINITE.

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.—No irregularity.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.—The only verbs which are irregular are—

- (1) **Acquérir, tenir, and venir**, with the contracted forms *j'acquis, j'e tins, je vins*.

- (2) **Courir and mourir**, which take a *u* instead of an *i* : *je courus, je mourus*.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.—(1) All preterites take a *u* except those of *asseoir, surseoir, voir* : *j'assis, je sursis, je vis*.

Notice that *pourvoir* makes *pourvus*, NOT *pourvis*.

- (2) The preterites of **mouvoir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, savoir**, and of course *voir*, are monosyllabic :

Je mus, il plut, je pus, je sus, je vis.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—(1) The following end in *-is* :—

[a] Contracted : *dire, faire, rire, suffire, mettre, prendre* :

Je dis, je fis, je ris, je suffis, je mis, je pris.

[b] Without contraction : all verbs in *-aindre, -eindre, -oindre* change *-ndre* into *-gnis* :

Craindre, je craignis; peindre, je peignis; joindre, je joignis, etc.

All verbs in *-uire* change *-uire* into *-uisis*; *coudre* changes *-dre* into *-sis*, and *écrire* changes *-re* into *-vis* :

Conduire, je conduisis; coudre, je cousis; écrire, j'écrivis.

Naitre changes *-itre*, and *vaincre* changes *-cre*, into *-quis* :

Je naquis; je vainquis.

Battre and *sivre* are regular : *je battis, je suivis* ; and *traire* has NO Preterite.

(2) The following end in *-us* :—

[a] Contracted : verbs in *-aitre* (except *naitre*) and *-oitre*, and *boire*, *conclure, croire, lire, plaie, taire* :

Connaitre, je connus; croître, je crûs, etc.; je bus, je conclus, je crus, je lus, je plus, je tus.

[b] Without contraction : *moudre, résoudre, vivre* :

Je moulus, je résolus, je vécus.

§ 305. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.—No irregularity.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.—All Present Participles are formed by adding *-ant* to the stem of the Infinitive without *-iss* : *partir, partant*.

Obs. *Fuir* changes *i* into *y* : *fuyant*, and *gésir* changes *é* into *i* : *gisant*.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.—All Present Participles are formed by adding *-ant* to the stem of the Infinitive, except *échoir, échéant; savoir, sachant; seoir, seyant (séant); asseoir, asseyant or assoyant; surseoir, sursoyant; voir, voyant*, and its compounds.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—(1) All verbs in *-aindre, -eindre, -oindre*, change *-ndre* into *-gnant* :

Craindre, craignant; peindre, peignant; joindre, joignant.

(2) All verbs in *-altre, -oitre*, change *-tre* into *-ssant* and drop the circumflex :

Connaître, connaissant; croître, croissant.

(3) All verbs in *-uire* add *-sant* to the stem of the Infinitive :

Conduire, conduisant; nuire, nuisant.

So *confire, dire* (*maudire* adds *-ssant* : *maudissant*), *faire, lire, plaire, suffire, taire* :

Confisant, disant, faisant, lisant, plaisant, suffisant, taisant.

Coudre drops the *d* before adding *-sant*, and *écrire* adds *-vant* :

Cousant, écrivant.

(4) Verbs in *-soudre* change *-oudre* into *-olvant* :

Absoudre, absolvant; dissoudre, dissolvant; résoudre, résolvant.

(5) *Bruire, croire, traire*, change *i* into *y* before adding *-ant* :

Bruyant, croyant, trayant.

Obs. *Bruissant* is generally used instead of *bruyant*.

(6) *Boire* makes *buvant*; *moudre, mouler*; *prendre, prenant*; and *vaincre, vainquant*.

§ 306.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.—No irregularity.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.—(1) Four Past Participles end in *-ert* : *couvrir, couvert; offrir, offert; ouvrir, ouvert; souffrir, souffert*.

(2) One ends in *-ort* : *mourir, mort*.

(3) One ends in *-is* : *acquérir, acquis*.

(4) Four end in *-u* : *courir, couru; tenir, tenu; venir, venu; vêtir, vêtu*.

All others are regular.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.—(1) One ends in *-is* : *seoir, sis* (*assis, rassis, sursis*).

(2) All others end in *-u*, and the following are monosyllabic :

Mouvoir, mû; pleuvoir, plu; pouvoir, pu; savoir, su; voir, vu.

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—(1) Ending in -é: *naitre*, né.

(2) Ending in -i: *luire*, lui; *nuire*, lui; *rire*, ri; *suffire*, suffi; *suivre*, suivi.

(3) Ending in -is: *mettre*, mis; *prendre*, pris.

(4) Ending in -it: verbs in -uire (except *luire* and *nuire*), as *conduire* conduit, and *braire*, *bruire*, *confire*, *dire*, *écrire*, *faire*, *frire*, *traire*:

Brait, *bruit*, *confit*, *dit*, *écrit*, *fait*, *frit*, *trait*.

(5) Ending in -nt: all verbs in -aindre, -eindre, -oindre:

• *Craindre*, *craint*; *peindre*, *peint*; *joindre*, *joint*, etc.

(6) Ending in -os: *clore*, clos.

(7) Ending in u:—

[a] Contracted: *boire*, *conclure*, *exclure*, *connaître*, *croire*, *croître*, *lire*, *paître*, *plaire*, *taire*:

Bu, *conclu*, *exclu*, *connu*, *cru*, *crû*, *lu*, *pu*, *plu*, *tu*.

[b] Without contraction: *coudre*, *moudre*, *résoudre*, *vaincre*, *vivre*:

Cousu, *moulu*, *résolu*, *vaincu*, *vécu*.

(8) Ending in -us: *absoudre*, *dissoudre*, *résoudre*, *inclure*, *reclure*:

Absous, *dissous*, *résous* (used in a physical sense), *inclus*, *reclus*.

§ 307. Notice that—

(1) *Saillir* has no first or second person.

(2) *Déchoir* has no Present Participle, and *échoir* is chiefly used in the third persons.

(3) *Falloir* and *pleuvoir*, which are impersonal, have no Imperative, and *falloir* has no Present Participle.

(4) *Pouvoir* has no Imperative.

(5) *Absoudre*, *dissoudre*, *paître*, and *traire*, have no Preterite, and consequently no Imperfect Subjunctive.

II.—First Conjugation.

§ 308.

ALLER (L. *adnare*), *to go*.

Allant (whence IMP. IND. j'allais), allé.					
IND.	{ je vais	nous allons,	}	whence	{ va,
PRES.	{ tu vas	vous allez,		IMPERAT.	{ allons,
	{ il va	ils vont.			{ allez.
PRET.	j'allai, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que j'allasse, etc.
FUT.	j'irai, etc.			COND.	j'irais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que j'aïlle	que tu aïlles			qu'il aïlle,
PRES.	{ que nous aïllions	que vous aïlliez			qu'ils aïllent.

Obs. 1. The compound tenses are formed with *être*, and consequently the Past Participle always agrees with the subject: *elle est allée, ils sont allés*.

Obs. 2. The second person singular of the Imperative, *va*, takes an *s* before *en* and *y* (see § 232, note).

Obs. 3. The singular and the third person plural of the Present Indicative come from L. *vadere*, the Future and Conditional from L. *ire*.

Obs. 4. A few tenses of *s'en aller*, *to go away*, are subjoined :

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	je m'en vais	tu t'en vas	il s'en va,
PLUR.	nous nous en allons	vous vous en allez	ils s'en vont.

PAST INDEFINITE (*Affirmatively*).

SING.	PLUR.
je m'en suis allé	nous nous en sommes allés,
tu t'en es allé	vous vous en êtes allés,
il s'en est allé	ils s'en sont allés.

(*Negatively*.)

je ne m'en suis pas allé, etc. nous ne nous en sommes pas allés etc.

(*Interrogatively*.)

m'en suis-je allé ? etc.

nous en sommes-nous allés ? etc.

(Interrogatively-Negatively.)

SING.

ne m'en suis-je pas allé? *etc.*

PLUR.

ne nous en sommes-nous pas allés? *etc.*

IMPERATIVE.

(Affirmat.) va-t'en ¹

allons-nous-en

allez-vous-en.

(Negative.) ne t'en va pas

ne nous en allons pas

ne vous en allez pas.

§ 309. ENVOYER (L.L. inde viare), to send.

Envoyer is only irregular in the Future and Conditional :

FUT. j'enverrai, *etc.*

COND. j'enverrais, *etc.*

Conjugate thus—renvoyer, to send back, to dismiss, to postpone.

Obs. Notice envoyer chercher, to send for.

III.—Second Conjugation.

§ 310. ACQUÉRIR (L. acquirere,) to acquire.

Acquéreur (whence IMP. IND. j'acquerrais), acquis.

IND.	j'acquiers	nous acquérons,		whence	acquiers,
PRES.	tu acquiers	vous acquérez,		IMPERAT.	acquérons,
	il acquiert	ils acquièrent.			acquérez.
PRET.	j'acquis, <i>etc.</i>			IMP. SUBJ.	que j'acquiesse, <i>etc.</i>
FUT.	j'acquerrai, <i>etc.</i>			COND.	j'acquerrais, <i>etc.</i>
SUBJ.	que j'acquière	que tu acquières			qu'il acquière,
PRES.	que nous acquérions	que vous acquériez			qu'ils acquièrent.

Conjugate thus—

Conquérir to conquer.

Reconquérir to reconquer.

S'enquérir to inquire.

Requérir to require.

Obs. Querir (or quérir), to fetch (L. quaerere), is only used in the Infinitive, after the verbs aller, envoyer, venir, and is getting obsolete.

¹ Notice the apostrophe in va-t'en, the t standing instead of te.

§ 315.

CUEILLIR (L. colligere), *to gather*.

Cueillant (whence IMP. IND. je cueillais), cueilli.

IND.	{ je cueille	nous cueillons,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ cueille, cueillons, cueillez.
PRES.	{ tu cueilles	vous cueillez,			
	{ il cueille	ils cueillent.			
PRET.	je cueillis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je cueillisse, etc.
FUT.	je cueillerai, etc.			COND.	je cueillerais.
SUBJ.	{ que je cueille	que tu cueilles			qu'il cueille,
PRES.	{ que nous cueillions	que vous cueilliez			qu'ils cueillent.

Conjugate thus—*accueillir*, *to welcome, to receive*; *recueillir*, *to reap, to collect*.

Obs. *Se recueillir*¹ means *to collect one's thoughts, to meditate*.

§ 316.

DORMIR (L. dormire), *to sleep*.

Dormant (whence IMP. IND. je dormais), dormi.

IND.	{ je dors	nous dormons,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ dors, dormons, dormez.
PRES.	{ tu dors	vous dormez,			
	{ il dort	ils dorment.			
PRET.	je dormis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je dormisse, etc.
FUT.	je dormirai, etc.			COND.	je dormirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je dorme	que tu dormes			qu'il dorme,
PRES.	{ que nous dormions	que vous dormiez			qu'ils dorment.

Conjugate thus—

E Endormir	<i>to lull to sleep.</i>	Redormir	<i>to sleep again.</i>
S'endormir ¹	<i>to fall asleep.</i>	Rendormir	<i>to lull to sleep again.</i>
Se rendormir, ¹ <i>to fall asleep again.</i>			

¹ Bear in mind that all reflexive verbs form their compound tenses with *être*.

§ 317.

FAILLIR (L. fallere), to fail.

Faillant (whence IMP. IND. je faillais), failli.

IND.	{ je faux	nous faillons,	
PRES.	{ tu faux	vous faillez,	NO IMPERATIVE.
	{ il faut	ils faillent.	
PRET.	je faillis, etc.		IMP. SUBJ. que je faillisse, etc.
FUT.	je faudrai, etc., or je faillirai, etc.		COND. je foudrais, etc., or je faillirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je faille	que tu failles	qu'il faille,
PRES.	{ que nous faillions	que vous failliez	qu'ils faillent.

Obs. 1. The first and second persons of the singular of the Present Indicative are obsolete, and the irregular form of the Future and Conditional, the Present Subjunctive and the Present Participle, are seldom used.

Obs. 2. *Faillir* is generally conjugated like *finir*, when it means to become bankrupt.

Obs. 3. *Défaillir*, to fail, to faint, is conjugated like *faillir*, but has no Present Indicative singular, although the forms *je défaus*, *tu défaus*, *il défaut*, have been sometimes used. Its Future and Conditional are becoming obsolete, and its Present Participle is chiefly used adjectively.

§ 318.

FÉRIR (L. ferire), to strike.

Férir is only used in the Present Infinitive, in the expression *sans coup férir* (=without striking a blow), and in the Past Participle, *féru* (=struck, smitten).

§ 319.

FUIR (L. fugere), to flee, to shun.

Fuyant (whence IMP. IND. je fuyais), fui.

IND.	{ je fuis	nous fuyons,			{ fuis,
PRES.	{ tu fuis	vous fuyez,		whence	{ fuyons,
	{ il fuit	ils fuient.		IMPERAT.	{ fuyez.
PRET.	je fuis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je fusse, etc.
FUT.	je fuirai, etc.			COND.	je fuirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je fuie	que tu fuies			qu'il fuie,
PRES.	{ que nous fuyions	que vous fuyiez			qu'ils fuient.

Conjugate thus—*s'enfuir*, to run away, but bear in mind that all reflexive verbs form their compound tenses with *être*.

§ 320. GÉSIR (L. jacere), *to lie, to lie down.*

Gisant (whence IMP. IND. je gisais).

IND.	{ (none)	nous gisons,	Notice ci-git , <i>here lies</i> (used in epitaphs).
PRES.	{ (none)	vous gisez,	
	{ il git	ils gisent.	

Obs. No other form is in use. The *s* is pronounced like *ss* except in the Infinitive.

§ 321. ISSIR (L. exire), *to descend from.*

Issir is only used in the Past Participle *issu*, either without auxiliary or with *être*.

§ 322. MENTIR (L. mentiri), *to lie, to utter falsehoods.*

Mentant (whence IMP. IND. je mentais), menti.

IND.	{ je mens	nous mentons,	whence IMPERAT.	{ mens,
PRES.	{ tu mens	vous mentez,		{ mentons,
	{ il ment	ils mentent.		{ mentez.
PRET.	je mentis, etc.		IMP. SUBJ.	que je mentisse, etc.
FUT.	je mentirai, etc.		COND.	je mentirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je mente	que tu mentes		qu'il mente,
PRES.	{ que nous mention	que vous mentiez		qu'ils mentent.

Conjugate thus—*démentir*, *to give the lie*.

§ 323. MOURIR (L.L. moriri, for mori), *to die.*

Mourant (whence IMP. IND. je mourais), mort.

IND.	{ je meurs	nous mourons,	whence IMPERAT.	{ meurs,
PRES.	{ tu meurs	vous mourez,		{ mourons,
	{ il meurt	ils meurent.		{ mourez.
PRET.	je mourus, etc.		IMP. SUBJ.	que je mourusse, etc.
FUT.	je mourrai, etc.		COND.	je mourrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je meure	que tu meures		qu'il meure,
PRES.	{ que nous mourions	que vous mouriez		qu'ils meurent.

Obs. 1. *Mourir* is conjugated with *être*.

Obs. 2. *Se mourir*, *to be at the point of death*, is only used in the Present Infinitive, and Present and Imperfect Indicative.

§ 324. OFFRIR (L. offere), to offer.

Offrant, offert, j'offre, j'offris.

Offrir and its compound mésoffrir (=to underbid) are conjugated like couvrir (see § 314).

see in Cithé

§ 325. OUIR (L. audire), to hear.

Oyant (whence IMP. IND. j'oyais), oui.

IND.	{	j'ois	nous oyons,	}	whence	{	(none),
PRES.		tu ois	vous oyez,		IMPERAT.		oyons,
		il oit	ils oient.				oyez.
PRET.		j'ouïs, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que j'ouïsse, etc.
FUT.		j'oirai, etc. or j'orrai, etc.			COND.		j'oirais, etc., or j'orrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que j'oise or que j'oye					qu'il oie,
PRES.		que nous oyions					qu'ils oient.

Ouir is obsolete except in the Infinitive, Past Participle, and compound tenses. It is generally followed by *dire*: j'ai ouï dire que . . ., I have heard that . . .

§ 326. OUVRIR (L. aperire ?), to open.

Ouvrant, ouvert, j'ouvre, j'ouvris.

Ouvrir, and its compounds entr'ouvrir, to half-open, rouvrir, to reopen, are conjugated like couvrir (see § 314).

§ 327. PARTIR (L. partiri), to set out, to go away.

Partant, parti, je pars, je partis.

Partir, and its compound repartir, to set out again, are conjugated like mentir (see § 322), except that they take the auxiliary *être* (see § 260).

Obs. 1. Départir, to distribute, to dispense, and repartir, to reply, are conjugated like partir, but take *avoir* in their compound tenses. Se départir, to desist, to deviate, being reflexive, is of course conjugated with *être*.

Obs. 2. Répartir, to distribute, to divide, is regular.

§ 328. QUÉRIR (see § 310, Obs.).

§ 329. SE REPENTIR (re and O.F. pentir, L. poenitere), *to repent*.

Se repentant, repenti, je me repens, je me repentis.

Se repentir is conjugated like mentir (see § 322), but of course takes être in its compound tenses.

§ 330. SAILLIR (see § 311).

§ 331. SENTIR (L. sentire), *to feel, to smell*.

Sentant, senti, je sens, je sentis.

Sentir, and its compounds consentir, *to consent*, pressentir, *to forebode*, ressentir, *to feel, to resent*, are conjugated like mentir (see § 322).

Se ressentir de, *to feel, to feel the effects of*, is of course conjugated with être.

§ 332. SERVIR (L. servire), *to serve*.

Servant (whence IMP. IND. je servais), servi.					
IND.	{ je sers	nous servons,	} whence	{ sers,	}
PRES.	{ tu sers	vous servez,		{ servons,	
	{ il sert	ils servent.		{ servez.	
PRET.	je servis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je servisse, etc.
FUT.	je servirai, etc.			COND.	je servirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je serve		que tu serves	qu'il serve,	
PRES.	{ que nous servions		que vous serviez	qu'ils servent.	

Conjugate thus—desservir, *to clear the table, to do an ill office, to disoblige*.

Obs. 1. Se servir de, *to make use of*, is of course conjugated with être.

Obs. 2. Asservir, *to enslave*, is regular.

§ 333. SORTIR (L.L. surrectire ? or perhaps surgire, for surgere), *to go out*.

Sortant, sorti, je sors, je sortis.

Sortir, and its compound ressortir, *to go out again, to stand out, to result*, are conjugated like mentir (see § 322), except that they take the auxiliary être. When used transitively, however, it stands to reason that they must take avoir.

Obs. 1. Sortir (L. *sortiri*), a legal term meaning *to have, to get*, is regular, but only used in the third persons :

Cette sentence *sortira* son plein et entier effet. That sentence will have its full effect.

Obs. 2. Assortir, to match, to sort, and ressortir de, to be in the jurisdiction of, are also conjugated like *finir*.

§ 334. SOUFFRIR (L. *sufferre*), *to suffer, to endure*.

Souffrant, souffert, je souffre, je souffris.

Souffrir is conjugated like *couvrir* (see § 314).

§ 335. TENIR (L. *tenere*), *to hold, to keep*.

Tenant (whence IMP. IND. *je tenais*), *tenu*.

IND.	{	je tiens	nous <i>tenons</i> ,	}		{	tiens,	
PRES.		tu tiens	vous <i>tenez</i> ,		whence		<i>tenons</i> ,	
		il tient	ils <i>tiennent</i> .		IMPERAT.		<i>tenez</i> .	
PRET.	{	je tins	nous <i>tinmes</i> ,	}	IMP.	{	que je <i>tinsse</i>	que nous <i>tinssions</i> ,
		tu tins	vous <i>tintes</i> ,		SUBJ.		que tu <i>tinsses</i>	que vous <i>tinssiez</i> ,
		il tint	ils <i>tinrent</i> .				qu'il <i>tint</i>	qu'ils <i>tinssent</i> .
FUT.		je <i>tiendrai</i> , etc.			COND.	je <i>tiendrais</i> , etc.		
SUBJ.	{	que je <i>tienne</i>		}	que tu <i>tiennes</i>		qu'il <i>tienne</i> ,	
PRES.		que nous <i>tenions</i>			que vous <i>teniez</i>		qu'ils <i>tiennent</i> .	

Obs. Notice that the *n* is doubled before an *e* mute (as in *venir, prendre*, and their compounds).

Conjugate thus—*s'abstenir, to abstain*, which of course takes *être*, and

Appartenir	<i>to belong.</i>	Maintenir	<i>to maintain.</i>
Contenir	<i>to contain.</i>	Obtenir	<i>to obtain.</i>
Détenir	<i>to detain.</i>	Retenir	<i>to retain.</i>
Entretenir	<i>to keep up, to converse with, etc.</i>	Soutenir	<i>to sustain.</i>

§ 336. VENIR (L. *venire*), *to come*.

Venant, venu, je viens, je vins.

Venir is conjugated like *tenir* (see § 335), except that it takes *être* in its compound tenses.

Conjugate thus—

Advenir (sometimes avenir)	<i>to happen.</i>
Circonvenir	<i>to circumvent.</i>
Contrevenir	<i>to infringe.</i>
Convenir	<i>to agree ; to suit.</i>
Devenir	<i>to become.</i>
Disconvenir	<i>to deny.</i>
Intervenir	<i>to interfere.</i>
Parvenir	<i>to reach, to succeed.</i>
Prévenir	<i>to prevent ; to warn ; to forestall.</i>

Provenir (de)	<i>to proceed (from).</i>
Redevenir	<i>to become again.</i>
Revenir	<i>to come back.</i>
Se souvenir de	} <i>to remember.</i>
Se ressouvenir de	
Subvenir à	<i>to relieve.</i>
Survenir	<i>to happen, to arrive unexpectedly.</i>

Obs. 1. Notice **venir de** followed by an infinitive, in the sense of *to have just* :

Il vient de sortir.

He has just gone out.

Obs. 2. **Advenir** is only used in the third persons.

Obs. 3. **Circonvenir**, **contrevenir**, **prévenir**, and **subvenir** are conjugated with **avoir**.

Obs. 4. **Convenir** takes **être** when it means *to agree*, but **avoir** when it means *to suit* (see § 262).

§ 337.

VÊTIR (L. vestire), *to clothe*.

Vêtant (whence IMP. IND. je **vétais**), **vêtu**.

IND.	{	je vêts	nous vêtons ,	}	whence	{	vêts ,
PRES.		tu vêts	vous vêtez ,		IMPERAT.		vêtons ,
		il vêt	ils vêtent .				vêtez .
PRET.		je vêtis , etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je vêtisse , etc.	
FUT.		je vêtirai , etc.			COND.	je vêtrais , etc.	
SUBJ.	{	que je vête	que tu vêtes			qu'il vête ,	
PRES.		que nous vêtions	que vous vétiez			qu'ils vêtent .	

Conjugate thus—**dévêtir**, *to divest* ; **revêtir**, *to clothe, to invest*.

IV.—Third Conjugation.

§ 338. **APPAROIR** (L. apparere), *to appear, to be evident*.

Apparoir is only used as a law term, in the *Present Infinitive* and in the third person singular of the *Present Indicative* : **il appert**.

§ 339.

ASSEOIR (L. *assidere*), *to seat*.

Asseyant (whence IMP. IND. *j'asseyais*), *assis*.

IND.	{	j'assieds	nous asseyons,	}	whence	{	assieds,
PRES.		tu assieds	vous asseyez,		IMPERAT.		asseyons,
		il assied	ils asseyent.				asseyez.
PRET.		j'assis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que j'assisse, etc.
FUT.		j'assiérai, etc.			COND.		j'assiérais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que j'asseye	que tu asseyes				qu'il asseye,
PRES.		que nous asseyions	que vous asseyiez				qu'ils asseyent.

OR,

Assoyant (whence IMP. IND. *j'assoiais*).

IND.	{	j'assois	nous assoyons,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{	assois,
PRES.		tu assois	vous assoyez,				assoyons,
		il assoit	ils assoient.				assoyez.
FUT.		j'assoirai, etc.			COND.		j'assoirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que j'assoie	que tu assoies				qu'il assoie,
PRES.		que nous assoyions	que vous assoyiez				qu'ils assoient.

(The second form, which is not so often used as the first, has the same Past Participle, Preterite, and Imperfect Subjunctive.)

Conjugate thus—*rasseoir*, *to reseat, to set again, to calm*.

Obs. 1. *Rassis*, when used adjectively, means—(1) *sedate, calm*; (2) *stale*: *du pain rassis, stale bread*.

Obs. 2. *S'asseoir*, *to sit down*, and *se rasseoir*, *to sit down again*, are of course conjugated with *être*.

For the simple verb *seoir*, see § 353.

§ 340.

CHALOIR (L. *calere*), *to matter*.

Chaloir is only used in the third person singular of the Present Indicative, in the locutions *il ne m'en chaut, peu m'en chaut, I care nothing, I care little about it*.

The following forms are scarcely to be found anywhere but in grammars:

FUT. *Il chaudra.* COND. *Il chaudrait.* PRES. SUBJ. *Qu'il chaille.*

Obs. From the obsolete compound *nonchaloir* comes the adjective *nonchalant, heedless, careless*.

§ 341. CHOIR (L. cadere), *to fall*.

Choir (Past Participle *chu*), and *rechoir*, *to fall again* (Past Participle *rechu*), are little used, and that only in the Present Infinitive and in the compound tenses, which are formed with *être*.

(For the compounds *déchoir*, *échoir*, see §§ 343 and 345.)

§ 342. COMPAROIR (L. comparere), *to appear*.

Comparoir is only used in the Present Infinitive as a law term.

§ 343. DÉCHOIR (dé, and choir), *to decay*.

NO PRES. PARTICIPLE, NO IMPERF. INDICATIVE, *déchu*.

IND.	{ je <i>déchois</i>	nous <i>déchoyons</i> ,	NO IMPERATIVE.
PRES.	{ tu <i>déchois</i>	vous <i>déchoyez</i> ,	
	{ il <i>déchoit</i> (or <i>déchet</i>)	ils <i>déchoient</i> .	
PRET.	je <i>déchus</i> , etc.	IMP. SUBJ. que je <i>déchusse</i> , etc.	
FUT.	je <i>décherrai</i> , etc., or je <i>déchoirai</i> , etc.	COND. je <i>décherrais</i> , etc., or je <i>déchoirais</i> , etc.	
SUBJ.	{ que je <i>déchoie</i>	que tu <i>déchoies</i>	qu'il <i>déchoie</i> ,
PRES.	{ que nous <i>déchoyions</i>	que vous <i>déchoyiez</i>	qu'ils <i>déchoient</i> .

Obs. 1. *Déchoir* is conjugated with *être* to express the result of the action.

Obs. 2. Some grammarians give the Imperative *déchois*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*.

§ 344. SE DOULOIR (L. dolere), *to complain*.

Se douloir and its compound *se condouloir*, *to condole*, *to sympathise*, are only used in the Present Infinitive, and that very seldom.

§ 345. ÉCHOIR (L.L. excadere), *to fall to*, *to expire*, *to be due*.

Échoir has a Present Participle : *échéant*, and the third persons of the Imperfect Indicative : *il échoyait*, *ils échoyaient*. It is otherwise conjugated like *déchoir*, but chiefly used in the third persons. The first and second persons of the Preterite, Future, Conditional, and Imperfect Subjunctive, are sometimes met with.

The compound tenses are formed with *être*.

Obs. Notice :

Le cas *échéant*.

Si le cas y *échoit* (or *échet*).

S'il y *échet*.

}

The case occurring.

§ 346. FALLOIR (L. fallere), *to be necessary, must.*

NO PRES. PARTICIPLE. IMP. IND. il fallait. Fallu.

IND. PRES. il faut.

NO IMPERATIVE.

PRET. il fallut.

IMP. SUBJ. qu'il fallût.

FUT. il faudra.

COND. il faudrait.

SUBJ. PRES. qu'il faille.

Obs. Notice the following idioms :

Il s'en faut de beaucoup
qu'il ait réussi.

He is very far from having succeeded.

Peu s'en fallut que le vais-
seau ne sombrât.

The ship very nearly sank.

§ 347. MESSEOIR (mes [L. minus], soir), *to be unbecoming, not to become.*

The only parts in use are—

Messéant (but IMP. IND. je messeyais, etc.).

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

je messieds nous messeyons

que je messeye que nous messeyions

tu messieds vous messeyez

que tu messeyes que vous messeyiez

il messied ils messeyent.

qu'il messeye qu'ils messeyent.

FUT. je messiérai, etc.

COND. je messiérais, etc.

§ 348. MOUVOIR (L. movere), *to move.*

Mouvant (whence IMP. IND. je movais), mû.

IND. { je meus

nous mouvons,

PRES. { tu meus

vous mouvez,

{ il meut

ils meuvent.

whence

{ meus,

IMPERAT.

{ mouvons,

{ mouvez.

PRET. je mus, etc.

IMP. SUBJ. que je musse, etc.

FUT. je mouvrai, etc.

COND. je mouvrais, etc.

SUBJ. { que je meuve

que tu meuves

qu'il meuve,

PRES. { que nous mouvions

que vous moviez

qu'ils meuvent.

Obs. 1. The Past Participle takes a circumflex accent *only in the masculine singular.*

[?] *Obs. 2. Démouvoir, to make one desist, is only used in the Present Infinitive.*

Obs. 3. Émouvoir, to move, to affect, is conjugated like mouvoir, but its Past Participle does not take a circumflex accent.

Obs. 4. Promouvoir, to promote (Past Partic. promu), is seldom used except in the Infinitive, Past Participle, and compound tenses.

§ 349. PLEUVOIR (L. pluere), *to rain.*

Pleuvant (whence IMP. IND. il pleuvait), plu.

IND. PRES. il pleut.

PRET. il plut.

FUT. il pleuvra.

SUBJ. PRES. qu'il pleuve.

NO IMPERATIVE.

IMP. SUBJ. qu'il plût.

COND. il pleuvrait.

§ 350. POURVOIR (L. providere), *to provide.*

Pourvoir is conjugated like voir (see § 356), except in the Preterite—je pourvus, etc. ; Imperfect Subjunctive—que je pourvusse, etc. ; and Future—je pourvoirai, etc.

Dépourvoir, to deprive, to strip, is conjugated like pourvoir, but chiefly used in the Infinitive, Preterite, Past Partic. and compound tenses.

§ 351. POUVOIR (L.L. potere), *to be able, can.*

Pouvant (whence IMP. IND. je pouvais), pu.

IND. { je peux (or je puis) nous pouvons,

PRES. { tu peux vous pouvez,

{ il peut ils peuvent.

NO IMPERATIVE.

PRET. je pus, etc.

IMP. SUBJ. que je pusse, etc.

FUT. je pourrai, etc.

COND. je pourrais, etc.

SUBJ. { que je puisse

que tu puisses

qu'il puisse,

PRES. { que nous puissions

que vous puissiez

qu'ils puissent.

Obs. 1. Puis must be used instead of peux in interrogative sentences.

Obs. 2. With pouvoir used negatively, pas and point may be omitted :

Je ne puis aller avec vous.

I cannot go with you.

§ 352.

SAVOIR (L. sapere), to know.

Sachant (*but* IMP. IND. je savais), su.

IND.	{ je sais	nous savons,			
PRES.	{ tu sais	vous savez,		But IMPERAT.	{ sache,
	{ il sait	ils savent.			{ sachons,
					{ sachez.
PRET.	je sus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je susse, etc.
FUT.	je saurai, etc.			COND.	je saurais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je sache	que tu saches			qu'il sache,
PRES.	{ que nous sachions	que vous sachiez			qu'ils sachent.

Obs. 1. Savoir, which implies mental knowledge, information, and has the meaning of *to understand, to know how to, to know by heart, to be aware of*, should not be confounded with *connaître*, which implies mere acquaintance. *Connaître* alone should be used when the object is a person.

Obs. 2. Savoir, used negatively, only requires *pas* or *point* when it means *to have learnt* :

Je ne sais que faire.

I do not know what to do.

But Je ne sais pas ma leçon.

I do not know my lesson.

Notice je ne saurais = *I could not, I cannot.*

§ 353.

SEOIR (L. sedere), to sit, to be situated.

The only forms in use are—

PRES. PARTIC.	séant, sitting (law term).	PAST. PARTIC.	sis, situated (law term).
IND.	{ je sieds	nous seyon,	
PRES.	{ tu sieds	vous seyez,	{ whence sieds-toi.
(rare).	{ il sied	ils seient or seient.	{ IMPERAT. { seyon-nous.
			{ (reflexively). { seyez-vous.

Seoir, in the sense of *to fit, to become*, has the following forms :

PRES. PARTIC.	seyant (rarely séant), whence	IMP. IND.	il seyait, ils seyaient.
IND. PRES.	il sied, ils seient.		No IMPERATIVE.
FUT.	il siéra, ils siéront.	COND.	il siérait, ils siéraient.
SUBJ. PRES.	qu'il siée, qu'ils seient (rare).		

§ 354. SURSEOIR (L. supersedere), to postpone, to suspend.

Surseoir, which is chiefly used as a law term, is conjugated like the second form of **asseoir** (see § 339), except that it preserves the *e* of the Infinitive in the Future and Conditional; je *surseoirai*, je *surseoirais*.

§ 355. VALOIR (L. valere), to be worth.

Valant (whence IMP. IND. je valais), valu.							
IND.	{	je vaux	nous valons ,	}	whence	{	vaux ,
PRES.		tu vaux	vous valez ,		IMPERAT.		valons ,
		il vaut	ils valent .				valez .
PRET.		je valus , etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je valusse , etc.	
FUT.		je vaudrai , etc.			COND.	je vaudrais , etc.	
SUBJ.	{	que je vaille	que tu vailles			{	qu'il vaille ,
PRES.		que nous valions	que vous valiez				qu'ils vailent .

Conjugate thus—**équivaloir**, to be equivalent; **revaloir**, to return like for like, to pay back.

Obs. **Prévaloir**, to prevail, is also conjugated like **valoir**, except in the Present Subjunctive:

que je prévale	que tu prévales	qu'il prévale ,
que nous prévalions	que vous prévaliez	qu'ils prévalent .

§ 356. VOIR (L. videre), to see.

Voyant (whence IMP. IND. je voyais), vu.							
IND.	{	je vois	nous voyons ,	}	whence	{	vois ,
PRES.		tu vois	vous voyez ,		IMPERAT.		voyons ,
		il voit	ils voient .				voyez .
PRET.		je vis , etc.	-		IMP. SUBJ.		que je visse , etc.
FUT.		je verrai , etc.			COND.		je verrais , etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je voie	que tu voies				qu'il voie ,
PRES.		que nous voyions	que vous voyiez				qu'ils voient .

Conjugate thus—**entrevoir**, to catch a glimpse of; **revoir**, to see again.

Prévoir, to foresee, is also conjugated like **voir**, except in the Future and Conditional: je *prévoirai*, etc.; je *prévoirais*, etc.

etc. pouvoir

§ 357. VOULOIR (L.L. volere), *to wish, to be willing.*

Voulant (whence IMP. IND. je voulais), voulu.

IND.	{ je veux	nous voulons,		whence	{ veux ,
PRES.	{ tu veux	vous voulez,		IMPERAT. ¹	{ voulons,
	{ il veut	ils veulent .			{ voulez.
PRET.	je voulus , etc.		IMP. SUBJ.	que je voulusse , etc.	
FUT.	je voudrai , etc.		COND.	je voudrais , etc.	
SUBJ.	{ que je veuille	que tu veuilles		qu'il veuille ,	
PRES.	{ que nous voulions	que vous vouliez		qu'ils veussent .	

V.—Fourth Conjugation.

§ 358. ABSOUDRE (L. absolvere), *to absolve.*

Absolvant (whence IMP. IND. j'absolvais), absous (fem. absoute).

IND.	{ j' absous	nous absolvons		whence	{ absous ,
PRES.	{ tu absous	vous absolvez ,		IMPERAT.	{ absolvons ,
	{ il absout	ils absolvent .			{ absolvez .
PRET.	None.		IMP. SUBJ.	None.	
FUT.	j' absoudrai , etc.		COND.	j' absoudrais , etc.	
SUBJ.	{ que j' absolve	que tu absolves		qu'il absolve ,	
PRES.	{ que nous absolvions	que vous absolviez		qu'ils absolvent .	

Obs. Absolu is only used as an adjective, meaning *absolute*.

¹ *Veux, voulons, voulez* are sometimes used emphatically to express a strong will, but the forms in common use are *veuille (veuillons), veuillez (=be so good as to . . .)*.

§ 359. ASTREINDRE (L. *astringere*), *to compel*.

Astreignant (whence IMP. IND. j'astreignais), <i>astreint</i> .					
IND.	{	j'astreins	nous astreignons,	{	whence
PRES.		tu astreins	vous astreignez,		IMPERAT.
		il astreint	ils astreignent.		{ astreins, astreignons, astreignez.
PRET.	j'astreignis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que j'astreignisse, etc.
FUT.	j'astreindrai, etc.			COND.	j'astreindraï, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que j'astreigne	que tu astreignes	qu'il astreigne,	
PRES.		que nous astreignions	que vous astreigniez	qu'ils astreignent.	

Obs. The *d* of the Infinitive appears only in the *Future* and *Conditional*.

Conjugate thus all verbs in *-eindre*, *-aindre*, and *-oindre*.

§ 360. ATTEINDRE (L. *attingere*), *to reach*, *to hit*.

Atteignant, *atteint*, *j'atteins*, *j'atteignis* (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Conjugate thus—*ratteindre*, *to catch again*, *to overtake*.

§ 361. AVEINDRE (L. *advenire*), *to take out*, *to hand*.

Aveignant, *aveint*, *j'aveins*, *j'aveignis* (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Obs. *Aveindre* is now obsolete.

§ 362. BOIRE (L. *bibere*), *to drink*; *to blot* (of paper).

Buvant (whence IMP. IND. je buvais), <i>bu</i> .					
IND.	{	je bois	nous buvons,	{	whence
PRES.		tu bois	vous buvez,		IMPERAT.
		il boit	ils boivent.		{ bois, buvons, buvez.
PRET.	je bus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je busse, etc.
FUT.	je boirai, etc.			COND.	je boirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je boive	que tu boives	qu'il boive,	
PRES.		que nous buvions	que vous buviez	qu'ils boivent.	

Conjugate thus—*emboire*, *to coat* (with oil or wax); *reboire*, *to drink again*.

Obs. *S'emboire*, *to soak in*, *to get dull* (painting term), is only used in the third persons, and of course takes *être*.

§ 363. BRAIRE (L.L. *bragire* ?), to *bray*.

The following forms are the only ones given by the French Academy (besides the Present Infinitive) :

IND. {	il brait,	FUT. {	il braira,	COND. {	il brairait,
PRES. {	ils braient.		ils brairont.		ils brairaient.

But the third persons of the Imperfect Indicative—*il brayait*, *ils brayaient*—and of the compound tenses (formed with the Past Participle *brait*) may also be used. There is no reason, moreover, why a fabulist should not use the first or second person of all the above tenses.

§ 364. BRUIRE (orig. unknown), to *rustle*, to *roar*.

Bruyant or bruissant (whence IMP. IND. *je bruçais* or *bruissais*), **bruit**.

IND. {	je bruis,	NO PLURAL.	NO IMPERATIVE.
PRES. {	tu bruis,		
	il bruit.		
NO PRETERITE.		NO IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
FUT.	je bruirai, etc.	COND. je bruirais, etc.	
SUBJ. {	que je bruise	que tu bruisses	qu'il bruise,
PRES. {	que nous bruissions	que vous bruissiez	qu'ils bruissent.

Obs. Bruyant is chiefly used adjectively in the sense of *noisy*.

§ 365. CEINDRE (L. *cingere*), to *gird*.

Ceignant, *ceint*, *je ceins*, *je ceignis* (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Conjugate thus—*enceindre*, to *encircle*, to *surround*.

§ 366. CIRCONCIRE (L. *circumcidere*), to *circumcise*.

Circoncisant, *circoncis*, *je circoncis*, *je circoncis*.

Circoncire is conjugated like *confire* (see § 371), except that its Past Participle ends with an *s* instead of a *t*.

§ 367. CIRCONSCRIRE (L. *circumscribere*), to *circumscribe*.

Circonscrivant, *circonscriit*, *je circonscriis*, *je circonscrivis* (see *écrire*, § 385).

§ 368. CLORE (L. claudere), *to close, to shut.*

The only forms in use (besides the Infinitive) are :

IND.	{ je clos,	No PLURAL.	PAST. PARTIC. clos.	{ whence all the compound tenses.
PRES.	{ tu clos,			
	{ il clôt.			
FUT.	je clorai, etc.			COND. je clorais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je close		que tu closes	qu'il close,
PRES.	{ que nous closions		que vous closiez	qu'ils closent.

Obs. 1. Déclore (little used), *to unclose*, is conjugated like *clore*.

Obs. 2. Éclore, *to be hatched, to open* (of flowers), *to dawn*, which is chiefly used in the third persons, has besides the third person plural of the Present Indicative, *ils éclosent*. It takes a circumflex over the *o* in the Future and Conditional, and its compound tenses are formed with *être*.

Obs. 3. Forclore, *to foreclose* (law term), is only used in the Infinitive, Past Participle (*forclos*), and compound tenses.

For *enclore*, see § 387.

§ 369. CONCLURE (L. concludere), *to conclude.*

Concluant (whence IMP. IND. je concluais), conclu.				
IND.	{ je conclus	nous concluons,	{ whence	{ conclus, concluons, concluez.
PRES.	{ tu conclus	vous concluez,		
	{ il conclut	ils concluent.		
PRET.	je conclus, etc.		IMP. SUBJ.	que je conclusse, etc.
FUT.	je conclurai, etc.		COND.	je conclurais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je conclue	que tu conclues		qu'il conclue,
PRES.	{ que nous concluions	que vous concluez		qu'ils concluent.

Conjugate thus—*exclure*, *to exclude*.

Obs. Inclure, *to include*, is also conjugated like *conclure*, except that its Past Participle ends with an *s*—*inclus*.

§ 370. CONDUIRE (L. conducere), *to conduct*.

Conduisant (whence IMP. IND. je **conduisais**), **conduit**.

IND.	{	je conduis	nous conduisons ,	}	whence	{	conduis,	
PRES.		tu conduis	vous conduisez ,				IMPERAT.	conduisons ,
		il conduit	ils conduisent .					conduisez .
PRET.		je conduisis , etc.		IMP. SUBJ.			que je conduisisse , etc.	
FUT.		je conduirai, etc.		COND.			je conduirais, etc.	
SUBJ.		que je conduise	que tu conduises				qu'il conduise ,	
PRES.		que nous conduisions	que vous conduisiez				qu'ils conduisent .	

Conjugate thus—**éconduire**, *to show out, to refuse*; **reconduire**, *to reconduct, to take back*, and all verbs in **-duire**.

Obs. The simple verb **duire** (L. ducere), *to suit, to please*, had the following forms, now obsolete :

IND.	{ il duit,	IND.	{ il duisait ,	FUT.	{ il duira ,	COND.	{ il duirait ,
PRES.	{ ils duisent .	IMP.	{ ils duisaient .		{ ils duiront .		

§ 371. CONFIRE (L. conficere), *to pickle, to preserve*.

Confisant (whence IMP. IND. je **confisais**), **confit**.

IND.	{	je confis	nous confisons ,	}	whence	{	confis,	
PRES.		tu confis	vous confisez ,				IMPERAT.	confisons ,
		il confit	ils confisent .					confisez .
PRET.	je confis , etc.			IMP. SUBJ. que je confisse , etc.				
FUT.	je confirai, etc.			COND.		je confirais, etc.		
SUBJ.	{	que je confise	que tu confises	qu'il confise ,				
PRES.		que nous confisions	que vous confisiez	qu'ils confisent .				

Conjugate thus—**déconfire**, *to disconfit*.

Obs. **Suffire**, *to suffice*, is also conjugated like **confire**, except that its Past Participle has no **t** : **suffi**.

§ 372. CONNAÎTRE (L. cognoscere), *to know*.

Connaissant (whence IMP. IND. je connaissais), connu.

IND.	{	je connais	nous connaissons,	}	whence	{	connais,
PRES.		tu connais	vous connaissez,		IMPERAT.		connaissons,
		il connaît	ils connaissent.				connaissez.
PRET.		je connus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je connusse, etc.
FUT.		je connaîtrai, etc.			COND.		je connaîtrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je connaisse	que tu connaisses				qu'il connaisse,
PRES.		que nous connaissions	que vous connaissiez				qu'ils connaissent.

Obs. The *i* takes a circumflex accent before a *t*.

Conjugate thus—*méconnaître*, *to slight, to disregard*; *reconnaître*, *to recognise*, and all verbs in *-aître* (except *naître*).

Paitre (= *to graze*), however, has no Preterite and no Imperfect Subjunctive. Its Past Participle pu is only used as a term of falconry.

§ 373. CONSTRUIRE (L. construere), *to construct*.

Construisant, construit, je construis, je construisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

Conjugate thus—

Déconstruire	<i>to unbuild.</i>	Instruire	<i>to instruct.</i>
Détruire	<i>to destroy.</i>	Reconstruire	<i>to construct again, to rebuild.</i>

§ 374. CONTRAINDRE (L. constringere), *to constrain*.

Contraignant, contraint, je contrains, je contraignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 375. COUDRE (L. consuere), *to sew*.

Cousant (whence IMP. IND. je cousais), cousu.

IND.	{	je couds	nous cousons,	}	whence	{	couds,	
PRES.		tu couds	vous cousez,				IMPERAT.	cousons,
		il coud	ils cousent.					cousez.
PRET.		je cousis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je cousisse, etc.	
FUT.		je coudrai, etc.			COND.		je coudrais, etc.	
SUBJ.	{	que je couse	que tu couses	{			qu'il couse,	
PRES.		que nous cousions	que vous cousiez				qu'ils cousent.	

Conjugate thus—*découdre*, *to unsew, to rip*; *recoudre*, *to sew again*.

§ 376. CRAINdre (L. tremere), to fear.

Craignant, craint, je crains, je crains (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 377. CROIRE (L. credere), to believe.

Croyant (whence IMP. IND. je croyais), cru.

IND.	{ je crois	nous croyons,	}	whence	{ crois,
PRES.	{ tu crois	vous croyez,	}	IMPERAT.	{ croyons,
	{ il croit	ils croient.			{ croyez.
PRET.	je crus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je crusse, etc.
FUT.	je croirai, etc.			COND.	je croirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je croie	que tu croies			qu'il croie,
PRES.	{ que nous croyions	que vous croyiez			qu'ils croient.

Obs. *Accroire* is only used in the Present Infinitive, after *faire* : *faire accroire*, to make believe.

Notice *en faire accroire*, to impose upon ; *s'en faire accroire*, to be conceived.

§ 378. CROÎTRE (L. crescere), to grow.

Croissant (whence IMP. IND. je croissais), crû (fem. crue).

IND.	{ je crois	nous croissons,	}	whence	{ crois,
PRES.	{ tu crois	vous croissez,	}	IMPERAT.	{ croissons,
	{ il croit	ils croissent.			{ croissez.
PRET.	je crûs, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je crusse, etc.
FUT.	je croîtrai, etc.			COND.	je croîtrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je croisse	que tu croisses			qu'il croisse,
PRES.	{ que nous croissions	que vous croissiez			qu'ils croissent.

Obs. 1. Notice the circumflex in the Infinitive, Past Participle (masc. sing.), Present Indicative (sing.), Imperative (sing.), Preterite, Future and Conditional :

Je crois, I believe.

Je crois, I grow.

Obs. 2. *Croître* is conjugated with *être*, to express the result of the action.

Conjugate thus—**accroître**, *to increase* ; **décroître**, *to decrease* ; **recroître**, *to grow again*.

Accroître, however, only takes a circumflex when the *i* is followed by a *t*. **Décroître** has one, besides, in the first and second persons singular of the Present Indicative, and in the second person singular of the Imperative, and **recroître**, in the Past Participle (masc. sing.).

§ 379. CUIRE (L. *coquere*), *to cook*.

Cuisant, **cuit**, **je cuis**, **je cuisis** (see **conduire**, § 370).

Conjugate thus—**recuire**, *to cook again*.

§ 380. DÉCRIRE (L. *describere*), *to describe*.

Décrivant, **décrit**, **je décris**, **je décrivis** (see **écrire**, § 385).

§ 381. DÉDUIRE (L. *deducere*), *to deduct*.

Déduisant, **déduit**, **je déduis**, **je déduisis** (see **conduire**, § 370).

§ 382. DÉTRUIRE (L. *destruere*), *to destroy*.

Détruisant, **détruit**, **je détruis**, **je détruisis** (see **conduire**, § 370).

§ 383. DIRE (L. *dicere*), *to say, to tell*.

Disant (whence IMP. IND. **je disais**), **dit**.

IND.	{ je dis	nous disons ,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ dis, disons , dites.
PRES.	{ tu dis il dit	vous dites , ils disent .			
PRET.	je dis , etc.				IMP. SUBJ. que je disse , etc.
FUT.	je dirai, etc.				COND. je dirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je dise	que tu dises			qu'il dise ,
PRES.	{ que nous disions	que vous disiez			qu'ils disent .

Notice that there is no circumflex over the *i* of **dites** in the Present Indicative or Imperative, but only in the Preterite.

Conjugate thus—**redire**, *to say again, to find fault (with)*.

Obs. 1.

Contredire	to contradict	} make in the second person plural of the Present Indicative and Imperative	contredisez,
Dédire	to gainsay, to disown.		dédisez,
Interdire	to forbid		interdisez,
Médire	to speak ill		médisez,
Prédire	to predict		prédisez,

but are otherwise conjugated like *dire*.

Obs. 2. *Maudire*, to curse, is also conjugated like *dire*, except in the following parts—

PRES. PARTIC. <i>maudissant</i> .	IMP. IND. <i>je maudissais</i> , etc.
IND. PRES. (plural) nous <i>maudissons</i> , vous <i>maudissez</i> , ils <i>maudissent</i> .	IMPERAT. (plural) <i>maudissons</i> , <i>maudissez</i> .
	SUBJ. PRES. <i>que je maudisse</i> , etc.

§ 384. DISSOUDRE (L. *dissolvere*), to dissolve.

Dissolvant, dissous, je dissous, no *Preterite* (see *absoudre*, § 358).

Dissolu is only used adjectively, in the sense of *dissolute*.

§ 385. ÉCRIRE (L. *scribere*), to write.

Écrivant (whence IMP. IND. *j'écrivais*), écrit.

IND. { <i>j'écris</i> tu écris	nous <i>écrivons</i> ,	} whence	{ <i>écris</i> , écrivons
PRES. { il écrit	vous <i>écrivez</i> ,		
	ils <i>écrivent</i> .	IMPERAT.	{ <i>écrivez</i> .
PRET. <i>j'écrivis</i> , etc.		IMP. SUBJ. <i>que j'écrive</i> , etc.	
FUT. <i>j'écrirai</i> , etc.		COND. <i>j'écrirais</i> , etc.	
SUBJ. { <i>que j'écrive</i>	que tu <i>écrives</i>	qu'il <i>écrive</i> ,	
PRES. { <i>que nous écrivions</i>	que vous <i>écriviez</i>	qu'ils <i>écrivent</i> .	

Conjugate thus—

Circonscrire	to circumscribe.	Proscrire	to proscribe.
Décrire	to describe.	Récrire	to write again.
Inscrire	to inscribe.	Souscrire	to subscribe.
Prescrire	to prescribe.	Transcrire	to transcribe.

§ 386. EMPREINDRE (L. imprimere), *to impress*.

Empreignant, empreint, j'empreins, j'empreignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 387. ENCLORE (L. includere), *to enclose, to fence*.

Enclosant (whence IMP. IND. j'enclosais), *enclos*.

IND.	{ j'enclos	nous enclosons ,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ enclos, enclosons , enclosez .
PRES.	{ tu enclos	vous enclosez ,			
	{ il enclôt	ils enclosent .			
PRET.	None.			IMP. SUBJ.	None.
FUT.	j'enclorai, etc.			COND.	j'encloirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que j'enclose	que tu encloses			qu'il enclose ,
PRES.	{ que nous enclosions	que vous enclosiez			qu'ils enclosent .

Obs. Some grammarians conjugate *enclore* like *clore*.

§ 388. ENDUIRE (L. inducere), *to coat, to cover*.

Enduisant, enduit, j'enduis, j'enduisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

§ 389. ENFREINDRE (L. infringere), *to infringe*.

Enfreignant, enfreint, j'enfreins, j'enfreignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 390. ÉPREINDRE (L. exprimere), *to press, to squeeze out*.

Épreignant, épreint, j'épreins, j'épreignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 391. ÉTEINDRE (L. extinguere), *to extinguish*.

Éteignant, éteint, j'éteins, j'éteignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 392. ÉTREINDRE (L. stringere), *to clasp, to grasp*.

Étreignant, étreint, j'étreins, j'étreignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 393. EXCLURE (L. excludere), *to exclude*.

Excluant, exclu, j'exclus, j'exclus (see *conclure*, § 369).

§ 394.

FAIRE (L. facere), *to do, to make.*

Faisant¹ (whence IMP. IND. je faisais¹), fait.

IND.	{ je fais	nous faisons, ¹	}	whence	{ fais,
PRES.	{ tu fais	vous faites,		IMPERAT.	{ faisons, ¹
	{ il fait	ils font.			{ faites.
PRET.	je fis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je fisse, etc.
FUT.	je ferai, etc.			COND.	je ferais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je fasse	que tu fasses			qu'il fasse,
PRES.	{ que nous fassions	que vous fassiez			qu'ils fassent.

Conjugate thus—

Contrefaire	<i>to counterfeit.</i>	Refaire	<i>to do again.</i>
Défaire	<i>to undo, to defeat.</i>	Satisfaire	<i>to satisfy.</i>
Forfaire	<i>to forfeit.</i>	Surfaire	<i>to overcharge.</i>
Redéfaire	<i>to undo again.</i>		

Obs. **Malfaire**, *to do mischief*, **méfaire**, *to do evil, to harm*, and **parfaire**, *to perfect, to complete*, are chiefly used in the Infinitive, Past Participle, and compound tenses.

§ 395.

FEINDRE (L. fingere), *to feign.*

Feignant, feint, je feins, je feignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 396.

FRIRE (L. frigere), *to fry.*

The only forms used (besides the Infinitive, the Past Participle **frit**, and the compound tenses) are—

IND.	{ je fris	}	whence	{ fris.
PRES.	{ tu fris		IMPERAT.	{ No PLURAL.
	{ il frit			
FUT.	je frirai, etc.		COND.	je frirais, etc.

The persons and tenses wanting are supplied by the verb **faire** prefixed to the Infinitive **frire**: nous faisons **frire**, *we are frying*, etc.

¹ Pronounce *fesant, fesais, fesons*.

§ 397. GEINDRE (L. *gemere*), *to moan, to whine.*

Geignant, geint, je geins, je geignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 398. INCLURE (L. *includere*), *to include.*

Incluant, inclus, j'inclus, j'inclus (see *conclure*, § 369).

Notice the *s* of the Past Participle.

§ 399. INDUIRE (L. *inducere*), *to induce.*

Induisant, induit, j'induis, j'induis (see *conduire*, § 370).

§ 400. INSCRIRE (L. *inscribere*), *to inscribe.*

Inscrivant, inscrit, j'inscris, j'inscris (see *écrire*, § 385).

§ 401. INSTRUIRE (L. *instruere*), *to instruct.*

Instruisant, instruit, j'instruis, j'instruis (see *conduire*, § 370).


§ 402. INTRODUIRE (L. *introducere*), *to introduce.*

Introduisant, introduit, j'introduis, j'introduis (see *conduire*, § 370).

§ 403. JOINDRE (L. *jungere*), *to join.*

Joignant, joint, je joins, je joins (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Conjugate thus—

 Adjoindre *to give as a colleague.*
Conjoindre *to join, to unite.*
Déjoindre *to disjoin.*

Disjoindre *to disjoin, to sever.*
Enjoindre *to enjoin.*
Rejoindre *to rejoin, to overtake.*

§ 404.

LIRE (L. legere), *to read*.

Lisant (whence IMP. IND. je lisais), **lu**.

IND.	{	je lis	nous lisons,	}	whence	{	lis,
PRES.		tu lis	vous lisez,		IMPERAT.		lisons,
		il lit	ils lisent.				lisez.
PRET.		je lus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je lusse, etc.
FUT.		je lirai, etc.			COND.		je lirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je lise	que tu lises			{	qu'il lise,
PRES.		que nous lisions	que vous lisiez				qu'ils lisent.

Conjugate thus—

Élire *to elect.*

Prélire *to read (a first proof.)*

Réélire

to re-elect.

Relire

to read again.

§ 405.

LUIRE (L. lucere), *to shine*.

Luisant, **lui**, je luis, je luisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

Conjugate thus—**reluire**, *to shine, to glitter*.

Obs. 1. Notice that the Past Participle does not end with a t.

Obs. 2. The Preterite and Imperfect Subjunctive are not given in the Dictionary of the French Academy.

§ 406.

METTRE (L. mittere), *to put, to place*.

Mettant (whence IMP. IND. je mettais), **mis**.

IND.	{ je mets tu mets il met	nous mettons,	}	whence	{ mets, mettons, mettez.
PRES.		vous mettez,		IMPERAT.	
		ils mettent.			
PRET.	je mis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je misse, etc.
FUT.	je mettrai, etc.			COND.	je mettrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je mette que nous mettions	que tu mettes			qu'il mette,
PRES.		que vous mettiez		qu'ils mettent.	

Conjugate thus—

Admettre	to admit.	Permettre	to permit.
Commettre	to commit.	Promettre	to promise.
Compromettre	to compromise.	Remettre	to put again, to delay,
Démettre	to dislocate, to dismiss.		to deliver.
Émettre	to emit.	Repromettre	to promise again.
S'entremettre	to interpose.	Soumettre	to submit, to subdue.
Omettre	to omit.	Transmettre	to transmit.

§ 407. MOUDRE (L. *molere*), to grind (corn, etc.).

Moultant (whence IMP. IND. je moulais), moulu.

IND.	{	je mouds	nous moulons,	}	whence	{	mouds,
PRES.		tu mouds	vous moulez,		IMPERAT.		moulons,
		il moud	ils moulent.				moulez.
PRET.		je moulus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je moulusse, etc.
FUT.		je moudrai, etc.			COND.		je moudrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je moule		que tu moules			qu'il moule,
PRES.		que nous moulions		que vous mouliez			qu'ils moulent.

Conjugate thus—émoudre, to grind (knives, etc.); remoudre, to grind again (corn); rémoudre, to grind again (knives, etc.).

§ 408. NAÎTRE (L.L. *nascere*), to be born, to spring.

Naissant (whence IMP. IND. je naissais), né.

IND.	{	je nais	nous naissons,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{	nais,
PRES.		tu nais	vous naissez,				naissons,
		il naît	ils naissent.				naissez.
PRET.		je naquis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je naquisse, etc.
FUT.		je naîtrai, etc.			COND.		je naîtrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je naisse		que tu naisses			qu'il naisse,
PRES.		que nous naissions		que vous naissiez			qu'ils naissent.

Obs. 1. The compound tenses are formed with être.

Obs. 2. Notice the circumflex over the i when followed by a t.

Conjugate thus—renaitre, to be born again. (The Past Participle of renaitre is hardly ever used.)

§ 409. NUIRE (L. nocere), *to hurt, to harm.*

Nuisant, nui, je nuis, je nuisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

Obs. Notice that the Past Participle has no *t*.

§ 410. OCCIRE (L. occidere), *to slay.*

Occire is only used in jocular style in the Infinitive, Past Participle (*occis*), and compound tenses.

§ 411*. OINDRE (L. ungere), *to anoint.*

Oignant, oint, j'oins, j'oignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 412. PAÎTRE (L.L. pascere), *to graze.*

Paitre is conjugated like *connaître* (§ 372), but has no Preterite, and its Past Participle is only used in falconry.

Its compound *repaitre*, *to feed*, has all its tenses.

Obs. Notice *se repaitre de*, *to feed on, to gloat over*, which is of course conjugated with *être*.

§ 413. PARAÎTRE (L.L. pascere), *to appear.*

Paraissant, paru, je parais, je parus (see *connaître*, § 372).

Conjugate thus—

Apparaître	<i>to appear.</i>	Disparaître	<i>to disappear.</i>
Comparaître	<i>to appear (law).</i>	Reparaître	<i>to reappear.</i>

§ 414. PEINDRE (L. pingere), *to paint.*

Peignant, peint, je peins, je peignis (see *astreindre*, § 356).

Conjugate thus—*dépeindre*, *to depict*; *repeindre*, *to paint again*.

§ 415. PLAINDRE (L. plangere), *to pity, to grudge.*

Plaignant, plaint, je plains, je plaignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Obs. Notice *se plaindre*, *to complain*, which of course takes *être*.

§ 416. PLAIRE (L. placere), to please.

Plaisant (whence IMP. IND. je plaisais), plu.					
IND.	{ je plais	nous plaisons,	}	whence	{ plais,
PRES.	{ tu plais	vous plaisez,		IMPERAT.	{ plaisons,
	{ il plaît	ils plaisent.			{ plaisez.
PRET.	je plus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je plusse, etc.
FUT.	je plairai, etc.			COND.	je plairais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je plaise	que tu plaises			qu'il plaise,
PRES.	{ que nous plaissions	que vous plaisiez			qu'ils plaisent.

Obs. Notice the circumflex over the *i* before a *t*—il *plaît*.

Conjugate thus—*complaire*, to please, to humour ; *déplaire*, to displease.

§ 417. POINDRE (L. pungere), to sting, to peep, to dawn.

Poignant, point, je *poins*, je *poignis* (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Obs. *Poindre* is seldom used in the sense of *to sting*. Its Infinitive is more frequently met with than any other form. The Present Participle, however, is often used adjectively : *un remords poignant*, a poignant remorse.

§ 418. PRENDRE (L. prendere), to take.

Prenant (whence IMP. IND. je prenais), pris.					
IND.	{ je prends	nous prenons,	}	whence	{ prends,
PRES.	{ tu prends	vous prenez,		IMPERAT.	{ prenons,
	{ il prend	ils prennent.			{ prenez.
PRET.	je pris, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je prisse, etc.
FUT.	je prendrai, etc.			COND.	je prendrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je prenne	que tu prennes			qu'il prenne,
PRES.	{ que nous prenions	que vous preniez			qu'ils prennent.

Obs. Notice that the *n* is doubled before *e*, *es*, *ent*, as in *tenir* and *venir*.

Conjugate thus—

Apprendre	<i>to learn, to teach.</i>	Se méprendre	<i>to mistake.</i>
Comprendre	<i>to understand.</i>	Rapprendre	<i>to learn again.</i>
Désapprendre	<i>to unlearn.</i>	Reprendre	<i>to retake, to reply, to</i>
Déprendre	<i>to part, to loosen.</i>		<i>censure.</i>
Entreprendre	<i>to undertake.</i>	Surprendre	<i>to surprise.</i>

§ 419. PRESCRIRE (L. *prescribere*), *to prescribe.*

Prescrivant, prescrit, je prescris, je prescrivis (see *écrire*, § 385).

§ 420. PRODUIRE (L. *producere*), *to produce.*

Produisant, produit, je produis, je produisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

Conjugate thus—reproduire, *to reproduce.*

§ 421. PROSCRIRE (L. *proscribere*), *to proscribe.*

Proscrivant, proscrit, je proscriis, je proscrivis (see *écrire*, § 385).

§ 422. RECLURE (L. *recludere*), *to shut up.*

The only forms in use are the Infinitive, the Past Participle (*reclus*), and compound tenses.

§ 423. RÉDUIRE (L. *reducere*), *to reduce.*

Réduisant, réduit, je réduis, je réduisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

§ 424. RÉSOUDRE (L. *resolvere*), *to resolve, to determine,*
to change into.

Résolvant (whence IMP. IND. je résolvais), résolu or résous.¹

IND.	{	je résous	nous résolvons,	}	whence	{	résous,
PRES.		tu résous	vous résolvez,		IMPERAT.		résolvons,
		il résout	ils résolvent.				résolvez.
PRET.		je résolu, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je résolusse, etc.
FUT.		je résoudrai, etc.			COND.		je résoudrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je résolve	que tu résolves				qu'il résolve,
PRES.		que nous résolvions	que vous résolviez				qu'ils résolvent.

¹ The Past Participle is *résolu* when the verb is used in the sense of *to determine*; but it is *résous* (*fem. résoute*) in the sense of *to change into*:

J'ai résolu d'essayer.

I have determined to try.

Le brouillard s'est résous en pluie.

The fog has turned into rain.

§ 425. RESTREINDRE (L. restringere), *to restrict, to limit.*

Restreignant, restreint, je restreins, je restreignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

§ 426. RIRE (L. ridere), *to laugh.*

Riant (whence IMP. IND. je riais), *ri.*

IND.	{	je ris	nous rions,	}	whence	{	ris,
PRES.		tu ris	vous riez,		IMPERAT.		rions,
		il rit	ils rient.				riez.
PRET.		je ris, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.		que je risse, etc.
FUT.		je rirai, etc.			COND.		je rirais, etc.
SUBJ.	{	que je rie	que tu ries			{	qu'il rie,
PRES.		que nous rions	que vous riez				qu'ils rient.

Conjugate thus—*sourire, to smile.*

Obs. Notice *se rire de, to laugh at, to ridicule*, which of course takes être.

§ 427. SÉDUIRE (L. seducere), *to seduce, to bribe.*

séduisant, séduit, je séduis, je séduisis (see *conduire*, § 370).

✓ § 428. SEMONDRE (L. submonere), *to invite, summon; to scold.*

Semondre is getting obsolete. The Present Infinitive alone is sometimes met with. Some grammarians, however, give the following forms :

IND. PRES.	je semons, tu semons, il semond (<i>no plural</i>).	IMP.	je semonnais, etc.
FUT.	je semondrai, etc.	COND.	je semondrais, etc.

§ 429. SOUSCRIRE (L. suscribere), *to subscribe.*

Souscrivant, souscrit, je souscris, je souscrivis (see *écrire*, § 385).

§ 430. SUFFIRE (L. sufficere), *to suffice.*

Suffisant, suffi, je suffis, je suffis.

Suffire is conjugated like *confire* (§ 371), except that its Past Participle has no t.

§ 431. SUIVRE (L.L. *sequere*, for *sequi*), to follow.

Suivant (whence IMP. IND. je suivais), *suivi*.

IND.	{ je suis	nous suivons,	}	whence	{ suis,
PRES.	{ tu suis	vous suivez,		IMPERAT.	{ suivons,
	{ il suit	ils suivent.			{ suivez.
PRET.	je suivis, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je suivisse, etc.
FUT.	je suivrai, etc.			COND.	je suivrais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je suive	que tu suives			qu'il suive,
PRES.	{ que nous suivions	que vous suiviez			qu'ils suivent.

Conjugate thus—*poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute.

Obs. *S'ensuivre*, to result, to ensue, which of course takes *être*, is only used in the third persons.

§ 432. TAIRE (L. *tacere*), to keep secret, to conceal.

Taisant (whence IMP. IND. je taisais), *tu*.

IND.	{ je tais	nous taisons,	}	whence	{ tais,
PRES.	{ tu tais	vous taisez,		IMPERAT.	{ taisons,
	{ il tait	ils taisent.			{ taisez.
PRET.	je tus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je tusse, etc.
FUT.	je tairai, etc.			COND.	je tairais, etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je taise	que tu taises			qu'il taise,
PRES.	{ que nous taisions	que vous taisiez			qu'ils taisent.

Obs. *Se taire*, to be silent, to hold one's tongue, is of course conjugated with *être*.

§ 433. TEINDRE (L. *tingere*), to dye.

Teignant, teint, je teins, je teignis (see *astreindre*, § 359).

Conjugate thus—*déteindre*, to lose its colour, to leave a mark; *reteindre*, to dye again.

§ 434. TISTRE (L. *texere*), to weave.

Tistre is only used in the Past Participle (*tissu*) and compound tenses.

§ 435. **TRADUIRE** (L. traducere), *to translate, to explain, to arraign.*

Traduisant, traduit, je traduis, je traduisis (see **conduire**, § 370).

§ 436. **TRAIRE** (L. trahere), *to milk.*

Trayant (whence IMP. IND. je **trayais**), **trait.**

IND.	{ je trais	nous trayons ,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ trais , trayons , trayez .
PRES.	{ tu trais il trait	vous trayez , ils traient .			
PRET.	None.			IMP. SUBJ.	None.
FUT.	je trairai , etc.			COND.	je trairais , etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je traie	que tu traies			qu'il traie ,
PRES.	{ que nous trayions	que vous trayiez			qu'ils traient .

Conjugate thus—

Abstraire	<i>to abstract.</i>	Rentraire	<i>to fine-draw.</i>
Attraire	<i>to allure.</i>	Retraire	<i>to redeem (an estate).</i>
Distraire	<i>to distract, to divert.</i>	Soustraire	<i>to subtract; to shelter.</i>
Extraire	<i>to extract.</i>		

Obs. **Attraire** is seldom used, even in the Present Infinitive.

§ 437. **TRANSCRIRE** (L. transcribere), *to transcribe.*

Transcrivant, transcrit, je transcris, je transcrivis (see **écrire**, § 385).

§ 438. **VAINCRE** (L. vincere), *to conquer.*

Vainquant (whence IMP. IND. je **vainquais**), **vaincu.**

IND.	{ je vaines	nous vainquons ,	}	whence IMPERAT.	{ vaines , vainquons , vainquez .
PRES.	{ tu vaines il vainc	vous vainquez , ils vainquent .			
PRET.	je vainquis , etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je vainquisse , etc.
FUT.	je vaincras , etc.			COND.	je vaincrais , etc.
SUBJ.	{ que je vainque	que tu vainques			qu'il vainque ,
PRES.	{ que nous vainquions	que vous vainquiez			qu'ils vainquent .

Obs. Notice the change of c into qu before a vowel, except in the Past Participle.

Conjugate thus—**convaincre**, *to convince.*

§ 439.

VIVRE (L. *vivere*), *to live*.

Vivant (whence IMP. IND. *je vivais*), *vécu*.

IND.	{	je vis	nous vivons,	}	whence	{	vis,
PRES.		tu vis	vous vivez,		IMPERAT.		vivons,
		il vit	ils vivent.				vivez.
PRET.		je vécus, etc.			IMP. SUBJ.	que je vécusse, etc.	
FUT.		je vivrai, etc.			COND.	je vivrais, etc.	
SUBJ.	{	que je vive		que tu vives		qu'il vive,	
PRES.		que nous vivions		que vous viviez		qu'ils vivent.	

Conjugate thus—*revivre*, *to revive* (intrans.); *survivre à*, *to survive*.

O.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS WITH NOUNS.

§ 440. PRELIMINARY REMARKS.—A verb cannot have two direct objects :

Il enseignait l'histoire à son élève. *He taught his pupil history.*

Obs. 1. It stands to reason that this rule does not apply to composite objects :

Dieu créa le ciel et la terre. *God created heaven and earth.*

Obs. 2. The verbs *croire* (= *to believe*), *créer* (= *to create*), *déclarer* (= *to declare*), *élire* (= *to elect*), *nommer* (= *to appoint*), *faire* (= *to make*), and the like, may govern two accusatives in apposition :

Tout le monde les croyait artistes. *Every one thought they were artists.*

Ils firent les deux frères tribuns. *They made the two brothers tribunes.*

§ 441. Two or more verbs can govern the same noun if they all require a direct object, or an indirect object marked by the same preposition :

Nous avons vu et entendu votre chanteur favori. *We have seen and heard your favourite singer.*

(Both *voir* and *entendre* govern the accusative.)

Il survécut et succéda à son cousin. *He outlived and succeeded his cousin.*

(Both *survivre* and *succéder* govern the dative.)

§ 442. But if one verb is transitive and the other intransitive, or if, both being intransitive, they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter :

J'ai appris votre succès et je m'en réjouis.

I have heard of, and rejoice at, your success.

Qui n'aimerait un tel homme et ne se fierait à lui?

Who would not love and trust such a man?

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 204-210.)

§ 443. VERBS GOVERNING A NOUN WITHOUT A PREPOSITION (ACCUSATIVE).¹—The noun-object stands without a preposition after—

(1) All essentially transitive verbs :

J'ai fini **mon travail**.

I have finished my work.

Entendez-vous **les cloches**?

Do you hear the bells?

(2) Intransitive verbs accidentally used with a *transitive* force :

Courir **le cerf**.

To hunt the stag.

Obs. Some verbs which in English require a preposition before the noun do not require any in French :

Accepter	<i>to accept of.</i>
Admettre	<i>to admit of.</i>
Approuver	<i>to approve of.</i>
Attendre	<i>to wait for.</i>
Chercher	<i>to look for.</i>
Demander	<i>to ask for.</i>
Désirer, souhaiter	<i>to wish for.</i>

Écouter	<i>to listen to.</i>
Envoyer chercher	<i>to send for.</i>
Espérer	<i>to hope for.</i>
Fournir	<i>to supply with.</i>
Payer	<i>to pay for.</i>
Regarder	<i>to look at.</i>
Rencontrer	<i>to meet with, etc.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Je n'approuve pas **sa conduite**.

I do not approve of his conduct.

N'écoutez pas **cet homme**.

Do not listen to that man.

Avez-vous envoyé chercher **vos bagages**?

Did you send for your luggage?

Nous regardions **les vagues**.

We were looking at the waves.

¹ This and the two following sections are given almost entirely as they stand in the *Syntax*, not only on account of the importance of the subject, but also for the sake of the vocabulary.

§ 444. VERBS GOVERNING AN INDIRECT OBJECT WITH *à* (DATIVE).—The indirect complement is marked by the preposition *à* chiefly when it denotes—

(1) The object to which something is given or refused, after *donner* (=to give), *pardonner* (=to forgive), *dire* (=to say), *enseigner*, *apprendre* (=to teach), *conseiller* (=to advise), *commander*, *ordonner* (=to command), *obéir* (=to obey), *montrer* (=to show), *permettre* (=to permit), *plaire* (=to please), *se fier* (=to trust), *refuser* (=to refuse), *résister* (=to resist), *nuire* (=to hurt), etc. :

Le prince pardonna **aux** coupables.

The prince forgave the culprits.

Ne vous fiez pas **à** ce flatteur.

Do not trust that flatterer.

Il résista **à** toutes les prières.

He resisted all entreaties.

Sa réponse ne plut pas **à** la cour.

His answer did not please the court.

Il ne faut nuire **à** personne.

We should harm no one.

(2) The object to which something *belongs*, after *appartenir* (=to belong), *avoir*, *être*, and often in speaking of the parts of the body to translate the English possessive case :

Ces livres **appartiennent** or **sont à** mon frère.

These books belong to my brother.

A-t-il une maison **à** lui?

Has he a house of his own?

Une balle cassa la jambe **à** son cheval.

A bullet broke his horse's leg.

(3) The object from which something is *asked* or *taken*, after *demander* (=to ask), *acheter* (=to buy), *emprunter* (=to borrow), *prendre* (=to take), *voler* (=to steal), etc. :

Il demanda une audience **au** roi.

He asked for an audience from the king.

Le malheureux empruntait **à** tous ses amis.

The poor fellow borrowed from all his friends.

Ôtez ce couteau **à** cet enfant.

Take away this knife from this child.

(4) The object to which the action of the verb *tends*, after *aspirer*, *viser* (=to aim), *penser*, *songer* (=to think), *exhorter* (=to exhort), *encourager* (=to encourage), *exciter* (=to excite), *pousser* (=to urge), *employer* (=to employ), *occuper* (=to occupy), *pourvoir* (=to provide), *répondre* (=to answer), *comparer* (=to compare), etc. :

Le peuple aspirait **à** la liberté.

The people aspired to liberty.

Inclinez son cœur **à** la clémence.

Incline his heart to clemency.

Je pensais **à** autre chose.

I was thinking of something else.

Il est parvenu **à** ses fins.

He has reached his aim.

Qui pourvoit (or subvient) **à** ses besoins?

Who provides for his wants?

Quand répondrez-vous **à** cette lettre?

When will you answer that letter?

§ 442. But if one verb is transitive and the other intransitive, or if, both being intransitive, they require different prepositions, a pronoun is used with the latter :

J'ai appris votre succès et je m'en réjouis.

I have heard of, and rejoice at, your success.

Qui n'aimerait un tel homme et ne se fierait à lui?

Who would not love and trust such a man?

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 204-210.)

§ 443. VERBS GOVERNING A NOUN WITHOUT A PREPOSITION (ACCUSATIVE).¹—The noun-object stands without a preposition after—

(1) All essentially transitive verbs :

J'ai fini **mon travail**.

I have finished my work.

Entendez-vous **les cloches**?

Do you hear the bells?

(2) Intransitive verbs accidentally used with a *transitive* force :

Courir **le cerf**.

To hunt the stag.

Obs. Some verbs which in English require a preposition before the noun do not require any in French :

Accepter	<i>to accept of.</i>
Admettre	<i>to admit of.</i>
Approuver	<i>to approve of.</i>
Attendre	<i>to wait for.</i>
Chercher	<i>to look for.</i>
Demander	<i>to ask for.</i>
Désirer, sou-	<i>to wish for.</i>
haïter	

Écouter	<i>to listen to.</i>
Envoyer cher-	<i>to send for.</i>
cher	
Espérer	<i>to hope for.</i>
Fournir	<i>to supply with.</i>
Payer	<i>to pay for.</i>
Regarder	<i>to look at.</i>
Rencontrer	<i>to meet with, etc.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Je n'approuve pas **sa conduite**.

I do not approve of his conduct.

N'écoutez pas **cet homme**.

Do not listen to that man.

Avez-vous envoyé chercher **vos bagages**?

Did you send for your luggage?

Nous regardions **les vagues**.

We were looking at the waves.

¹ This and the two following sections are given almost entirely as they stand in the *Syntax*, not only on account of the importance of the subject, but also for the sake of the vocabulary.

§ 444. VERBS GOVERNING AN INDIRECT OBJECT WITH *à* (DATIVE).—The indirect complement is marked by the preposition *à* chiefly when it denotes—

(1) The object to which something is given or refused, after *donner* (=to give), *pardonner* (=to forgive), *dire* (=to say), *enseigner*, *apprendre* (=to teach), *conseiller* (=to advise), *commander*, *ordonner* (=to command), *obéir* (=to obey), *montrer* (=to show), *permettre* (=to permit), *plaire* (=to please), *se fier* (=to trust), *refuser* (=to refuse), *résister* (=to resist), *nuire* (=to hurt), etc. :

Le prince pardonna **aux** coupables.

The prince forgave the culprits.

Ne vous fiez pas **à** ce flatteur.

Do not trust that flatterer.

Il résista **à** toutes les prières.

He resisted all entreaties.

Sa réponse ne plut pas **à** la cour.

His answer did not please the court.

Il ne faut nuire **à** personne.

We should harm no one.

(2) The object to which something *belongs*, after *appartenir* (=to belong), *avoir*, *être*, and often in speaking of the parts of the body to translate the English possessive case :

Ces livres appartiennent **or** sont **à** mon frère.

These books belong to my brother.

A-t-il une maison **à** lui?

Has he a house of his own?

Une balle cassa la jambe **à** son cheval.

A bullet broke his horse's leg.

(3) The object from which something is *asked* or *taken*, after *demander* (=to ask), *acheter* (=to buy), *emprunter* (=to borrow), *prendre* (=to take), *voler* (=to steal), etc. :

Il demanda une audience **au** roi.

He asked for an audience from the king.

Le malheureux empruntait **à** tous ses amis.

The poor fellow borrowed from all his friends.

Ôtez ce couteau **à** cet enfant.

Take away this knife from this child.

(4) The object to which the action of the verb *tends*, after *aspirer*, *viser* (=to aim), *penser*, *songer* (=to think), *exhorter* (=to exhort), *encourager* (=to encourage), *exciter* (=to excite), *pousser* (=to urge), *employer* (=to employ), *occuper* (=to occupy), *pourvoir* (=to provide), *répondre* (=to answer), *comparer* (=to compare), etc. :

Le peuple aspirait **à** la liberté.

The people aspired to liberty.

Inclinez son cœur **à** la clémence.

Incline his heart to clemency.

Je pensais **à** autre chose.

I was thinking of something else.

Il est parvenu **à** ses fins.

He has reached his aim.

Qui pourvoit (or subvient) **à** ses besoins?

Who provides for his wants?

Quand répondrez-vous **à** cette lettre?

When will you answer that letter?

Obs. Amongst the verbs which require à, but do not govern the corresponding preposition in English, the following should also be noticed :

Aller à	}	<i>to fit, to suit.</i>	Présider à	<i>to preside over.</i>
Convenir à			Remédier à	<i>to remedy.</i>
Compâtrir à		<i>to sympathise with.</i>	Renoncer à	<i>to give up.</i>
Importer à		<i>to concern.</i>	Ressembler à	<i>to resemble.</i>
Obvier à		<i>to obviate.</i>	Survivre à	<i>to survive.</i>

§ 445. VERBS GOVERNING AN INDIRECT OBJECT WITH *de* (GENITIVE).
—The indirect complement is marked by the preposition *de* chiefly when denoting—

(1) *Origin, extraction, after—*

Aller (=to go), **arriver** (=to arrive), **dériver** (=to derive), **descendre** (=to descend), **monter** (=to ascend), **partir** (=to start), **sortir** (=to go out), **venir** (=to come), etc., expressing motion from ; **être** expressing authorship ; **exiger** (=to exact), **obtenir** (=to obtain), **recevoir** (=to receive), etc. :

Nous arrivons d' Italie.	<i>We arrive from Italy.</i>
Il n'était jamais sorti de son village.	<i>He had never left his village.</i>
La tragédie de Cinna est de Corneille.	<i>The tragedy of Cinna is by Corneille.</i>
Vous exigez trop de lui.	<i>You exact too much from him.</i>
Il obtint sa grâce du roi.	<i>He obtained his pardon from the king.</i>

(2) *Separation, difference, nearness, after—*

Approcher (=to approach), **décourager** (=to discourage), **détacher** (=to detach), **détourner** (=to deter), **différer** (=to differ), **dissuader** (=to dissuade), **distinguer** (=to distinguish), **éloigner** (=to remove), **séparer** (=to separate), etc. :

Approchez-vous du feu.	<i>Come nearer to the fire.</i>
Les mauvais exemples détournent de la vertu.	<i>Evil examples are discouragements to virtue.</i>
Ma position diffère beaucoup de la sienne.	<i>My position is very different from his.</i>
Pouvez-vous distinguer l'un de l'autre ?	<i>Can you distinguish one from the other ?</i>
Il nous fallut le séparer de ses compagnons.	<i>We were obliged to separate him from his companions.</i>

(3) *Protection, relief, deliverance, after—*

Abriter (=to shelter), **débarrasser** (=to rid), **décharger** (=to unload, to discharge), **défendre** (=to defend), **dégager** (=to free), **délivrer** (=to release),

délivrer (=to deliver), dispenser (=to dispense), garantir (=to shield), libérer (=to liberate), préserver (=to preserve), protéger (=to protect), sauver (=to save), etc. :

C'est ainsi qu'il se débarrassa de ses ennemis.

Thus he got rid of his enemies.

Le pape les délia de leur serment.

The Pope released them from their oath.

Je vous dispense de cette corvée.

I exempt you from this task.

Le ciel nous préserve d'un pareil malheur !

May Heaven preserve us from such a misfortune !

(4) *Scarcity, want, deprivation, after—*

S'abstenir (=to abstain), avoir besoin (=to want), être à court (=to be short), manquer (=to lack), se passer de (=to do without), dépouiller (=to strip), priver (=to deprive), etc. :

Nous sommes à court d'argent.

We are short of money.

Il ne manque de rien.

He lacks nothing.

Elle ne peut se passer de lui.

She cannot do without him.

(5) *Plenty, fulness, contents, material, after—*

Abreuver (=to steep), accabler (=to overwhelm), armer (=to arm), charger (=to load), combler (=to overwhelm), couvrir (=to cover), écraser (=to crush), entourer, envelopper, environner (=to surround), fourmiller (=to swarm), grever (=to burden), munir (=to furnish), orner, parer (=to adorn), planter (=to plant), pourvoir (=to provide), regorger (=to overflow), remplir (=to fill), semer (=to sow), tapisser (=to hang, to deck), vêtir (=to clothe), etc. :

La foule l'abreuva (or l'accabla) d'injures.

The crowd overwhelmed him with insults.

Armez-vous de courage.

Arm yourself with courage.

Nous étions entourés d'ennemis.

We were surrounded by enemies.

La terre fourmille de vie.

The earth is teeming with life.

Toutes les rues sont plantées de grands arbres.

All the streets are planted with large trees.

Il avait tapissé sa chambre de dessins.

He had hung his room with drawings.

(6) *Cause, manner, instrument,—also the agent after passive verbs expressing moral feeling, as aimer, détester, estimer, and the three verbs accompagner, précéder, suivre :*

Le pauvre enfant tremblait de froid.

The poor child was trembling with cold.

Il les examina d'un œil sévère.

He examined them with a stern look.

De quel instrument jouez-vous ?

What instrument do you play ?

Il était estimé de tout le monde.

He was esteemed by everybody.

Le prisonnier entra, accompagné de son geôlier.

The prisoner entered, accompanied by his gaoler.

(7) *Joy, sorrow, fear, surprise, and other emotions, after—*

S'affliger (=to grieve), **avoir peur** (=to fear), **avoir pitié** (=to pity), **brûler** (=to burn), **se contenter** (=to be satisfied), **se désoler** (=to be distressed), **gémir** (=to groan), **jouer** (=to enjoy), **s'inquiéter** (=to be concerned), **se lamenter** (=to lament), **se plaindre** (=to complain), **se réjouir** (=to rejoice), **se repentir** (=to repent), **trembler** (=to tremble), etc. :

Il s'affligeait des malheurs de son pays.

He was grieved at the misfortunes of his country.

Il faut vous contenter de peu.

You must be satisfied with little.

Rome jouissait alors de la liberté.

Rome was then enjoying liberty.

Je me réjouis de votre succès.

I rejoice at your success.

Se repent-il de ses fautes?

Does he repent of his faults?

(8) *Thanks, praise, congratulation, reward, blame, accusation, threat, punishment, etc., after—*

Accuser (=to accuse), **blâmer** (=to blame), **complimenter** (=to compliment), **dédommager**, **indemniser** (=to indemnify), **féliciter** (=to congratulate), **se glorifier** (=to glory), **louer** (=to praise), **menacer** (=to threaten), **payer** (=to pay), **punir** (=to punish), **récompenser** (=to reward), **remercier** (=to thank), **se vanter** (=to boast), etc. :

Ses ennemis l'accusèrent de magie.

His enemies accused him of witchcraft.

Qui m'indemniserà de mes pertes?

Who will indemnify me for my losses?

Le roi le félicita de cette brillante victoire.

The king congratulated him on this brilliant victory.

Il nous menaça de sa colère.

He threatened us with his anger.

Je vous remercie de toute votre bonté.

I thank you for all your kindness.

Obs. Amongst the verbs which require *de*, but do not govern a corresponding preposition in English (*i.e.* *of* or *from*), the following should also be noticed:—

Abuser de	to abuse.	Médire de	to slander.
S'acquitter de	to discharge.	Se mêler de	to meddle with.
S'apercevoir de	to perceive.	Se moquer de	} to laugh at.
Se défier de	} to distrust.	Rire de	
Se méfier de		Se nourrir de	} to feed on.
Déjeuner de	to breakfast on.	Se repaître de	
Se démettre de	to give up.	Profiter de	to profit by.
Dépendre de	to depend on.	Se souvenir de	to remember.
Dîner de	to dine on.	Triompher de	to triumph over.
Disconvenir de	to disown, to deny.	Se tromper de	to mistake.
Douter de	to doubt.	User de	to use.
Se douter de	to suspect.	Vivre de	to live on.

P.—PRINCIPAL RULES ON MOOD AND TENSES.

§ 446. GENERAL OBSERVATION.—In English there are different ways of expressing the same tense ; in French there is only ONE :

J'aime.	<i>I am loving ; I love ; I do love.</i>
J'écrivais.	<i>I was writing ; I wrote ; I used to write ; I did write.</i>
Avoir ri.	<i>To have laughed ; to have been laughing.</i>

Obs. The Past Conditional, however, has two forms, the second being borrowed from the Pluperfect Subjunctive :

J'aurais aimé.	}	<i>I should have loved.</i>
J'eusse aimé.		

I.—Use of the Tenses of the Indicative.

§ 447. PRESENT.—The Present is generally used in French as in English :

Je vois que vous vous amusez.	<i>I see that you are enjoying yourself.</i>
-------------------------------	--

Obs. 1. The Present must be used instead of the English *Present Perfect* when the state or action expressed by the verb is still going on (with *depuis*, *depuis que*, *depuis quand*, *il y a . . . que*, *voici . . . que*, *voilà . . . que*) :

Depuis quand demeurez-vous ici ?	<i>How long have you been living here ?</i>
J'y demeure depuis six mois.	<i>I have been living here for six months.</i>
Il y a vingt ans que nous le connaissons.	} <i>We have known him for twenty years.</i>
Nous le connaissons depuis vingt ans.	

Obs. 2. The Present must generally be used instead of the Future after the conjunction *si* meaning *if* :

Nous serons tous enchantés si vous venez.	<i>We shall all be delighted if you will come.</i>
---	--

Obs. 3. For Future instead of Present, see § 453.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 218 and 219.)

§ 448. IMPERFECT.—The English forms “*I was loving*,” “*I used to love*,” are always rendered in French by the Imperfect (*j’aimais*), but the French Imperfect often corresponds, besides, to the forms “*I did love*,” “*I loved*.”

It is chiefly used—

(1) For a state or action which had already begun when something else came to pass :

Il pleuvait quand il est parti, *It was raining* when he went away,

or for two or more states or actions occurring simultaneously at some past time :

J’étais à Paris pendant que vous *étiez* à Londres. *I was in Paris whilst you were in London.*

(2) For a state or action of habitual or repeated occurrence in the past :

Les perles étaient fort estimées *Pearls were greatly valued by the Romans.*

Il se levait tous les matins à six heures. *He got up every morning at six.*

(3) To describe the nature, condition, and qualities of persons or things at some past time :

Il avait l’air noble et sévère. *He had a noble and severe countenance.*

À droite s’élevait une haute montagne. *To the right rose a high mountain.*

(4) To explain and comment upon the principal events of a narrative :

Comme les vivres *manquaient*, *As they were short of provisions, they*
il leur fallut se rendre. *were compelled to surrender.*

(5) To report thoughts or words relating to some past time, in indirect statements :

Nous crûmes que tout *était* perdu. *We thought that everything was lost.*

Il me salua et me demanda comment j’allais. *He saluted me and asked me how I was.*

Obs. The Imperfect is further used—

[a] Instead of the Pluperfect, when the state or action expressed by the verb was still going on at the time spoken of (with *depuis*, *depuis que*, *depuis quand*, *il y avait* . . . *que*, *voilà* . . . *que*) :

Depuis quand m’attendiez-vous lorsque je suis arrivé? *How long had you been waiting for me when I arrived?*

Je vous attendais depuis une heure.

Il y avait une heure *que* je vous attendais.

I had been waiting for you for an hour.

[b] Instead of the Conditional, to express a condition or supposition after **si**, depending on a verb in the Conditional :

Il pourrait le faire, **s'il voulait**. *He could do it, if he would.*

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 220 and 221.)

§ 449. PRETERITE or PAST DEFINITE.—The Preterite or Past Definite denotes something altogether completed at a time entirely over, and generally far distant. It is used—

(1) For an action considered in a purely historical point of view :

Henri IV **fut** assassiné. *Henry IV. was murdered.*

(2) For all events which bring the narrative nearer to its close, *i.e.* which came to pass whilst something else was already going on :

Il songeait déjà à partir, lorsqu'il nous **aperçut**, *He was already thinking of going away when he caught sight of us,*

or after something else had occurred :

Quand les vivres manquèrent, il leur **fallut** bien se rendre. *When they were short of provisions, they could not but surrender.*

(See *Syntax*, § 222.)

§ 450. PAST INDEFINITE.—The Past Indefinite denotes something altogether completed (*a*) in a period not entirely over at the time of speaking :

Je **me suis levé** à six heures ce matin, *I got up at six this morning,*

Il **a** beaucoup **plu** cette semaine, ce mois-ci, cet été, cette année, *It has rained a good deal this week, this month, this summer, this year,*

(*b*) or entirely over, and even far distant, in *conversation* and *correspondence* (in which it is generally used instead of the Preterite) :

Je **les ai vus** pour la première fois il **y a eu** hier vingt ans. *I saw them for the first time twenty years ago yesterday.*

Obs. It follows from what precedes that the Imperfect may be called the descriptive, the Preterite the historical, and the Past Indefinite the colloquial, past tense.

(See *Syntax*, §§ 223 and 224.)

§ 451. PLUPERFECT.—The use of the Pluperfect is generally the same in French as in English :

Il n'**avait** pas encore **commencé**
que j'**avais** déjà **fini**.

*He had not yet begun when I had already
finished.*

Obs. The English Pluperfect, however, is sometimes rendered in French by the Imperfect (see § 448, *Obs.*), and sometimes by the Past Anterior (see § 452).

§ 452. PAST ANTERIOR.—The Past Anterior is chiefly used, instead of the pluperfect, after the conjunctions of time *à peine . . . que, aussitôt que, dès que, ne . . . pas, plus tôt . . . que, après que, quand, lorsque*, to denote an action which had taken place *immediately* before another :

À peine nous **eut-il** **vus** qu'il
s'enfuit.

*He had scarcely seen us when he ran
away.*

Obs. When the action was habitual or repeated, the Pluperfect should, however, be used :

À peine nous **avait-il** **vus** qu'il
s'enfuyait.

*He had no sooner seen us than he used to
run away.*

(See *Syntax*, § 226.)

§ 453. FUTURE (PRESENT AND PAST).—The use of the Future (present and past) is generally the same as in English :

Nous vous **attendrons** jusqu'à
une heure.

We will wait for you till one o'clock.

Il **sera** **parti** avant que vous
ayez fini.

He will be gone before you have finished.

Obs. 1. The Future (present or past) is, however, used in French, when the verb denotes a future action, to render the English Present or Perfect—

[a] After conjunctions of time (except, of course, such as govern the subjunctive) :

Je lui en parlerai **quand** je le
verrai.

I will speak of it to him when I see him.

[b] After *comme, aussi (si, plus, moins) . . . que, qui, que, dont, celui qui, ce qui, etc.* :

Faites **comme** il vous **dira**.

Do as he tells you.

Nous prendrons **ce** qu'il y **aura**.

We will take whatever there is.

Obs. 2. It has been stated already that the **Present**, not the **Future**, is generally used after **si** meaning *if* (see § 447, *Obs. 2*).

Obs. 3. It is obvious that, when the auxiliary *will* does not express futurity, but an act of the will or a habit, the **Present**, not the **Future**, should likewise be used in French :

Voulez-vous venir avec nous ?

Will you come with us ?

Si je parle, il m'**interrompt**
toujours.

If I speak, he **will** always interrupt
me.

(See *Syntax*, § 227.)

II.—The Conditional.

§ 454. The Conditional is chiefly used to denote—

(1) An action which would take place (or would have taken place), if a condition, expressed or understood, was (or had been) fulfilled—

[a] In principal sentences :

Il **serait** ministre, s'il voulait.

He *would* be a minister, if he chose.

Il **aurait été** ministre, s'il avait
voulu.

He *would* have been a minister, if he had
chosen.

[b] In dependent clauses, provided the Subjunctive is not required :

Je savais que vous **seriez** dés-
appointé, si vous appreniez son
départ.

I knew you *would* be disappointed, if you
heard of his departure.

Notice especially the use of the Conditional, contrary to English custom, after **conjunctions of time**, and after **comme, qui, que, dont, celui qui, etc., ce qui, etc.** :

Vous auriez fait **comme** vous
auriez voulu.

You *would* have done as you liked.

Vous prendriez **ce qui** resterait.

You *would* take what remained.

(2) A future action, not subject to any condition, after the verbs **croire, penser, dire, affirmer, décréter, savoir, etc.**, in a past tense, provided the Subjunctive is not required :

Il avait dit qu'il ne **viendrait**
pas.

He had said that he *would* not come.

(3) A doubt with regard to a future action, after the conjunction **si** (= *whether*) governed by a verb in a past tense :

Saviez-vous s'il **viendrait** ?

Did you know *whether* he *would* come ?

Obs. 1. Would and should must often be translated by the Subjunctive (see rules on that Mood).

Obs. 2. Should, when implying obligation, and *ought*, are translated by the Present or Past Conditional of **devoir**, according as they are followed by a Present or Past Infinitive :

Vous **devriez** le faire.

You ought to (or should) do it.

Vous **auriez dû** le faire.

You ought to (or should) have done it.

[*Might and could* are likewise rendered by the Present or Past Conditional of **pouvoir** :

Vous **pourriez** venir.

You might come.

Vous **auriez pu** venir.

You might have come.]

Obs. 3. Would, when not the sign of the Conditional, is rendered by the Imperfect of the verb or sometimes of **vouloir**, if it denotes habit or repetition :

Si je parlais, il m'**interrompait**
toujours,

If I spoke, he would always interrupt me,

La porte ne **voulait** pas fermer,

The door would not shut,

and by the Imperfect, Preterite, or Past Indefinite (as the case may be) of **vouloir**, if it expresses an act of the will :

Il était fâché, mais ne **voulait**
pas le paraître.

He was angry, but would not appear so.

Je l'appelai, mais il ne **voulut**
pas venir.

I called him, but he would not come.

Je l'ai appelé, mais il n'a pas
voulu venir.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 228-231.)

III.—The Imperative.

§ 455. The use of the Imperative is generally the same in French as in English:

Frappe, mais écoute.

Strike, but listen.

Allons-nous-en tout de suite.

Let us go away directly.

Ayez fini quand je reviendrai.

Have done when I return.

(See *Syntax*, § 232.)

IV.—The Subjunctive.

§ 456. GENERAL RULE.—Contrary to the Indicative, which, as a rule, states a fact in a positive and absolute manner, the Subjunctive generally expresses a mere opinion or feeling. Hence it may be broadly said that the Indicative denotes *certainty*, whilst the Subjunctive conveys an idea of *doubt*.

SPECIAL RULES.—CASES IN WHICH THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR INDICATIVE MAY BE USED ACCORDING TO THE MEANING.

(a) SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

§ 457. The Subjunctive is required, *provided there is real doubt or uncertainty*, after the conjunction *que* in a substantival clause depending on an expression used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, or preceded by *si* (=if), even though the same expression should otherwise govern the Indicative.

So with the Indicative:

Je crois qu'il partira.

I think that he will start.

But with the Subjunctive:

Je ne crois pas qu'il parte.

I do not think that he will start.

Croyez-vous qu'il parte?

Do you think that he will start?

Si je croyais qu'il partirait,
j'irais le voir tout de suite.

*If I thought that he would start, I should
go and see him at once.*

Obs. As certainty or very high probability is generally implied when a verb is used *interrogatively* and *negatively together*, the Indicative is, as a rule, required in such a case (unless the verb governs the Subjunctive when used affirmatively):

Ne croyez-vous pas qu'il
partira?

Do you not think that he will start?

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 233-236.)

(b) ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

§ 458. The Subjunctive is used after a relative pronoun in an Adjectival clause having a *consecutive*, *final*, or *concessive* force, *i.e.* depending on—

(1) A *negative* statement bearing upon the *dependent* verb:

Nous n'avons pas de lettre qui
vous soit adressée.

We have not any letter addressed to you.

Il y a ici peu de gens que je
connaisse.

There are few people here that I know.

(2) An *interrogative* or *conditional* statement, or any word implying *purpose, wish, expectation, command, advice, etc.*, which gives to the Adjectival clause a character of *uncertainty*:

Avez-vous un livre où cette question **soit** traitée?

Have you got a book in which this question is treated?

Indiquez-moi un chemin qui **conduise** à la ville.

Show me **any** road which leads to the town.

(3) A *superlative*, an *ordinal number*, or an *exclusive expression* like *le seul, l'unique, ne . . . que*, when the statement is presented as a mere matter of *opinion*, or meant to convey an idea of *surprise, joy, indignation, etc.*, and whenever the speaker wishes to *attenuate* his assertion, even though he should look upon the fact as certain:

Victor Hugo est le plus grand écrivain qu'**ait** produit notre siècle.

Victor Hugo is (**I think**) the greatest writer our age has produced.

C'est le dernier ouvrage que nous **songions** à lire.

It is the last work we **should ever think** of reading.

Obs. The Indicative (or Conditional) should be used whenever the Adjectival clause has a mere *attributive* or *descriptive* meaning, *i.e.* when the statement is made in a *positive* and *absolute* manner, not admitting of contradiction:

Nous n'avons pas la lettre qui vous **est** adressée.

We have **not the** letter addressed to you.

Indiquez-moi le chemin qui **conduit** à la ville.

Show me **the** road which leads to the town.

Victor Hugo est le plus grand écrivain qu'**a** produit notre siècle.

Victor Hugo is (**beyond doubt**) the greatest writer our age has produced.

C'est le dernier ouvrage que nous **songeons** à lire.

It is the last work we are (**actually**) thinking of reading.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, § 237.)

(c) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

§ 459. The Subjunctive is used in Adverbial clauses introduced by *que* standing instead of any conjunction which governs the Subjunctive, or instead of *si*:

Quoiqu'il le veuille et **que** nous le **voulions** aussi . . .

Although he wishes it and we wish it too . . .

S'il vient et **que** je **sois** sorti . . .

If he comes and I am out . . .

The Indicative, on the contrary, is used when **que** stands instead of any conjunction—except **si**—which governs the Indicative :

Puisqu'il le veut et **que** nous le voulons aussi . . . *Since he wishes it and we wish it too . . .*

(For other conjunctions requiring sometimes the Subjunctive and sometimes the Indicative, see chapter of Conjunctions, and *Syntax*, §§ 238 and 240.)

CASES IN WHICH THE SUBJUNCTIVE ALONE IS USED.

(a) SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

§ 460. The Subjunctive is used after the conjunction **que** in a substantival clause depending on—

(1) An expression denoting *denial* or *doubt* ; as,

Contester (=to contest), **disconvenir**, **nier** (=to deny), **douter** (=to doubt), **il est douteux** (=it is doubtful), **mettre** or **révoquer en doute** (=to call in question) :

Je nie que ce **soit** vrai. *I deny that it is true.*
Je doute que vous **arriviez** à temps. *I doubt whether you will arrive in time.*

Obs. 1. The Subjunctive is *not* used, in an *affirmative* sentence, after verbs of *thinking* and the impersonal verbs and expressions **il paraît**, **il y a apparence** (=it appears), **il m'est avis** (=methinks), **il est probable** (=it is likely), although they imply a certain degree of doubt :

Je crois	} que ce n'est pas vrai.	<i>I believe</i>	} that it is not true.
Je pense		<i>I think</i>	
Je me doute		<i>I surmise</i>	
Il paraît		<i>It appears</i>	
Il est probable		<i>It is likely</i>	

Obs. 2. **Il semble** requires also the Indicative when the following statement is presented as certain or very likely (which is almost always the case when it has an indirect object) :

Il **me** semblait que nous **étions** perdus. *It seemed to me that we were lost.*

(2) An expression denoting *prayer*, *counsel*, *command*, *prohibition*, *impediment*, *consent*, *approval*, *blame*, *avoidance*, *merit*, *want*, *request*, *necessity* ; as,

Prier, **conjur**er, **supplier** (=to beg, to beseech), **conseiller** (=to advise), **commander**, **ordonner**, **enjoindre** (=to order), **défendre**, **interdire** (=to forbid), **empêcher**, **prévenir** (=to prevent), **consentir** (=to consent), **per-**

mettre (=to permit), accorder (=to grant), refuser (=to refuse), approuver (=to approve), juger à propos, trouver bon (=to think fit), trouver mauvais (=to take it ill), désapprouver (=to disapprove), éviter (=to avoid), mériter (=to deserve), valoir (=to be worth), être digne (=to be worthy), avoir besoin (=to want), demander (=to ask), exiger (=to exact), requérir (=to require) :

Il ordonna qu'on déliât le prisonnier.	He ordered that the prisoner should be unbound.
Le roi permit qu'on ouvrit les portes.	The king allowed the gates to be opened.
Il mérite que vous le respectiez.	He deserves that you should respect him.
Je demande que tout le monde se taise.	I ask every one to be silent.

(3) An expression denoting an emotion or feeling of the mind (wish, joy, sorrow, disgust, indignation, regret, fear, surprise, etc.) ; as,

Vouloir, désirer, souhaiter (=to wish), se réjouir (=to rejoice), s'affliger (=to grieve), s'inquiéter (=to fret), se soucier (=to care), s'indigner (=to be indignant), regretter (=to regret), craindre, appréhender (=to fear), trembler (=to tremble), s'étonner (=to be astonished), admirer (=to admire), avoir envie (=to wish), avoir honte (=to be ashamed), avoir peur (=to be afraid), être fâché (=to be sorry), être bien aise, content, heureux (=to be glad), etc. :

J'aurais voulu que vous fussiez avec nous.	I should have liked you to be with us.
Tous regrettèrent qu'il eût échoué.	All regretted that he had failed.
On craignait que les troupes ne refusassent de marcher.	It was feared that the troops might refuse to march.
Je suis surpris que personne n'y ait encore pensé.	I am surprised that no one should have yet thought of it.

Obs. 1. *Espérer* (=to hope) is the only verb expressing an emotion which does not govern the Subjunctive in an affirmative sentence :

J'espère que vous serez mieux demain.	I hope you will be better to-morrow.
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Obs. 2. It should be noticed that, when expressions belonging to the above class are followed by *de ce que* instead of *que*, the Subjunctive is generally replaced by the Indicative or Conditional :

Je suis ravi de ce que vous avez si bien réussi.	I am delighted you have succeeded so well.
--	--

(4) Impersonal verbs and expressions ; as,

Il convient, il sied, il est à propos, il est bon (=it is proper, it is fit) ; il faut, il est nécessaire, il est indispensable (=it is necessary, indispens-

able) ; il importe, il est important, essentiel (= *it is important, essential*) ; il se peut, il est possible, impossible (= *it may be, it is impossible*) ; il vaut mieux, il est préférable (= *it is better*) ; il est dommage (= *it is a pity*) ; il est temps (= *it is time*), etc. :

Il convient que vous alliez les voir.	<i>It is proper you should go and see them.</i>
Il se peut qu'il se soit trompé.	<i>It may be that he was mistaken.</i>
Il vaut mieux que vous ne disiez rien.	<i>It is better you should say nothing.</i>
Il est temps qu'il le sache.	<i>It is time he should know it.</i>
Il est juste qu'ils soient punis.	<i>It is just that they should be punished.</i>

Obs. The Subjunctive is not used, in an affirmative sentence, after *il arrive* (= *it happens*), *il résulte* (= *it results*), *il s'ensuit* (= *it follows*), and all impersonal expressions which denote *certainty* ; as,

Il est certain, sûr (= *it is certain, sure*), il est clair, évident (= *it is clear, evident*), il est incontestable (= *it is undeniable*), il est visible, vrai (= *it is visible, true*), etc. :

Il arrive parfois qu'il ne veut voir personne.	<i>It sometimes happens that he will not see any one.</i>
Il s'ensuit que vous avez tort.	<i>It follows that you are wrong.</i>
Il était clair qu'il s'était trompé.	<i>It was clear that he had made a mistake.</i>

(See also [1], *Obs.*)

(b) ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

§ 461. The Subjunctive is used in adjectival clauses with a concessive force,¹ i.e. introduced by *quelque . . . que* (= *however, whatever*), *quel que* (= *whoever, whichever*), *qui que*, *qui que ce soit qui* (= *whoever*), *quoi que*, *quoi que ce soit qui* (= *whatever*) :

Quelque glorieuse que soit la victoire . . .	<i>However glorious the victory may be . . .</i>
Quels que soient vos ordres, je suis prêt.	<i>Whatever your orders may be, I am ready.</i>
Qui que vous soyez, ne craignez rien.	<i>Whoever you may be, fear nothing.</i>
Il est perdu, quoi qu'il fasse.	<i>He is ruined, whatever he may do.</i>

¹ These clauses are sometimes classed with adverbial clauses.

(c) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

§ 462. For conjunctions always requiring the Subjunctive, see chapter of Conjunctions, and *Syntax*, § 246. Notice that—

(1) **Quoique** (= *although*) is the only conjunction written in one word which always governs the Subjunctive :

Quoiqu'il vienne . . .

Although he is coming . . .

(2) The Subjunctive is required after the three conjunctions which are always used with **ne** : **à moins que** (= *unless*), **de crainte que** and **de peur que** (= *lest, for fear that*) :

**À moins
De crainte
De peur** } **qu'il ne vienne.**

Unless he comes.

*Lest
For fear that* } *he should come.*

Independent use of the Subjunctive.

§ 463. The Subjunctive is sometimes used independently of any word expressed before, a wish or supposition being generally understood—

(1) With **que**, to express *command*, or in exclamations to denote *surprise, indignation*, etc. :

Qu'il revienne demain.

Let him come back to-morrow.

Moi, que je trahisse mon pays !

I, that I should betray my country !

(2) With or without **que**, to express a *wish, prayer, imprecation, concession, supposition* (generally without **que** in optative sentences) :

(Que) Dieu soit loué !

God be praised !

Plût au ciel qu'il fût ici !

Would to Heaven he were here !

Périsset sa mémoire !

May his memory perish !

Que l'ennemi vienne, } il s'enfuit.

If the enemy comes, he runs away.

Vienne l'ennemi,

(See *Syntax*, § 248.)

Tenses of the Subjunctive.

§ 464. The *Present Indicative* and *Future* of the principal verb are generally followed by the *Present Subjunctive* to express a *present* or *future* action or state :

Je ne **crois** pas qu'il soit cou-
pable,
Je ne **croirai** jamais qu'il réus-
sisse,

I do not believe that he is guilty,
I shall never believe that he will succeed,

and by the *Past Subjunctive* to express a *past* action or state :

Je ne **crois** }
pas } qu'il ait trahi
Je ne **croirai** }
jamais } son pays.

I do not believe }
I shall never believe } that he has be-
trayed his country.

§ 465. The *Past* tenses of the *Indicative* and the *Present* and *Past Conditional* of the principal verb are generally followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, to express a *present* or *future* action or state, or one which is *past*, but was not over at the time marked by the principal verb :

Je ne **croyais** pas }
Je ne **crus** pas } qu'il vous
Je n'ai pas **cru** } trom-
Je n'avais pas **cru** } pât,
Je ne **croirais** pas }
Je n'aurais pas **cru** }

I was not thinking }
I did not think } that he was deceiv-
I have not thought } ing you, that he
I had not thought } deceived you,
I should not think } or
I should not have } that he would de-
thought } ceive you,

and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, to express an action or state *already past before the time marked by the principal verb* :

Je ne **croyais** pas }
Je ne **crus** pas } qu'il vous
Je n'ai pas **cru** } eût
Je n'avais pas **cru** } trompé,
Je ne **croirais** pas }
Je n'aurais pas **cru** }

I was not thinking }
I did not think } that he had deceived
I have not thought } you,
I had not thought } or
I should not think } that he would have
I should not have } deceived you.
thought }

Obs. The *Past Indefinite*, however, is often followed by the *Present Subjunctive* to express a *present* or *future* action :

Il a retardé son départ pour que
je puisse le voir,

*He has put off his departure in order that
I may see him,*

and by the *Past Subjunctive*, to express an action which took place at a period not determined, or determined, but recent :

J'ai regretté qu'il **soit** jamais
venu.

*I have regretted that he should ever have
come.*

J'ai regretté qu'il **soit** venu
hier.

*I have regretted that he should have come
yesterday.*

(For other exceptions, see *Syntax*, §§ 250 and 251.)

V.—The Infinitive.

§ 466. The Infinitive is both a verbal noun and a mood.

Besides frequently corresponding to the English verbal form in *-ing* standing as subject, complement of the predicate or direct object, as—

Aimer, c'est souffrir,
Nous préférons lire,

*Loving is suffering,
We prefer reading,*

the French Infinitive, and not the Present Participle, must be used after a preposition (except *en*) :

Il joue **au lieu de** travailler.
Je ne puis le regarder **sans** rire.

*He plays instead of working.
I cannot look at him without laughing.*

(See *Syntax*, §§ 252-256.)

§ 467. The Infinitive is also used, as a rule, for the sake of conciseness, instead of the Indicative, Conditional, or Subjunctive, when the subject of the dependent clause and the subject of the principal sentence designate the same *person*—

(1) In substantival clauses :

Il croyait **rêver**.
Je voudrais bien **pouvoir** vous
accompagner.

*He thought he was dreaming.
I wish I could accompany you.*

(2) In adverbial clauses after—

Afin de
À moins de
Après
Avant de
De crainte
De peur de
De façon à
De manière à
En attendant de
Pour
Sans

used instead of

Afin que.
À moins que . . . ne.
Après que.
Avant que.
De crainte que . . . ne.
De peur que . . . ne.
De façon que.
De manière que.
En attendant que.
Pour que.
Sans que.

Je ne le croirai pas à moins de
le voir.

I shall not believe it unless I see it.

Après avoir lu la lettre, il me
la donna.

After he had read the letter, he gave it
to me.

Il faut que je lui parle avant de
partir.

I must speak to him before I go.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 257-263.)

§ 468. The Infinitive stands—

(1) Without any preposition, chiefly as subject :

Mourir pour la patrie, c'est le
sort le plus beau,

To die for one's country is the most glorious
fate,

as complement of the predicate after verbs denoting *manner of being*
(être, paraître, sembler, etc.) :

Aimer c'est souffrir.

Loving is suffering,

and after *valoir mieux*, *devoir*, *falloir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, *vouloir*, *faire*,
laisser, *oser*, verbs of *perceiving*, *preferring*, and generally verbs of
motion :

Il doit	} venir demain.
Il peut	
Il veut	
Il préfère	
Je l'ai fait	} sortir.
Je l'ai laissé	
Je l'ai vu	
Je l'ai entendu	

He is to	} come to-morrow.
He can	
He wishes to	
He prefers to	
I have made	} him go out.
I have let	
I have seen	
I have heard	

(2) Preceded by the preposition *de*, chiefly after most nouns and adjectives which require *de* before a noun :

Le désir de briller,

The wish to shine,

Le talent de plaire,

The talent of pleasing,

Il était { digne
fier } de commander,
las }

He was { worthy
proud } of commanding,
weary }

and after most verbs, especially the *impersonal*, and those expressing
feelings of the mind, *blame* or *praise*, *permission* or *refusal*, *promise*,
prayer, *advice*, *command* :

Il importe d'être vigilant.

It is important to be watchful.

Je crains de lui déplaire.

I am afraid of displeasing him.

Je vous permets	} de le faire.
Je vous prie	
Je vous conseille	
Je vous ordonne	

I allow	} you to do it.
I beg	
I advise	
I order	

(3) Preceded by the preposition *à*, chiefly after most nouns and adjectives which require *à* before a noun (to express *aptness, fitness, tendency, purpose, use*, etc.) :

Le penchant <i>à</i> rimer ,	<i>The inclination to rhyme,</i>
Des cartes <i>à</i> jouer ,	<i>Playing cards,</i>
Il est enclin <i>à</i> se vanter ,	<i>He is given to boasting,</i>

and after **aimer, apprendre, enseigner, montrer, donner, chercher, trouver, avoir**, and verbs denoting *aim, purpose, inclination, exhortation, employment, habit*, etc. :

Il aime	} <i>à</i> dessiner .	<i>He likes</i>	} <i>drawing.</i>
Il apprend		<i>He learns</i>	
Il cherche		<i>He tries</i>	} <i>to draw.</i>
Il a		<i>He has</i>	
Songez	} <i>à</i> vous corriger .	<i>Think of correcting</i>	} <i>yourself.</i>
Travaillez		<i>Strive to correct</i>	
Il les excita	} <i>à</i> se révolter .	<i>He excited</i>	} <i>them to revolt.</i>
Il les poussa		<i>He urged</i>	
Il les exhorta		<i>He exhorted</i>	

(4) Preceded by **pour**, chiefly in the sense of *in order to* :

Il faut manger pour vivre, et non pas vivre pour manger,	<i>We must eat to live, and not live to eat</i>
---	---

and to denote proportion, after **assez** and **trop** :

Je ne suis pas assez sot pour le croire.	<i>I am not foolish enough to believe it.</i>
Ils sont trop loin pour nous en- tendre.	<i>They are too far to hear us.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 264-273.)

VI.—The Present Participle.

§ 469. The Present Participle, which expresses an *action*, being always **invariable** in modern French, should be carefully distinguished from the verbal adjective, which denotes a *state* or *quality* and, like any other adjective, agrees in gender and number with its noun :

Des îles flottant vers le rivage.	<i>Islands floating towards the shore.</i>
But Des îles flottantes .	<i>Floating islands.</i>

(For details on the Present Participle, see *Syntax*, §§ 274-287.)

VII.—The Past Participle.

§ 470. The Past Participle used without any auxiliary agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the noun or pronoun it qualifies :

Un livre relié ; des livres reliés.

A bound book ; bound books.

Une rue plantée d'arbres.

A street planted with trees.

§ 471. The Past Participle conjugated with **avoir** agrees with the *direct object*, when that direct object *precedes* it :

Les journaux que vous avez reçus.

The newspapers you have received.

But Avez-vous reçu les journaux ?

Have you received the newspapers ?

Obs. It has been stated already (§§ 255, 257, and 265) that the Past Participle of *Reflexive verbs* follows the same rule, and that in all other cases in which the Past Participle is conjugated with **être**, it agrees with the subject.

(For more details see *Syntax*, §§ 288-298.)

THE ADVERB.

A.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

I.—Place of Adverbs.

§ 472. Adverbs precede the nouns, adjectives, and adverbs they modify :

Il est **vraiment** roi.

He is truly a king.

Voici une histoire **infiniment**
curieuse.

Here is an exceedingly curious story.

Vous marchez **trop** lentement.

You walk too slowly.

Obs. **Assez**, contrary to its English equivalent **enough**, follows the rule :

Elle n'est pas **assez** forte.

She is not strong enough.

§ 473. Adverbs modifying a verb are usually placed immediately after it, if it is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses :

J'aime **beaucoup** ce livre.

I like this book very much.

Ils se sont **vaillamment** battus.

They have fought valiantly.

Obs. Adverbs are never placed between a conjunctive personal pronoun and its verb :

Nous les voyons **souvent**.

We often see them.

Il sort **fort** rarement.

He very seldom goes out.

The only exception to the last rule is the negative **ne** (see Exc. 5).

EXCEPTIONS.—(1) **Interrogative** adverbs (**combien**, **comment**, **où**, **pourquoi**, **quand**) are placed at the beginning of the sentence in direct questions, and at the beginning of their clause when the question is indirect :

Comment explique-t-il cela ?

How does he explain that ?

Je ne sais **comment** il explique
cela.

I do not know how he explains that.

(2) Most adverbs of **time** and **place**, and many adverbs of **manner**, may also be placed at the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis :

Maintenant tout est changé.	<i>Now everything is changed.</i>
Partout régnait le silence.	<i>Silence reigned everywhere.</i>
Ainsi mourut César.	<i>Thus died Caesar.</i>

(3) Most adverbs of **time** and **place**—unless standing emphatically at the beginning of the sentence,—adverbs accompanied by a **complement**, and **adverbial phrases**, usually follow the participle :

Ils sont partis hier .	<i>They left yesterday.</i>
Nous avons agi conformément à vos ordres.	<i>We have acted conformably to your orders.</i>
Elle avait parlé à la légère .	<i>She had spoken thoughtlessly.</i>

(4) For the sake of euphony, **long** adverbs of **manner** generally follow short participles :

Il a dit éloquemment ce que nous pensions tous.	<i>He has eloquently said what we all thought.</i>
---	--

(5) In a negative sentence, **ne** always precedes the verb, and the second part of the negative is placed according to the general rule :

Jc ne l'aurais jamais cru.	<i>I should never have believed it.</i>
--	---

With a present infinitive, however, **pas**, **point**, **plus**, **guère**, **jamais**, **rien**, usually come immediately after **ne**, whilst with a past infinitive their position is optional :

Vous m'aviez promis de ne jamais le faire.	<i>You had promised me never to do it.</i>
---	--

Jc crains de { ne pas avoir or n'avoir pas } compris.	<i>I fear I have not understood.</i>
---	--------------------------------------

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 303 and 304.)

II.—Comparison of Adverbs.

§ 474. Adverbs, the signification of which is capable of comparison, are compared, like adjectives, by prefixing **plus** for the comparative, and **le plus** (or **très**, **fort**, etc.) for the superlative :

Lentement, <i>slowly</i> ,	{ plus lentement , <i>more slowly</i> . le plus lentement , <i>most slowly</i> .
----------------------------	---

Obs. 1. Remember that **bien, mal, peu**, are compared irregularly :

Bien, <i>well</i>	mieux, <i>better</i>	le mieux, <i>best</i> .
Mal, ¹ <i>badly</i>	pis, <i>worse</i>	le pis, <i>worst</i> .
Peu, <i>little</i>	moins, <i>less</i>	le moins, <i>least</i> .

Obs. 2. **Beaucoup** has also different forms for the comparative and superlative :

Beaucoup, <i>much, many</i>	plus, <i>more</i>	le plus, <i>most</i> .
-----------------------------	-------------------	------------------------

Obs. 3. Notice that neither *très* nor *fort* can be used before *beaucoup*. The French equivalent of **very much** is simply **beaucoup** (or *infiniment*).

B.—CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 475. Adverbs may be divided into—

(I.) Adverbs of **manner** ; (II.) adverbs of **time** ; (III.) adverbs of **place** ; (IV.) adverbs of **quantity** ; (V.) adverbs of **interrogation** ; (VI.) adverbs of **affirmation** ; (VII.) adverbs of **doubt** ; (VIII.) adverbs of **negation**.

I.—Adverbs of Manner.

(a) ADVERBS IN *-MENT*.

§ 476. Most adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives by means of the suffix **-ment** (L. *mente*, abl. of *mens*, used in the sense of *manner, fashion*).

Obs. The Latin *mens* being feminine, this suffix **ment** was added to the feminine of the adjective, but the *e* mute of the feminine has disappeared in adverbs formed from adjectives ending in a *vowel*. Hence it will be convenient to distinguish, for the formation of adverbs, the adjectives ending in a *vowel* from those ending in a *consonant*.

§ 477. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES ENDING IN A **vowel**—

When the adjective ends in a **vowel**, the adverb may be said to be formed by adding **ment** to the **masculine** :

ADJECTIVES.

Utile	<i>useful.</i>
Effronté	<i>impudent.</i>
Poli	<i>polite.</i>
Absolu	<i>absolute.</i>

ADVERBS.

Utilement	<i>usefully.</i>
Effrontément	<i>impudently.</i>
Poliment	<i>politely.</i>
Absolument	<i>absolutely.</i>

¹ Mal is also compared regularly : plus mal, le plus mal.

Obs. 1. The cutting off of the *e* mute of the feminine (see § 476, Obs.) is marked by a circumflex accent in the following adverbs :

Assidûment	<i>assiduously.</i>	Indûment	<i>unduly.</i>
Crûment	<i>crudely, bluntly.</i>	Gaïment (or	
Dûment	<i>duly.</i>	gaïement)	<i>gaily.</i>
		Résolûment	<i>resolutely.</i>

Obs. 2. Impuni changes the *i* into *é* :

Impunément, *with impunity.*

Obs. 3. The adverb corresponding to *traître* comes regularly, according to the rule given in the next paragraph, from O.F. *traitreuse* (fem. of *traîtreux*) :

Traîtreusement, *treacherously.*

Obs. 4. The adverbs corresponding to *beau, fou, mou, nouveau*, are likewise regularly derived from the older forms, *bel, fol, mol, nouvel* :

Bellement	<i>softly, gently.</i>	Mollement	<i>softly, effeminately.</i>
Follement	<i>foolishly.</i>	Nouvellement	<i>newly, lately.</i>

§ 478. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES ENDING IN A CONSONANT—

When the adjective ends in a *consonant*, the adverb is formed by adding *ment* to the *feminine* :

ADJECTIVES.			ADVERBS.	
MASC.	FEM.			
Actif	active	<i>active.</i>	Activement	<i>actively.</i>
Cruel	cruelle	<i>cruel.</i>	Cruellement	<i>cruelly.</i>
Frais	fraîche	<i>fresh.</i>	Fraîchement	<i>freshly.</i>
Heureux	heureuse	<i>happy.</i>	Heureusement	<i>happily.</i>
Sec	sèche	<i>dry.</i>	Sèchement	<i>dryly.</i>
Secret	secrète	<i>secret.</i>	Sècrètement	<i>secretly.</i>

Obs. 1. The adverb corresponding to *bref* comes regularly from O.F. *brief*, fem. *brève* :

Brièvement, *briefly.*

Obs. 2. The adverb corresponding to *gentil* is formed by dropping the *i* before adding *ment* :

Gentiment, *prettily.*

(All adjectives coming from Latin adjectives with the same termination for the masculine and feminine had only one termination also in Old

French. Hence *gentil* gave *gentilment*, and the *l*, not being pronounced, was subsequently dropped.)

Obs. 3. For the same reason, adjectives ending in *-ant* and *-ent* formed in Old French their adverbs in *-antment*, *-entment*, which, by assimilating *nt* to the *m* of *-ment*, became *-amment*, *-emment*¹:

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.	
Ardent	<i>ardent.</i>	Ardemment	<i>ardently.</i>
Élégant	<i>elegant.</i>	Élégamment	<i>elegantly.</i>
Patient	<i>patient.</i>	Patiemment	<i>patiently.</i>
Prudent	<i>prudent.</i>	Prudemment	<i>prudently.</i>

There are, however, three exceptions founded on euphony:

Lent	<i>slow.</i>	Lentement	<i>slowly.</i>
Présent	<i>present.</i>	Présentement	<i>presently.</i>
Véhément	<i>vehement.</i>	Véhémentement	<i>vehemently.</i>

Obs. 4. Bear in mind that the adverbs corresponding to the adjectives *bon* and *mauvais* are *bien* (= *well*), and *mal* (= *badly*).

Bonnement, which is often preceded by *tout*, means *naïvely*, *simply*, *merely*:

Il refusa tout bonnement.

He simply refused.

§ 479. ADVERBS ADDING AN ACUTE ACCENT ON THE *e* WHICH PRECEDES *-ment*—

(1) The following adjectives change their final *e* *mute* into *é* before adding *-ment*:

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.	
Aveugle	<i>blind.</i>	Aveuglément	<i>blindly.</i>
Commode	<i>convenient.</i>	Commodément	<i>conveniently.</i>
Conforme	<i>conformable.</i>	Conformément	<i>conformably.</i>
Énorme	<i>enormous.</i>	Énormément	<i>enormously.</i>
Immense	<i>immense.</i>	Immensément	<i>immensely.</i>
Incommode	<i>inconvenient.</i>	Incommodément	<i>inconveniently.</i>
Opiniâtre	<i>obstinate.</i>	Opiniâtrément	<i>obstinately.</i>
Uniforme	<i>uniform.</i>	Uniformément	<i>uniformly.</i>

¹ Notice—*notamment* (= *especially*), from the O.F. adjective *notant* (fr. *noter*).
nuitamment (= *by night*), formed by analogy without any corresponding adjective.
sciemment (= *knowingly*), from the O.F. adjective *scient* (L. *scientem*).

(2) Likewise the following change the *e mute* of the feminine into *é* before adding *-ment* :

ADJECTIVES.

Commun	<i>common.</i>
Confus	<i>confused.</i>
Diffus	<i>diffuse.</i>
Exprès	<i>express.</i>
Importun	<i>importunate.</i>
Obscur	<i>obscure.</i>
Précis	<i>precise.</i>
Profond	<i>profound.</i>
Profus	<i>profuse.</i>

ADVERBS.

Communément	<i>commonly.</i>
Confusément	<i>confusedly.</i>
Diffusément	<i>diffusely.</i>
Expressément	<i>expressly.</i>
Importunément	<i>importunately.</i>
Obscurément	<i>obscurely.</i>
Précisément	<i>precisely.</i>
Profondément	<i>profoundly.</i>
Profusément	<i>profusely.</i>

(b) ADJECTIVES USED ADVERBIALY.

§ 480. A few adjectives are occasionally used as adverbs of manner without undergoing any change, like neuter adjectives in Latin and Greek.

EXAMPLES.

Parler bas	<i>to speak low.</i>	Frapper	<i>to hit</i>
Sentir } bon	<i>to smell nice.</i>	Travailler } dur	<i>to work } hard.</i>
Tenir } bon	<i>to stand fast.</i>	Faire exprès	<i>to do on purpose.</i>
Acheter } cher	<i>to buy } dear.</i>	Chanter } faux	<i>to sing } out of tune.</i>
Coûter } cher	<i>to cost } dear.</i>	Jouer } faux	<i>to play } out of tune.</i>
Payer } cher	<i>to pay } dear.</i>	Frapper } ferme	<i>to strike hard.</i>
Vendre } cher	<i>to sell } dear.</i>	Tenir } ferme	<i>to hold fast.</i>
Parler } clair	<i>to speak plainly.</i>	Travailler } ferme	<i>to work hard.</i>
Voir } clair	<i>to see distinctly (in an absolute sense).</i>	S'amuser fort	<i>to enjoy one's-self much.</i>
Arrêter } court	<i>to stop } short.</i>	Parler haut	<i>to speak loud.</i>
Couper } court	<i>to cut } short.</i>	Chanter } juste	<i>to sing in tune.</i>
Demeurer } court	<i>to stick fast.</i>	Deviner } juste	<i>to guess } right.</i>
Aller } droit	<i>to go } straight.</i>	Frapper } juste	<i>to strike } right.</i>
Marcher } droit	<i>to walk } straight.</i>	Sentir mauvais	<i>to smell bad.</i>

Obs. Vite, which is very seldom used as an adjective in modern French, has replaced *vitement*, now obsolete :

Venez **vite**.

Come quickly.

(c) ADVERBS NOT DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 481. A few adverbs of manner, besides **bien**, **mieux**, **mal**, **pis**, do not come from French adjectives. Such are :—

Ainsi (L. in sic)	<i>thus, so.</i>	Ensemble (L. in simul)	<i>together.</i>
Comme (L. quomodo)	<i>as, like.</i>	Gratis (L. gratis)	<i>gratis.</i>
Comment (L. quomodo inde)	<i>how.</i>	Plutôt (plus, tôt)	<i>rather.</i>

§ 482. **Comme** and **comment**.—**Comme** is both an adverb and a conjunction, whilst **comment** is only an adverb.

As an adverb, **comme** is chiefly used to express comparison, in the sense of *as, like*, and in exclamations, when it means *how, how much*.

Comment, which, contrary to **comme**, never denotes comparison or intensity, is used in direct and indirect questions, in the sense of *in what way, how*, and by itself, in exclamations, when it means *what ! indeed !*—

COMME.		COMMENT.	
Dur comme du fer.	<i>As hard as iron.</i>	Comment vous portez-vous ?	<i>How do you do ?</i>
Lui comme tant d'autres.	<i>He like so many others.</i>		
Comme c'est agréable !	<i>How pleasant it is !</i>	Comment ! vous n'êtes pas parti !	<i>What ! you are not gone !</i>
Voyez comme il s'amuse !	<i>See how much he amuses himself !</i>	Voyez comment il s'amuse.	<i>See how he amuses himself.</i>

§ 483. **Plutôt** and **plus tôt**.—**Plutôt** (= *rather*) must not be confounded with **plus tôt** (= *earlier, sooner*), which is only used in speaking of time :

Venez plutôt que d'attendre.	<i>Come rather than wait.</i>
Venez plus tôt .	<i>Come earlier.</i>

(For more details on adverbs of manner, see *Syntax*, §§ 306-312.)

II.—Adverbs of Time.

§ 484. The principal adverbs of time are—

	MEANING.	DERIVATION.
Actuellement	<i>at present, now.</i>	From <i>actuel</i> , L. <i>actualem</i> .
Après	<i>after, afterwards, then, next.</i>	<i>À</i> (L. <i>ad</i>), <i>près</i> (L. <i>pressum</i>).
Aujourd'hui	<i>to-day.</i>	<i>Au, jour</i> (L. <i>diurnum</i>), <i>d'hui</i> (<i>hui</i> , L. <i>hodie</i>).
Autrefois ¹	<i>formerly.</i>	<i>Autre, fois</i> (L. <i>vice</i>).
Avant ²	<i>far.</i>	L. <i>abante</i> .
Cependant	<i>meanwhile, in the mean-time.</i>	<i>Ce, pendant</i> (fr. <i>pendre</i> , L. <i>pendere</i>).
Déjà ³	<i>already.</i>	<i>Dès</i> (L. <i>de ex</i>), <i>ja</i> (L. <i>jam</i>).
Demain ⁴	<i>to-morrow.</i>	L. <i>de mane</i> .
Dernièrement	<i>lately.</i>	<i>Dernier</i> , O.F. <i>derrainier</i> , fr. O.F. <i>derrain</i> , L.L. <i>deretranum</i> .
Enfin	<i>in short, finally, at last, after all.</i>	<i>En</i> (L. <i>in</i>), <i>fin</i> (L. <i>finem</i>).
Ensuite	<i>afterwards, then.</i>	<i>En</i> (L. <i>in</i>), <i>suite</i> (L. <i>sectam</i>).
Hier ⁵	<i>yesterday.</i>	L. <i>heri</i> .
Immédiatement	<i>immediately.</i>	<i>Immédiat</i> , L.L. <i>immediatum</i> .
Incontinent	<i>forthwith.</i>	L. <i>in continenti</i> .
Longtemps	<i>long, a long time.</i>	<i>Long</i> (L. <i>longum</i>), <i>temps</i> (L. <i>tempus</i>).
Lors	<i>then.</i>	O.F. <i>l'hores</i> or <i>l'hore</i> (L. <i>horam</i>). ⁶
Maintenant	<i>at present, now.</i>	<i>Main tenant</i> (L. <i>manu tenente</i>).
Naguère	<i>lately.</i>	O.F. <i>n'a guère</i> (<i>ne, avoir, guère</i> [= O.H.G. <i>weigaro</i>]).
Puis ⁷	<i>afterwards, then, next.</i>	L. <i>post</i> .
Quand	<i>when.</i>	L. <i>quando</i> .
Rarement	<i>seldom.</i>	<i>Rare</i> , L. <i>rarum</i> .

¹ **Fois** has also formed { *parfois*
quelquefois } *sometimes*.

² **Avant** has formed *auparavant*, *before*.

³ **Ja** has also formed { *jadis* (*dis*=L. *diu*), *formerly*.
jamais (*mais*=L. *magis*), *ever, never*.

⁴ **Demain** has formed *après-demain*, *the day after to-morrow*.

⁵ **Hier** has formed *avant-hier*, *the day before yesterday*.

⁶ The Latin *horam* is also found in { *alors*, *then*.
désormais (O.F. *dès ore mais*)
dorénavant (O.F. *d'ore en avant*) } *henceforth*.
encore (L. *hanc horam*), *still, yet, again, also*.

⁷ **Puis** has formed *depuis*, *since*.

	MEANING.	DERIVATION.
1 Récemment	<i>recently.</i>	<i>Récent</i> , L. <i>recentem</i> .
Soudain	} <i>suddenly.</i>	L.L. <i>subitanum</i> .
Soudainement		(Not so frequently used as <i>soudain</i> .)
4 Subitement		<i>Subit</i> , L. <i>subitum</i> .
2 Subséquement	<i>subsequently.</i>	<i>Subsequent</i> , L. <i>subsequentem</i> .
Tard	<i>late.</i>	L. <i>tarde</i> .
Tôt ¹	<i>soon, early.</i>	L. <i>tostum</i> (or perhaps <i>tot cito</i>).
Toujours	<i>always.</i>	<i>Tous</i> , <i>jours</i> .

Obs. Adverbs of order are formed from ordinal numbers by means of the suffix *-ment* :

Premièrement	<i>first.</i>	Troisièmement	<i>thirdly.</i>
Secondement	} <i>secondly.</i>	Quatrièmement	<i>fourthly.</i>
Deuxièmement		Cinquièmement	<i>fifthly, etc.</i>

§ 485. OBSERVATIONS.—

(1) **Alors** should be replaced by **donec** in translating **then** used in the sense of **therefore**, or marking surprise :

Vous voyez **donec** bien que cela est impossible.

You see **then** plainly that it is impossible.

Vous n'avez **donec** pas reçu ma lettre?

You have not received my letter **then**?

(2) **Avant**, as an adverb, is used after another adverb, such as **assez**, **bien**, **fort**, **moins**, **plus**, **si**, **très**, **trop** :

Bien **avant** dans la nuit.

Very late in the night.

(3) **Cependant**, as a conjunction, means **yet**, **still**, **however**.

(4) **Maintenant** should be replaced by **alors** in translating **now** referring to the past :

Il comprit **alors** que tout était fini.

He understood **now** that all was over.

(5) **Tantôt**, when repeated, means **now . . . , now, sometimes . . . , sometimes** :

Tantôt il rit, tantôt il pleure.

Now he laughs, now he cries.

Tantôt plus, tantôt moins.

Sometimes more, sometimes less.

¹ **Tôt**, already seen in **plutôt**, is also found in { **aussitôt**, immediately, directly.
bientôt, soon.
tantôt, presently, just now, soon.

(6) Notice—

Il est { tard.
en retard.

It { is late.
He }

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 313-322.)

III.—Adverbs of Place.

§ 486. The principal adverbs of place are—

MEANING.

DERIVATION.

Ailleurs	<i>elsewhere.</i>
Alentour	} <i>around, about.</i>
Autour	
Amont	<i>up the stream.</i>
Aval	<i>down the stream.</i>
Avant	<i>far.</i>
Çà ¹	<i>here.</i>
Céans	<i>in this house, within.</i>
Dedans	<i>inside, within.</i>
Dehors	<i>outside, out.</i>
Derrière	<i>behind.</i>
Dessous	<i>under, underneath.</i>
Devant	<i>before, in front.</i>
En	<i>from there, thence.</i>
Ici	<i>here.</i>
Là ²	<i>there.</i>
Loin	<i>far.</i>
Où	<i>where, whither.</i>
Partout	<i>everywhere.</i>
Près ³	<i>near.</i>
Proche	<i>hard by, close by.</i>
Sus (à) ⁴	<i>on, upon.</i>
Y	<i>there, thither.</i>

L. aliorsum.
O.F. à l'entour (<i>en, tour</i> [L. tornum]).
<i>Au, tour.</i>
<i>À, mont</i> (L. montem).
<i>À, val</i> (L. vallem).
L. abante.
L. ecce hac.
L. ecce hac intus.
<i>De, dans</i> (O.F. dens, L. de intus).
<i>De, hors</i> (O.F. fors, L. foras).
L. de retro.
<i>De, sous</i> (O.F. sos, L. subtus).
O.F. davant (<i>de, avant</i>).
L. inde
L. ecce hic.
L. illac.
L. longe.
L. ubi.
<i>Par, tout</i> (L. per totum).
L. pressum.
L. propius.
L. susum.
L. ibi.

¹ Çà is found in *deçà*, *on this side.*

² Là is found in *delà*, *on that side.*

³ Près is found in { *après*, *after, next.*
 { *auprès*, *close, near.*

⁴ Sus is found in *dessus*, *above.*

§ 487. OBSERVATIONS.—

(1) **D'ailleurs** means not only **from elsewhere**—

On pensait qu'il viendrait de
France, il est venu **d'ail-**
leurs,—

*It was thought that he would come from
France, he came **from elsewhere**,—*

but also **besides, moreover, in other respects, after all** :

Il lui promit **d'ailleurs** de ne
rien dire.

*He promised him **moreover** not to say
anything.*

Lui, **d'ailleurs** si raisonnable . . .

*He, so sensible **in other respects** . . .*

D'ailleurs, si vous ne le croyez
pas . . .

***After all**, if you do not believe it . . .*

(2) **Amont** and **aval** are chiefly used after the prepositions **de** and **en** :

Aller **en amont**.

To go up the stream.

Le pays **d'aval**.

The country down river.

(3) **Avant**, as an adverb, is used after another adverb, such as **assez, bien, fort, moins, plus, si, très, trop** :

N'allez pas **plus avant**.

Do not go further.

(4) **Çà** is chiefly used in opposition to **là**, and with the Imperative of **venir** :

Çà et là ; qui **çà**, qui **là**.

Here and there ; some here, some there.

Venez **çà**.

Come here.

(5) **Ici** is sometimes used in speaking of time :

Jusqu'ici ; **d'ici là**.

Hitherto ; by that time.

(6) **Où**, which should not be confounded with the conjunction **ou** (=or), is used in direct and indirect questions, often taking the place of a relative pronoun governed by a preposition :

Où allez-vous ?

Where are you going ?

Je ne sais **où** aller.

I do not know whither to go.

Le but **où** il aspire.

The aim to which he aspires.

Notice especially the use of **où** after a noun expressing time, in the sense of **when, in which, on which** :

Le jour **où** cela se passa . . .

*The day **on which** that happened . . .*

Au moment **où** il allait partir.

*At the moment **when** he was going to start.*

(7) **Sus**, which is considered by some grammarians as a preposition, is construed with à :

Courir **sus** à quelqu'un.

To fall upon some one.

As an interjection, **sus** means **come, now then, courage!**

IV.—Adverbs of Quantity.

§ 488. The principal adverbs of quantity are—

MEANING.	DERIVATION.
Assez enough.	L. adsatis.
Beaucoup much, many.	<i>Beau, coup</i> (L.L. colpum, fr. colaphum).
Bien ¹ much, many, very.	L. bene.
Comme ¹ how, how much.	L. quomodo.
Davantage more, longer.	O.F. d'avantage (<i>de, advantage</i> [fr. avant]).
Fort very, much, hard.	It is the adjective <i>fort</i> (L. fortem) used adverbially.
Guère but little, but few, hardly.	O.H.G. weigaro.
Moins less, fewer.	L. minus.
Peu little, few.	L. paucum.
Plus more.	L. plus.
Presque nearly, almost.	<i>Près, que.</i>
Que how, how much, how many.	L. quod.
Si ² so.	L. sic.
Tant ³ so much, so many, as much, as many.	L. tantum.
Tellement so, so much, so many.	<i>Tel</i> , L. talem.
Très very, much, most.	L. trans.
Trop too, too much, too many.	O.H.G. drupo, L.L. troppum.

§ 489. OBSERVATIONS.—

(1) Remember that adverbs of quantity require the preposition **de**—not the article—before the following noun (unless used determinately):

Beaucoup d'hommes.

Many men.

¹ **Comme** and **bien** have formed **combien**, *how much, how many*.

² **Si** is found in **aussi**, *as, so* (O.F. *alsi*, L. *aliud sic*).

³ **Tant** is found in **autant**, *as much, as many, so much, so many* (L. *aliud tantum*).

Bien, however, requires the partitive article :

Bien des hommes,

Many men,

and **force**, used in the sense of *beaucoup*, is immediately followed by the noun without the preposition **de** :

Force gens le pensent.

Many people think so.

(2) **Combien** is used in direct and indirect questions and in exclamations, and when it modifies an adjective, that adjective generally comes after the verb :

Combien de chevaux a-t-il ?

How many horses has he ?

Combien a-t-il de chevaux ?

How many people envy you !

Combien (de gens) vous envient !

Vous comprenez **combien** cette
idée est fausse.

*You understand how false that idea
is.*

Notice the following uses of **combien** :

De combien est-il plus grand
que vous ?

How much taller is he than you ?

Combien (de temps) resterez-
vous ?

How long will you remain ?

Dans combien de temps re-
viendra-t-il ?

How long will it be before he comes back ?

Combien y a-t-il que vous ne
l'avez vu ?

How long is it since you saw him ?

**Combien y a-t-il d'ici à Lon-
dres ?**

How far is it from here to London ?

(3) Both **davantage** and **plus** are comparative adverbs, but **plus** may stand before (a) an adjective, (b) a complement preceded by **de**, (c) **que** followed by the second term of comparison, whilst **davantage** cannot :

Je ne puis vous en dire **davan-
tage**.

I cannot tell you any more.

Ne tardez pas **davantage**.

Do not delay any longer.

J'ai appris vingt vers.—J'en ai
appris **davantage**.

*I have learnt twenty lines.—I have learnt
more.*

Si vous êtes embarrassé, je le suis
bien **davantage**.

*If you are embarrassed, I am much more
so.*

But J'ai appris **plus de** vingt vers.

I have learnt more than twenty lines.

Je suis **plus embarrassé que**
vous.

I am more embarrassed than you.

(4) **Guère**, sometimes spelt **guères** in poetry, requires **ne** before the verb, but is sometimes used without **ne**, standing alone in answer to a question :

Je n'aime **guère** ce livre.

I do not much care for that book.

Aimez-vous ce livre ?—**Guère**.

Do you like that book ?—Not much.

(5) **Que** is often used in exclamations instead of **combien** or **comme** :

Que (or **combien**) de peine il se donne ! *How much trouble he is taking !*

Que (or **comme**) cela est beau ! *How fine that is !*

Que, besides, is sometimes used instead of **combien** in direct questions, when there is no noun following :

Que (or **combien**) vaut cela ? *How much is that worth ?*

But **Combien** (not **que**) d'argent avez-vous ? *How much money have you ?*

(6) **Si** and **aussi** are used with adjectives and adverbs, **tant** and **autant** with nouns and verbs. In a comparison, **aussi** and **autant** may be used both in affirmative and negative sentences, **si** and **tant** only in a negative sentence :

Il est **aussi** grand que moi. *He is as tall as I.*

Il n'est pas **aussi** (or **si**) grand que moi. *He is not so tall as I.*

Je le méprise **autant** que je le hais. *I despise him as much as I hate him.*

Il n'a pas **autant** (or **tant**) de persévérance que son frère. *He has not so much perseverance as his brother.*

Si and **tant**, when denoting intensity, are used in affirmative as well as in negative sentences :

C'est **si** étrange que j'en doute. *It is so strange that I doubt it.*

Il fit **tant** qu'il réussit. *He managed so well that he succeeded.*

(7) **Très**, contrary to the English *very*, never stands alone :

Est-ce une belle pièce ?—Oui, **très** belle. *Is it a fine play ?—Yes, very.*

N'êtes-vous pas content ?—Pas **beaucoup**. *Are you not pleased ?—Not very.*

V.—Adverbs of Interrogation.

§ 490. The principal adverbs of interrogation are :

Combien (see § 488, note 1)	} <i>how much ? how many ? how far ? how long ?</i>	Où (see § 486)	<i>where ? whither ?</i>
		Pourquoi (pour [L. pro], <i>quoi</i>)	<i>why ?</i>
Comment (see § 481)	<i>how ?</i>	Quand (see § 484)	<i>when ?</i>

Que is also sometimes used as an interrogative adverb—

(1) With **ne**, in the sense of **why . . . not** :

Que ne le faites-vous ?

Why do you not do it ?

(2) Without **ne**, in the sense of **why**, only in a few idioms :

Que tardez-vous ?

Why do you delay ?

VI.—Adverbs of Affirmation.

§ 491. The principal adverbs of affirmation are—

	MEANING.	DERIVATION.
? Assurément	<i>surely, to be sure.</i>	Past Partic. of <i>assurer</i> (L. L. <i>assecurare</i>).
? Certainement	} <i>certainly, to be sure,</i>	<i>Certain</i> (L. L. <i>certanum</i>).
Certes		L. <i>certe</i> (or <i>certis</i>).
Oui	} <i>yes.</i>	L. <i>hoc illud</i> .
Si		L. <i>sic</i> .
? Soit	<i>be it so.</i>	3d pers. sing. Pres. Subjunct. of <i>être</i> .
Sûrement	<i>surely, to be sure.</i>	<i>Sûr</i> (L. <i>securum</i>).
Volontiers	<i>willingly.</i>	L. <i>voluntarie</i> (or <i>voluntariis</i>).
Vraiment	<i>truly, indeed.</i>	<i>Vrai</i> (L. L. <i>veracum</i>).

§ 492. OBSERVATIONS.—

(1) **Si** is used instead of **oui** in answer to a **negative** question or statement :

Viendrez-vous ?—**Oui**, bientôt.

Will you come ?—Yes, soon.

But **Ne** viendrez-vous pas ?—**Si**,
demain.

Will you not come ?—Yes, to-morrow.

(2) **Que oui**, **que si**, are often used, either emphatically in the sense of **yes**, or to translate an English auxiliary verb, in answer to a question or statement :

Oh ! **que oui** ! **que si** !

Oh ! yes ! yes, indeed !

Le fera-t-il ?—Je crois **que oui**.

Will he do it ?—I think he will.

Ne l'a-t-il pas fait ?—Il m'a dit
que si.

Has he not done it ?—He told me he had.

(3) Do not confound **volontiers** (= *willingly*) with **volontairement** (= *voluntarily*).

VII.—Adverbs of Doubt.

§ 493. The principal adverbs of doubt are—

	MEANING.	DERIVATION.
Apparemment	<i>apparently.</i>	<i>Apparent</i> (L. <i>apparetem</i>).
Peut-être	<i>perhaps.</i>	<i>Peut</i> (3d pers. sing. Pres. Indic. of <i>pouvoir</i>), <i>être</i> .
Probablement	} <i>probably.</i>	<i>Probable</i> (L. <i>probabilem</i>).
Vraisemblablement		<i>Vrai</i> , <i>semblable</i> (fr. <i>sembler</i> , L. <i>simulare</i>).

VIII.—Adverbs of Negation.

§ 494. The principal adverbs of negation are—

	MEANING.	DERIVATION.
Aucunement	<i>by no means.</i>	<i>Aucun</i> (L. <i>aliquē unum</i>).
Guère	<i>not much, hardly.</i>	O.H.G. <i>weigaro</i> (= <i>much</i>).
Jamais	<i>never.</i>	<i>Ja</i> (L. <i>jam</i>), <i>mais</i> (L. <i>magis</i>).
Ne	<i>not.</i>	O.F. <i>nen</i> , L. <i>non</i> .
Non	<i>no, not.</i>	L. <i>non</i> .
Nullement	<i>by no means.</i>	<i>Nul</i> (L. <i>nullum</i>).
Pas	<i>not.</i>	L. <i>passum</i> .
Plus	<i>no more.</i>	L. <i>plus</i> .
Point	<i>not, not at all.</i>	L. <i>punctum</i> .

Obs. 1. The noun *goutte* (L. *guttam*), a *drop*, may also be used as a negative adverb with the verbs *voir* and *entendre*, preceded by *ne* :

Je n'y vois *goutte*.

I cannot see at all.

Je n'entends *goutte* à ce qu'il dit.

I cannot at all make out what he says.

Obs. 2. As appears from the above derivations, there are only, strictly speaking, three negative adverbs in the whole list,—*ne* (which must, as a rule, be used to give to a verb a negative meaning), *non*, and *nullement*. The others, however, though etymologically affirmative, being usually accompanied by *ne*, have assumed a negative meaning, not only with

ne but also without it, in certain cases in which the verb is understood, especially in answer to a question.¹

EXAMPLES.

WITH ne.		WITHOUT ne.	
Je ne le crois aucunement .	<i>I do not believe it by any means.</i>	Le croyez-vous?— Aucunement .	<i>Do you believe it?—Not in the least.</i>
Je n'aime guère ce livre.	<i>I do not much care for that book.</i>	Aimez-vous ce livre?— Guère .	<i>Do you like that book?—Not much.</i>
Je ne le ferai jamais .	<i>I shall never do it.</i>	Le referez-vous?— Jamais; jamais plus .	<i>Will you do it again?—Never; never more.</i>
Je n'aime pas (or point) ce tableau.	<i>I do not like (at all) this picture.</i>	Aimez-vous ce tableau?— Pas beaucoup; point; point du tout .	<i>Do you like this picture?—Not much; no, not at all.</i>
Il n'y a pas (or point) de plaintes.	<i>There are no complaints.</i>	Pas (or point) de plaintes.	<i>No complaints.</i>
Je ne le ferai plus .	<i>I will not do it again.</i>	Le referez-vous?— Plus du tout .	<i>Will you do it again?—Never more.</i>
Il n'y a plus de plaintes.	<i>There are no more complaints.</i>	Plus de plaintes.	<i>No more complaints.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 341-348.)

§ 495. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN **pas** AND **point**.—

(1) **Pas**, from L. *passum* (= *a step*), is less emphatic than **point**, from L. *punctum* (= *a dot*):

Il ne lit **pas**.

He is not reading; he does not read.

Il ne lit **point**.

He does not read at all; he never reads.

¹ **Guère**, **pas**, and **point** are always used (like **non** and **nullement**) in a negative sense. **Aucunement** and **jamais** may also be used (like **plus**) affirmatively without **ne**, in their etymological sense (**aucunement** meaning *in any degree, at all*, and **jamais**, *ever*):

S'il est **aucunement** possible de réussir . . .

If it is at all possible to succeed . . .

Il pleut plus que **jamais**.

It is raining more than ever.

Soyez à **jamais** heureux.

Be for ever happy.

Si **jamais** je le vois . . .

If I ever see him . . .

L'avez-vous **jamais** vu?

Did you ever see him?

Ne, though etymologically negative, is often used idiomatically without any negative meaning (see §§ 499-502).

(2) Consequently, **pas** is always used in preference to **point** before numerals (even before **un**), **beaucoup**, and adverbs of comparison, and generally before other adverbs and expressions which limit the force of the negative :

Je n'ai pas compris un seul mot.	<i>I have not understood one word.</i>
Il n'est pas aussi sérieux que vous.	<i>He is not so serious as you.</i>
Je n'ai pas bien compris.	<i>I have not well understood.</i>

(3) **Pas**, in questions, may sometimes imply affirmation, whilst **point** implies doubt :

N'avez-vous pas fini ?	<i>You have done, have you not ?</i>
N'avez-vous point fini ?	<i>Have you not done ?</i>

(4) **Pas** is often preceded by **non** ; **point** not usually so.

§ 496. PRINCIPAL CASES OF OMISSION OF **pas** AND **point**.—

When **ne** has a negative meaning, it is most often accompanied by **pas** or **point** ; but **pas** and **point** in some cases *may*, in others *must*, be omitted.

§ 497. **Ne** *may* be used with or without **pas** or **point**.—

(a) Before **autre** followed by **que** :

Je n'ai (pas) d'autre ami que vous.	<i>I have no other friend than you.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

Obs. In sentences of the kind **autre** may be understood ; but in that case **ne . . . que** alone should be used :

Je n'ai d'ami que vous.	<i>I have no other friend than you.</i>
-------------------------	---

(b) With the verbs **bouger** (=to stir), **cesser** (=to cease), **oser** (=to dare), **pouvoir** (=to be able), **savoir** (in the sense of to be uncertain) :

Ne bougez (pas).	<i>Do not stir.</i>
Il n'osera (pas) le dire.	<i>He will not dare to say it.</i>
Je ne puis (pas).	<i>I cannot.</i>
Je ne sais (pas) s'ils viendront.	<i>I do not know whether they will come.</i>

Obs. 1. The omission is usual when **savoir** is followed by **qui**, **que**, **quoi**, **quel** :

Nous ne savions que faire.	<i>We did not know what to do.</i>
--	------------------------------------

Obs. 2. The omission does not take place when **savoir** means to have learnt :

Vous ne savez pas votre leçon.	<i>You do not know your lesson.</i>
--	-------------------------------------

§ 498. *Ne must be used without pas or point—*

(a) With *aucun*, *aucunement*, *goutte*, *guère*, *jamais*, *ni*, *nul*, *nullement*, *personne*, *plus* (= *no longer*), *rien*, *qui que ce soit*, *quoi que ce soit*, *âme qui vive*, *de ma vie* :

Il ne fait attention à	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rien.} \\ \text{quoi que ce} \\ \text{soit.} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>He pays attention to nothing.</i>
Nous n'avons trouvé	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{personne.} \\ \text{qui que ce} \\ \text{soit.} \\ \text{âme qui vive} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>We found no one whatever.</i>
Je n'ai vu de ma vie pareille chose.		<i>I never in my life saw such a thing.</i>

(b) With *que*, meaning *only*, *nothing but*, or used at the beginning of a question or exclamation in the sense of *why . . . not*, *would that* :

Vous n'avez qu'à parler.	<i>You have only to speak.</i>
Que ne me l'avez-vous dit plus tôt?	<i>Why did you not say it to me sooner?</i>
Que n'est-il ici !	<i>Would that he were here !</i>

(c) With *il y a . . . que* used in speaking of time, and followed by a verb in a compound tense :

Il y a trois semaines que je ne lui ai parlé.	<i>I have not spoken to him for three weeks.</i>
---	--

(d) With a relative pronoun followed by the Subjunctive, when the principal sentence is negative, or interrogative with a negative meaning :

Il n'y a personne qui ne comprenne cela.	<i>There is no one who does not understand that.</i>
Y a-t-il quelqu'un (i.e. il n'y a personne) qui ne comprenne cela ?	<i>Surely there is no one who does not understand that ?</i>

(e) With *savoir*, in the sense of *pouvoir* :

Je ne saurais le faire.	<i>I cannot possibly do it.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------------

Obs. Bear in mind that, when *savoir* means *to have learnt*, *pas* or *point* must be expressed, even if *can* is used in English :

Je ne sais pas danser.	<i>I cannot dance</i>
------------------------	-----------------------

(f) After **garder**, **prendre garde**, followed by **que** and the Subjunctive :

Gardez (or **prenez garde**) " *Take care that he does not do it.*
qu'il **ne** le fasse.

Obs. **Pas** and **point** are also omitted, as a rule, but not necessarily, with **n'avoir garde**, and with **si**, in the sense of *unless* :

Il **n'aura garde** de l'oublier. *He will be sure not to forget it.*
Je n'irai pas si vous **ne** m'accompagnez. *I will not go unless you accompany me.*

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 351-353.)

§ 499. **NE** USED WITHOUT A NEGATIVE MEANING.—

Ne is used without a negative meaning after certain verbs and expressions followed by **que** and the Subjunctive, after certain comparative expressions, and after certain conjunctions.

§ 500. After certain verbs and expressions.—

Ne should be used in the dependent sentence—

(a) When the principal sentence is affirmative or interrogative-negative, after verbs and expressions denoting fear followed by **que** and the Subjunctive :

J'ai peur, j'appréhende,	} qu'il ne vienne.	} <i>I am afraid, I fear, I dread, I tremble</i>	} <i>that he will (or lest he should) come.</i>
je crains, je redoute,			
je tremble			
La crainte, la peur	} qu'il ne vint.	} <i>The fear The apprehension</i>	} <i>that he would come.</i>
(que nous avions),			
l'appréhension (où nous étions)			
Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne ? ¹		<i>Do-you not fear that he will come?</i>	

¹ **Ne** is also used when the sentence is purely interrogative, if it really expresses doubt :

Qui craignait qu'il **ne** vint? *Who feared that he would come?*
But Est-il possible (i.e. il n'est pas possible) de craindre qu'il nous trahisse! *Surely it is impossible to fear that he will betray us!*

Obs. 1. **Empêcher** (= to prevent), followed by **que** and the Subjunctive, requires **ne**

(b) When the principal sentence is **negative** or **interrogative**, after verbs and expressions of **doubt** and **denial**, and after the impersonal verbs *il s'en faut*, *il tient*, followed by *que* and the Subjunctive :

Je ne doute pas qu'il n'ait raison.		<i>I have no doubt he is right.</i>
Nous ne nions pas	} qu'il ne puisse réussir.	<i>We do not deny</i>
Nous ne contestons pas		<i>We do not contest</i>
Nous ne disconvenons pas		<i>We do not disown</i>
Nous ne disputons pas		<i>We do not dispute</i>
Nous ne désespérons pas		<i>We do not despair</i>
Doutez-vous	} qu'il n'ait réussi?	<i>Do you doubt</i>
Mettez-vous en doute		<i>Do you question</i>
Niez-vous		<i>Do you deny</i>
Il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup	} que je ne le fasse.	<i>I am not far from doing it.</i>
Il s'en faut peu		
Peu s'en faut		
S'en fallait-il de beaucoup	} que la somme n'y fût?	<i>Was much wanting</i>
De combien s'en fallait-il		<i>How much was wanting</i>
Il ne tient pas à lui	} qu'il n'en soit ainsi. ¹	<i>It does not depend on him</i>
Il ne tient à presque rien		<i>It depends on a trifle</i>
Il tient à peu de chose		<i>It depends on little</i>

§ 501. After certain comparative expressions.—

Ne is used in the second member of the sentence, when the first member is **affirmative** or **interrogative-negative**, after **meilleur**, **mieux**,

when the principal sentence is affirmative, and may take it or not when it is negative or interrogative :

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vienne.	<i>I will prevent him from coming.</i>
Je n'empêche pas	} qu'il (ne) vienne(?).
Empêchez-vous	

Obs. 2. **Éviter** (=to avoid) and **prévenir** (=to prevent), used with *que* and the Subjunctive, follow the same rules, except that **ne** is not absolutely necessary after them, even when the principal sentence is affirmative :

Je préviendrai qu'il ne lui en parle.	<i>I will prevent his speaking of it to him.</i>
---------------------------------------	--

¹ It stands to reason that, if the dependent clause is negative, **ne . . . pas** or **ne . . . point** must be used in every case :

Je crains	} qu'il ne vienne pas (?).	<i>I fear</i>
Je ne crains pas		<i>I do not fear</i>
Craignez-vous		<i>Do you fear</i>
Ne craignez-vous pas		<i>Do you not fear</i>

that he will not come (?).

moins, moins, pire, pis, plus, plutôt, followed by **que** and a verb in the Indicative (or Conditional) :

Je vous comprends mieux que vous ne pensez.	<i>I understand you better than you think.</i>
La ville est plus grande qu'elle ne le paraît.	<i>The town is larger than it appears.</i>
La ville n'est-elle pas plus grande qu'elle ne le paraît?	<i>Is not the town larger than it appears?</i>
But Il n'est pas moins généreux qu'il est riche.	<i>He is not less generous than rich.</i>

Obs. The same rules are observed with **autre** and **autrement** :

Il est tout autre qu'il n' était.	<i>He is quite different</i>	} <i>from what he used to be (?)</i> .
N'est-il pas tout autre qu'il n' était?	<i>Is he not quite different</i>	
But Il n'est pas autre qu'il était.	<i>He is not different from what he used to be.</i>	

§ 502. After certain conjunctions.—

Ne is used after—

(a) **À moins que** (= *unless*) :

Je n'irai pas, à moins que vous ne m'accompagniez.	<i>I will not go unless you accompany me.</i>
---	---

(b) **De crainte que** } (= *lest*) :
De peur que }

Ne le lui dites pas, de crainte (or de peur) qu'il ne se fâche.	<i>Do not say it to him, lest he should be angry.</i>
--	---

Obs. Notice that **à moins que**, **de crainte que**, and **de peur que** govern the Subjunctive.

(See *Syntax*, §§ 355-362.)

§ 503. PRINCIPAL USES OF **non**.—

Irez-vous?— Non .	<i>Will you go?—No.</i>
Viendra-t-il?—Je vous ai déjà dit que non .	<i>Will he come?—I told you already that he would not.</i>
Folie ou non , il l'a fait.	<i>Madness or not, he has done it.</i>
Les uns sont heureux, les autres non .	<i>Some are happy, others not.</i>
Qu'il y consente ou non , il faut que je le fasse.	<i>Whether he consents to it or not, I must do it.</i>

[Continued on next page.]

Il l'a fait non par malice, mais par étourderie.	<i>He has done it, not out of malice, but out of thoughtlessness.</i>
Non loin de là se trouve une source.	<i>Not far from that spot there is a spring.</i>
Une maison non meublée.	<i>An unfurnished house.</i>
Ni moi non plus.	<i>Nor I either.</i>
Je n'écirai pas non plus .	<i>I will not write either.</i>
But Je n'écirai pas plus que lui.	<i>I shall not write more than he.</i>
Je n'écirai plus .	<i>I will no longer write.</i>

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 363-366.)

IX.—List of Adverbial Locutions.

§ 504.

Abandon (à l' —)	<i>uncared for ; in confusion.</i>
Abord ¹ (d' —)	<i>at once ; at first.</i>
Abrégé (en —)	<i>briefly, shortly ; by abbreviation.</i>
Abri (à l' —)	<i>under shelter.</i>
Accord ² (d' —)	<i>agreed.</i>
Ailleurs (d' —)	<i>besides, in other respects, after all.</i>
Aise (à l' —)	<i>easily, comfortably.</i>
Aller (au pis —)	<i>at the worst.</i>
Amiable (à l' —)	<i>amicably ; by private contract.</i>
Amont (en —)	<i>up the stream.</i>
Analyse (en dernière —)	<i>in short, in fine.</i>
Âne (en dos d' —)	<i>sharp-ridged.</i>
Antique (à l' —)	<i>in the old fashion.</i>
Applomb (d' —)	<i>perpendicularly ; in equilibrium.</i>
Apparence (en —)	<i>apparently.</i>
Arrière (en —)	<i>back, backwards, behind, behind-hand.</i>
Atteinte (hors d' —)	<i>beyond reach.</i>
Autant ³ (d' —) mieux	<i>so much the better.</i>
Aval (en —)	<i>down the stream.</i>
Avance (à l' —, d' —, par —)	<i>beforehand.</i>
Avant (en —)	<i>forward ; in front ; in advance.</i>
Avenant (à l' —)	<i>in keeping, to match.</i>
Avenir (à l' —)	<i>in future.</i>

¹ Au premier abord, at first sight, at first ; de prime abord, at first sight, from the first moment ; dès l'abord, dès le premier abord, tout d'abord, at first, to begin with, forthwith.

² D'un commun accord, with one accord.

³ D'autant moins, so much the less ; d'autant plus, so much the more.

Aventure ¹ (à l' —)	at random.
Aveugle (à l' —, en —)	blindly.
Aveuglette (à l' —)	gropingly.
Baguette (à la —)	despotically; slavishly.
Bas ² (à —)	down.
Bel et beau, ³ bel et bien	well, quite, in good earnest, etc.
Besoin (au —)	if necessary, in case of need.
Biais (de —, en —)	slanting.
Bientôt (à —)	good-bye, till bye and bye.
Blanc (de but en —)	point-blank, abruptly.
Bon (tout de —)	in earnest.
Bonheur (par —)	luckily.
Bout à bout ⁴	end to end.
Bras ⁵ (à —, à force de —)	by strength of arms.
Bruit (à grand —); à petit —	loudly; silently, gently.
Cachette (en —)	secretly, on the sly.
Califourchon (à —)	astride.
Cause (et pour —)	for good reasons.
Cesse (sans —)	unceasingly, continually.
Champ (sur-le- —)	at once, immediately.
Chef ⁶ (en —)	in chief.
Chemin faisant	on the way, by the way.
Chœur (en —)	in a chorus.
Chose (sur toute —, avant toute —)	above all, above all things.
Ci'-après	hereafter.
Claire-voie (à —)	open-worked.
Cœur ⁸ (à —) ouvert	open-heartedly.
Comparaison ⁹ (par —)	comparatively.
Compte ¹⁰ (à —)	on account; in part payment.

¹ D'aventure, par aventure, peradventure, by chance.

² En bas, below, down, down-stairs; ici-bas, here below; là-bas, yonder.

³ De plus belle, again, more than ever; de plus beau en plus beau, finer and finer; tout beau, gently, softly.

⁴ À bout, at an end, out of patience, etc.; à bout portant, close to the muzzle; à tout bout de champ, at every turn; d'un bout à l'autre, from one end to the other; jusqu'au bout, to the end; au bout du compte, after all.

⁵ Bras dessus, bras dessous, arm in arm; à bras le corps, round the waist; à bras raccourci, à tour de bras, with all one's might (in striking).

⁶ De son chef, in one's own right, upon one's own authority.

⁷ Ci-contre, opposite; ci-dessus, above; ci-dessous, underneath, hereafter; ci-devant, formerly; de-ci, de-là, here and there; par-ci par-là, here and there, now and then.

⁸ À contre-cœur, reluctantly; de bon cœur, heartily; en cœur, heart-shaped; par cœur, by heart.

⁹ Sans comparaison, beyond (or without) comparison.

¹⁰ À ce compte, at that rate, in that case; à votre compte, according to you.

Conscience (en —, en bonne —)	<i>fairly.</i>
Conséquence (en—)	<i>accordingly.</i>
Contraire (au —, bien au —, tout au —)	<i>on the contrary, quite the contrary.</i>
Contre (par —); tout —	<i>by way of compensation; close by.</i>
Contre-temps (à —)	<i>unseasonably, out of season.</i>
Contredit (sans —)	<i>unquestionably.</i>
Cor (à —) et à cri	<i>loudly, clamorously.</i>
Corps à corps ¹	<i>hand to hand.</i>
Côte à côte	<i>side by side.</i>
Côté (à —); de —	<i>hard by; sideways, aside.</i>
Coup ² sur coup	<i>one after another.</i>
Court (tout —)	<i>simply, only, curtly.</i>
Coutume (comme de —)	<i>as usual.</i>
Couvert (à —)	<i>under shelter, in safety.</i>
Cru (à —)	<i>on the bare back (or skin).</i>
Débandade (à la —)	<i>helter-skelter.</i>
Deçà ³ (en —, par —)	<i>on this side.</i>
Dedans ⁴ (au —, en —)	<i>within, inwardly.</i>
Delà (au —, par —)	<i>beyond.</i>
Délibéré (de propos —)	<i>designedly, on purpose.</i>
Demeurant (au —)	<i>after all, upon the whole.</i>
Demeure (à —)	<i>permanently.</i>
Demi (à —)	<i>half.</i>
Dépourvu (au —)	<i>unprovided, unawares.</i>
Dérobée (à la —)	<i>by stealth.</i>
Derrière (par —)	<i>behind, from behind.</i>
Dessein (à —)	<i>on purpose.</i>
Dessous ⁵ (en —)	<i>underneath; in an underhand way.</i>
Dessus ⁶ (en —)	<i>uppermost, above.</i>
Détail (en —)	<i>by retail; in detail, by inches.</i>
Devant (par —)	<i>in front.</i>
Doute (sans —)	<i>doubtless, no-doubt.</i>
Doux (tout —)	<i>gently.</i>
Droite ⁷ (à —)	<i>to the right.</i>

¹ À bras le corps, *round the waist*; à corps perdu, *headlong*; à son corps défendant, *reluctantly.*

² À coup sûr, *certainly*; après coup, *when too late*; à tous coups, *at every time*; tout à coup, *suddenly*; tout d'un coup, *all at once (sometimes suddenly).*

³ Deçà et delà, *hither and thither.*

⁴ Dedans (au —) et au dehors, *at home and abroad, within and without.*

⁵ Ci-dessous, *underneath, below*; là-dessous, *underneath, under there*; par-dessous, *underneath.*

⁶ Ci-dessus, *above*; là-dessus, *upon that, thereupon*; par-dessus, *above.*

⁷ À bon droit, *with good reason*; à tort et à droit, *right or wrong*; de droit, *rightfully, by right.*

Écart (à l' —)	aside.
Écharpe (en —)	slanting; over the shoulders; in a sling.
Effet (en —)	in effect, really.
Emblée (d' —)	at the first onset, without opposition.
Encontre (à l' —)	against it, against.
Entendu (bien —)	of course.
Envers (à l' —)	inside out, upside down, etc.
Envi (à l' —)	emulously, with emulation.
Escient (à bon —)	wittingly, knowingly.
Étourdie (à l' —)	thoughtlessly.
Étroit (à l' —)	narrowly, sparingly.
Excellence (par —)	pre-eminently; above all.
Excès (à l' —)	to excess.
Extrême (à l' —)	to an extreme.
Face ¹ à face	face to face.
Fait ² (au —)	in fact; after all.
Faute (sans —)	without fail.
Faux (à —)	wrongfully; out of perpendicular, etc.
Fin (à la —)	at last, at length.
Fois (à la —)	at once, at the same time.
Foison (à —)	plentifully.
Folie (à la —)	to distraction, madly.
Fond ³ (à —)	thoroughly.
Force ⁴ (à —)	very much, very hard.
Front (de —)	in front; abreast.
Gauche (à —)	to the left.
Général (en —)	in general.
Grâce (de —)	pray.
Grand (en —)	at full length; on a grand scale; grandly.
Gré ⁵ (bon —) mal gré	} willing or unwilling.
Gré (de —) ou de force	
Gros (en —)	wholesale; upon the whole; summarily.
Habitude (d' —)	usually.
Haleine (en —)	in practice, in play, in working order.
Hasard ⁶ (au —)	at random.

¹ De face, in front; de prime face, at first; en face, openly, opposite.

² Dans (or par) le fait, in point of fact, in fact; de fait, in fact, indeed; si fait, yes (after a negative); tout à fait, quite, completely.

³ Au fond, at the bottom, in the main; de fond en comble, from top to bottom, thoroughly.

⁴ À toute force, by all means, absolutely, strictly speaking; de force, by force; à force ouverte, de vive force, par force, forcibly, by force, by main force.

⁵ De gré à gré, by mutual agreement.

⁶ À tout hasard, at all hazards; par hasard, by chance.

Hâte (à la —, en —)	<i>in haste, hastily.</i>
Haut (en —); là-haut	<i>up, up-stairs, above.</i>
Heure ¹ (à la bonne —)	<i>that's right, very well, so be it.</i>
Huis (à —) clos	<i>with closed doors, in private.</i>
Ici (par —); jusqu'ici	<i>this way; hitherto.</i>
Infini (à l' —)	<i>infinitely, without end.</i>
Instant (à l' —)	<i>instantly, in a moment, just.</i>
Jusqu'à quand, jusques à quand	<i>how long?</i>
Juste (au —)	<i>exactly, precisely.</i>
Là ² (de —)	<i>thence, from thence, from that.</i>
Large (au —)	<i>in the offing; spaciously; at one's ease.</i>
Légère (à la —)	<i>lightly, thoughtlessly.</i>
Lettre (à la —, au pied de la —)	<i>literally.</i>
Liberté (en —)	<i>freely, at liberty.</i>
Livre (à —) ouvert	<i>at sight.</i>
Loin ³ (au —)	<i>afar off, a great way off.</i>
Long ⁴ (au —, tout au —)	<i>at length, at great length.</i>
Longueur (en —)	<i>lengthwise; to a great length.</i>
Marché ⁵ (à bon —)	<i>cheap.</i>
Même ⁶ (de —)	<i>likewise.</i>
Merveille (à —)	<i>admirably well.</i>
Mesure (oultre —); sans —	<i>beyond measure; excessively.</i>
Mieux (au —), le mieux du monde	<i>as well as can be.</i>
Moins (en —) de rien	<i>in a trice.</i>
Moitié (à —); de —	<i>half; by half.</i>
Moment ⁷ (à tout —)	<i>at every instant.</i>
Mort ⁸ (à —)	<i>to death, mortally.</i>
Mot ⁹ à mot, mot pour mot	<i>word for word, literally.</i>

¹ De bonne heure, *early*; pour l'heure, *for the present*; sur l'heure, *forthwith*; tout à l'heure, *presently, just now*.

² Ça et là, *here and there*; jusque-là, *so far, till then*; par là, *that way; by that*.

³ De loin, *from afar*; de loin en loin, *at long intervals*.

⁴ À la longue, *in time, in the long run*; de long, en long, *lengthwise*; de long en large, en long et en large, *to and fro, up and down*; de longue main, *of long standing, a long while ago*.

⁵ Par-dessus le marché, *into the bargain*.

⁶ Tout de même, *all the same*.

⁷ D'un moment à l'autre, *at any time*; en ce moment, *at this moment, just now*; par moments, *at intervals*.

⁸ À la mort, *mortally, exceedingly*; à la vie et à la mort, *for ever*.

⁹ À ces mots, *at these words, so saying*; à mots couverts, *ambiguously*; en un mot, *in a word*.

Moyenne (en —)	on an average.
Nage (à la —)	by swimming.
Naturel (au —)	to the life; plainly cooked.
Neuf (à —)	like new, new again.
Nom (de —)	by name, in name.
Nommé (à point —)	in the nick of time.
Nouveau (à —, de —)	again, afresh.
Nu (à —)	nakedly, frankly.
Nuit (de —)	by night, in the night.
Œil ¹ (à l' —)	plainly; on credit (pop.).
Ordinaire ² (d' —, pour l' —)	usually.
Oreilles (jusqu'aux —)	up to one's neck.
Où ³ (d' —)	whence?
Outre ⁴ (d' —) en outre	through and through.
Pair (de —); hors de —	on a par; above all others.
Parenthèse (par —)	by the way.
Parlant (généralement —)	generally speaking.
Parole (sur —)	on parole, on credit.
Part ⁵ (à —)	apart; except; aside.
Particulier (en —)	in private.
Partie (en —)	partly.
Pas ⁶ à pas	step by step.
Peine ⁷ (à —)	hardly, scarcely.
Perce (en —)	abroad, tapped.
Perdu (à corps —)	headlong.
Perpétuité (à —)	for ever, for life.
Perte ⁸ (à —)	with loss, at a loss.
Petit ⁹ à petit	by degrees.
Peu ¹⁰ à peu	
Pièce à pièce	piecemeal.

¹ À vue d'œil, *visibly*; entre les deux yeux, *full in the face*; entre quatre yeux, *in a tête-à-tête*; par-dessus les yeux, *over head and ears*.

² Comme à l'ordinaire, *as usual*.

³ Jusqu'où, *how far?* par où, *which way?*

⁴ En outre, *besides*.

⁵ De part en part, *right through*; de part et d'autre, *on both sides*; de toute part, de toutes parts, *on all sides, hither and thither*; nulle part, *nowhere*; quelque part, *somewhere*.

⁶ À pas de loup, *stealthily*; à chaque pas, *at every step*; de ce pas, *forthwith*.

⁷ À grand' peine, *with difficulty*.

⁸ À perte de vue, *further than one can see, at random*; en pure perte, *to no purpose, in vain*.

⁹ En petit, *in miniature, on a small scale*.

¹⁰ Peu après, *shortly afterwards*; à peu près, à peu de chose près, *nearly, about*; dans peu, sous peu, *shortly, before long*; depuis peu, *recently, of late*; quelque peu, *somewhat*.

Pied ¹ à pied	foot by foot, steadily, obstinately.
Pis ² (de —) en pis	worse and worse.
Plaisir ³ (à —)	con amore; wantonly, gratuitously.
Plat (à —)	flat, flatwise.
Plein (en —); tout plein	fully; much, many.
Plupart ⁴ (la —) du temps	mostly, generally.
Plus ⁵ (au —, tout au —)	at most.
Poignée (à —)	by handfuls.
Point ⁶ (à —)	in the nick of time; to a turn.
Pointe (en —)	tapering; in a point.
Porte ⁷ (à —) close	with closed doors.
Potage (pour tout —)	in all.
Préalable (au —)	previously.
Prendre (à tout —)	upon the whole.
Près ⁸ (à beaucoup —)	not nearly, by a great deal.
Présent (à —)	at present.
Proche (de —) en proche	from place to place, gradually.
Propos ⁹ (à —)	opportune, to the purpose.
Proprement (à —) parler }	strictly speaking.
Proprement parlant }	
Puis (et —)	and besides; what next? well?
Rabais (au —)	at a reduction, at a discount.
Raccourci (en —)	briefly, in miniature.
Raccroc (par —)	by chance.
Ravir (à —)	delightfully, admirably.
Réalité (en —)	really.
Rebrousse-poil (à —)	against the grain.
Reculons (à —)	backwards.
Regard (en —)	opposite.
Regret (à —)	reluctantly.
Renverse (à la —)	backward, upon one's back.
Reposée (à tête —)	at leisure.

¹ À pied, on foot; d'arrache-pied, without intermission; de pied ferme, steadfastly, resolutely; de plain-pied, on a level; sur pied, on foot.

² Au pis aller, at the worst; de mal en pis, from bad to worse.

³ Par plaisir, for pleasure; by way of trial.

⁴ Pour la plupart, for the most part.

⁵ Bien plus, il y a plus, qui plus est, more than that; de plus en plus, more and more; tant et plus, abundantly.

⁶ Au dernier point, to the greatest degree; de point en point, in every point, exactly; de tout point, en tout point, in every point.

⁷ De porte en porte, from door to door.

⁸ À cela près, save that, that excepted; de près, close, nearly (see also note ¹⁰, p. 271).

⁹ À propos de rien, without any motive; à tout propos, at every turn; de propos délibéré, on purpose; hors de propos, not to the purpose, unseasonably.

Reste ¹ (de —)	<i>to spare, left.</i>
Revanche (en —)	<i>in return, to make amends.</i>
Rigueur (à la —, en toute —)	<i>strictly, if absolutely necessary.</i>
Rompre (à tout —) [applaudir —]	<i>enthusiastically (to applaud —).</i>
Rompus (à bâtons —)	<i>by fits and starts.</i>
Rond (en —)	<i>in a circle, in a ring.</i>
Ronde (à la —)	<i>round, around.</i>
Sautoir (en —)	<i>crosswise; over the shoulders.</i>
Sec (à —)	<i>dry; hard up; empty.</i>
Secret (en —)	<i>in secret.</i>
Sens dessus dessous	<i>upside down, topsy-turvy.</i>
Sens devant derrière	<i>hind part before.</i>
Somme ² toute	<i>to conclude, finally.</i>
Sorte ³ (de la —)	<i>in that way, so, thus.</i>
Souhait (à —)	<i>according to one's wishes.</i>
Sourdine (à la —, en —)	<i>on the sly.</i>
Suite ⁴ (de —)	<i>one after another.</i>
Sûr (à coup —, pour —)	<i>surely, to be sure.</i>
Sus (en —)	<i>over and above, to boot.</i>
Suspens (en —)	<i>in suspense.</i>
Tant ⁵ mieux	<i>so much the better.</i>
Tâtons (à —)	<i>gropingly.</i>
Temps ⁶ (à —)	<i>in time.</i>
Terre ⁷ (à —, par —)	<i>down, on the ground.</i>
Tête à tête	<i>face to face.</i>
Titre (à bon —, à juste —)	<i>justly, deservedly.</i>
Tort ⁸ (à —)	<i>wrongfully.</i>
Total (au —); somme totale	<i>upon the whole.</i>
Tour à tour	<i>by turns.</i>
Tout ⁹ (après —)	<i>after all, upon the whole.</i>
Traître (en —)	<i>treacherously.</i>

¹ Au reste, moreover; du reste, but however, nevertheless, moreover.

² En somme, upon the whole.

³ En quelque sorte, somewhat, in some way.

⁴ Tout de suite, at once, directly, at a stretch; par suite, consequently.

⁵ Tant pis, so much the worse; tant soit peu, ever so little.

⁶ Dans le temps, long ago; de temps en temps, de temps à autre, from time to time; de tout temps, at all times; en temps et lieu, in the proper time and place; en même temps, at the same time; selon (or suivant) le (or les) temps, according to circumstances.

⁷ "Tomber à terre" is used when the object did not already touch the ground before its fall; "tomber par terre," when it did.

⁸ À tort et à travers, at random; à tort ou à raison, right or wrong.

⁹ Du tout, at all, not at all; en tout in all; en tout et pour tout, wholly, entirely.

Travers ¹ (de —)	askew, awry; amiss.
Traverse (à la —)	in the way.
Trousse (en —)	behind (on horseback).
Tue-tête (à —)	at the top of one's voice.
Un ² à un	one by one.
Vain (en —)	in vain.
Vaille que vaille	at all events, at any rate.
Vau-l'eau (à —)	down the river; at sixes and sevens.
Vérité ³ (à la —)	to say the truth, true.
Verse (à —) [pleuvoir —]	fast (to rain —).
Vie ³ (à —)	for life.
Vis-à-vis	opposite.
Voix (de vive —)	by word of mouth, vivâ voce.
Vol (à —) d'oiseau	as the crow flies.
Volée (à la —)	flying; quickly, hastily; at random.
Volonté (à —)	at will.
Vrai (au —), etc.	in truth, truly, etc.

¹ Tout de travers, at random; en travers, across.

² L'un portant l'autre, one with the other.

³ En vérité, verily, indeed.

⁴ De la vie de ma vie, etc., in all my life, etc.; pour la vie, for life, for a lifetime.

THE PREPOSITION.

§ 505. Prepositions are divided into **simple prepositions**, consisting of one word, and **compound prepositions**, or **prepositive locutions**, made up of two or more words.

A.—SIMPLE PREPOSITIONS.

§ 506. The simple prepositions are :

✓ À (L. ad) <i>to, at (in, on, with, etc.).</i>	✓ Entre (L. intra) <i>between.</i>
✓ Avant (L. ab ante) <i>before (of time).</i>	✓ Envers (en, vers) <i>towards, to (of feeling, disposition).</i>
✓ Avec (L. apud hoc) <i>with.</i>	✓ Hors (L. foris) <i>beyond, except.</i>
✓ Contre (L. contra) <i>against, close to, in exchange for.</i>	✓ Jusque ² (L. de usque) <i>till, until, up to.</i>
✓ Dans (L. de intus) <i>in, into.</i>	✓ Outre (L. ultra) <i>besides.</i>
✓ De (L. de) <i>of, from (by, in, on, with, etc.).</i>	✓ Par (L. per) <i>by (through, out of, etc.).</i>
Deçà (de, çà) <i>on this side of.</i>	✓ Pour (L. pro) <i>for, to.</i>
Delà (de, là) <i>on the other side of, beyond.</i>	✓ Proche ³ (L. pro-plus) <i>near.</i>
✓ Depuis (de, puis) <i>since, from.</i>	✓ Sans (L. sine) <i>without.</i>
✓ Derrière (L. de retro) <i>behind.</i>	✓ Sous (L. subtus) <i>under, below (in, on, etc.).</i>
✓ Dès (L. de ex) <i>from.</i>	✓ Sur (L. super) <i>on, upon, over, about, etc.</i>
✓ Devant (de, avant) <i>before (of place).</i>	✓ Vers (L. versus) <i>towards, about (of time and place).</i>
Devers ¹ (de, vers) <i>towards, to, near.</i>	
✓ En (L. in) <i>in, into (at, by, on, etc.).</i>	

¹ Seldom used now, unless preceded by **par** (see § 511).

² Sometimes spelt **jusques** before a vowel, especially in poetry, and always followed by another preposition or an adverb of time or place (see § 524).

³ Generally followed by **de** (see § 510).

§ 507. To the above must be added the following, which have been set apart as deserving special notice on account of their derivation :

(1) Derived from **nouns**—

✓ Chez (L. <i>casam</i>)	at (or to) the house of, in (or to) the country of, with, among, in.	✓ Malgré (mal= L. <i>malum</i> , gré= L. <i>gratum</i>)	in spite of.
---------------------------	--	--	--------------

(2) Derived from **adjectives**—

✓ Parmi (par=per, mi=L. <i>medium</i>)	among.	✓ Selon (L. <i>sub</i> longum)	according to.
✓ Sauf (L. <i>salvum</i>)	save, except.		

(3) Derived from **verbs**—

[a] From an **Imperative** :

Voici (voi, old im- perative of <i>voir</i> , and <i>ei</i>)	here is, here are, such is, such are, this is, these are.	Voilà (voi and là)	there is, there are, such is, such are, that is, those are.
---	---	--------------------	---

[b] From a **Present Participle** :

✓ Concernant (fr. <i>concerner</i>)	concerning, about.	✓ Nonobstant (L. <i>non obstante</i>)	in spite of.
✓ Durant (fr. <i>durer</i>)	during.	✓ Pendant (fr. <i>pendre</i>)	during.
✓ Moyennant (fr. O.F. <i>moyenner</i>)	by means of, in con- sideration of, in re- turn for.	✓ Suivant (fr. <i>sivre</i>)	according to.
		✓ Touchant (fr. <i>toucher</i>)	touching, about.

[c] From a **Past Participle** :

✓ Après (à, près [= L. <i>pressum</i>])	after.	✓ Passé (fr. <i>passer</i>)	beyond, after.
Attendu (fr. <i>at-tendre</i>)	considering.	Près ¹ (L. <i>pressum</i>)	near.
Compris [y —] (fr. <i>comprendre</i>)	including.	✓ Supposé (fr. <i>sup-poser</i>)	supposing, in case of.
✓ Excepté (fr. <i>ex-cepter</i>)	} except.	✓ Vu (fr. <i>voir</i>)	considering.
✓ Hormis (hors, mis [fr. <i>mettre</i>])			

¹ Generally followed by *de* (see § 527).

B.—PREPOSITIVE LOCUTIONS.

§ 508. Prepositive locutions may be divided into three classes, according as they end (1) with *à*; (2) with *de*; (3) with any other word.

The first class is sometimes said to govern the dative, the second the genitive, and the third the accusative.

I.—Prepositive Locutions ending with *à*.

§ 509. The prepositive locutions ending with *à* are :—

Égard (eu —) à	considering.	Quant à	as for, as to.
Façon (de —) à	so as to, so that.	Rapport	{ with respect to; on ac- count of; in comparison with.
Grâce à	thanks to.	(par —) à	
Jusqu'à	to, up to, till, as far as,	Sauf à	
Jusques à }			reserving.
Manière			
(de —) à	so as to, so that.		

II.—Prepositive Locutions ending with *de*.

§ 510. The principal prepositive locutions ending with *de* are :—

Abri (à l' —) de	sheltered from, under cover of.	Autour de	round, about.
Aide (à l' —) de	with the aid of, by means of.	Aval (en —) de	below (ref. to rivers).
Amont (en —) de	above (ref. to rivers).	Avant (en —) de	in front of, before.
Amour (pour l' —) de	for the sake of.	Avenant (à l' —) de	in keeping with.
Appui (à l' —) de	in support of.	Bas (à —) de	down from.
Arrière (en —) de	behind.	Bas (au —) de	at the bottom of.
Auprès de	near, in comparison with, etc.	Bout (à —) de	at the end of, etc.
		Cas (en —) de	in case of.

Cause (à —) de	on account of.	Encontre (à l' —) against.	de
Charge (à —) de	on condition of.	Envers (à l' —) contrary to.	de [little used]
Cœur (au —) de	in the heart of, in the depth of.	Envi (à l' —) de	in emulation of, vying with.
Comble (pour —) de	to crown, to complete.	Épreuve (à l' —) de	proof against.
Comparaison (en —) de	in comparison with.	Exception (à l' —) de	except.
Compter (à —) de	reckoning from, from.	Exclusion (à l' —) de	to the exclusion of.
Condition (à —) de	on condition of.	Exemple (à l' —) de	after the example of.
Conséquence (en —) de	in consequence of, in pursuance of.	Face (à la —) de	in the presence of, before.
Côté (à —) de	by the side of.	Face (en —) de	opposite.
Couleur (sous —) de	under colour of.	Faute de	for want of.
Coup (sous le —) de	threatened with, exposed to.	Faveur (à la —) de	under favour (or cover) of.
Couvert (à —) de	sheltered from.	Fleur (à —) de	level with.
Crainte (de —) de	for fear of.	Force (à —) de	by dint of.
Deçà (en —) de	on this side of.	Gré (au —) de	at the will and pleasure of, at the mercy of.
Dedans (au —) de	within.	Haut (au or en —) de	at the top of.
Défaut (à or au —) de	for want of, failing.	Instar (à l' —) de	like, in imitation of. [little used]
Défi (au —) de	in defiance of.	Insu (à l' —) de	unknown to.
Dehors (au —) de	outside.	Issue (à l' —) de	at the end of, on leaving
Dehors (en —) de	outside; beside.	Lieu (au —) de	instead of.
Delà (au —) de	beyond, on the other side of.	Long (au or le —) de	along.
Dépens (aux —) de	at the expense of.	Lors de	at the time of.
Dépit (en —) de	in spite of.	Manière (à la —) de	after the manner of.
Derrière (au —) de	behind.	Manque de	for want of.
Dessous (au —) de	under, beneath.	Matière (en —) de	in point of.
Dessus (au —) de	above, over.	Merci (à la —) de	at the mercy of.
Devant (au —) de	to meet.	Milieu (au —) de	in the middle of.
Écart (à l' —) de	aloof from.	Mode (à la —) de	after the fashion of.
Égal (à l' —) de	like, as much as.	Moment (au —) de	at the moment of.
Égard (à l' —) de	with respect to; in comparison with.	Moyen (au —) de	by means of.
		Niveau (au —) de	on a level with.
		Nom (au —) de	in the name of.
		Nombre (au —) de	among.

Ombre (à l'—) de	<i>under the protection of.</i>	Rebours (à or au —) de	<i>contrary to.</i>
Ombre (sous —, sous l'—) de	<i>under the pretence of.</i>	Réserve (à la —) de	<i>with the reservation of.</i>
Parler (sans —) de	<i>to say nothing of.</i>	Risque (au —) de	<i>at the risk of.</i>
Partir (à —) de	<i>from.</i>	Sein (au —) de	<i>in the midst of, in the heart of.</i>
Péril (au —) de	<i>at the peril of.</i>	Sortie (à la —) de	<i>on leaving, at the end of.</i>
Peur (de —) de	<i>for fear of.</i>	Sortir (au —) de	
Portée (à la —) de	<i>within reach of.</i>	Suite (à la —) de	<i>in the train of, after.</i>
Près de	<i>near.</i>	Sujet (au —) de	<i>with regard to, about.</i>
Présence (en —) de	<i>in the presence of.</i>	Sus (en —) de	<i>over and above, besides.</i>
Prix (au —) de	<i>at the price of.</i>	Titre (à —) de	<i>by right of, by virtue of, as.</i>
Proche de	<i>near, close to.</i>	Travers (au —) de	<i>through.</i>
Propos (à —) de	<i>with regard to, about.</i>	Trousses (aux —) de	<i>at the heels of.</i>
Qualité (en —) de	<i>in the capacity of, as.</i>	Vis-à-vis de	<i>opposite.</i>
Raison (à or en —) de	<i>in proportion to, at the rate of.</i>	Yeux (aux —) de	<i>in the eyes of, before; in the opinion of.</i>
Raison (en —) de	<i>in consideration of, by reason of.</i>		
Rapport (sous le —) de	<i>with regard to.</i>		

III.—Prepositive Locutions not ending with *à* or *de*.

§ 511. The principal prepositive locutions not ending with *à* or *de* are :—

✓ Après (d' —)	<i>according to, from, after, following.</i>	Derrière (par —)	<i>behind, from behind.</i>
Avant (d' —)	<i>from before.</i>	Dessous (de —)	<i>from underneath.</i>
Avec (d' —)	<i>from.</i>	Dessous (par —)	<i>under, underneath.</i>
Chez (de —)	<i>from the house (or the country) of, from among.</i>	Dessus (de —)	<i>from off.</i>
Chez (par —, etc.)	<i>at the house of, through the country of, etc.</i>	Dessus (par —)	<i>over, above.</i>
Deçà (de —)	<i>from this side of.</i>	Devant (de —)	<i>from before.</i>
Deçà (par —)	<i>on this side of.</i>	Devant (par —)	<i>before.</i>
Dedans (de —)	<i>from within.</i>	Devers (par —); —soi	<i>before; in one's possession.</i>
Dedans (par —)	<i>through.</i>	Entre (d' —)	<i>from among, from out of.</i>
Dehors (par —)	<i>outside.</i>	✓ Jusque dans, jusqu'en, etc.	<i>up to, as far as in, even in, etc.</i>
✓ Delà (de —)	<i>from beyond.</i>	✓ Par (de —) ¹	<i>in the name of.</i>
Delà (par —)	<i>beyond.</i>	Rapport (en —) avec	<i>in connection with, in proportion to.</i>
Derrière (de —)	<i>from behind.</i>	✓ Travers (à —)	<i>through.</i>

¹ O. F. de part, L. de parte.

C.—PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS.

§ 512. Prepositions are always placed **before** their complement :

De qui parlez-vous?

Whom are you speaking of?

Avec quoi pourrez-vous le faire?

What will you be able to do it with?

EXCEPTION.—**Durant** may sometimes follow its complement :

Sa vie **durant**.

During his life.

D.—REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

§ 513. The prepositions **à, de, en**, are generally repeated before each complement :

Sourd **aux** remontrances et **aux** prières.

Deaf to remonstrances and prayers.

Avide **de** louange et **de** gloire.

Eager for praise and glory.

En Suisse et **en** Italie.

In Switzerland and Italy.

Other prepositions are, as a rule, repeated, when the complements have opposite meanings :

Dans les plaisirs et **dans** les larmes.

In pleasures and in tears.

Par la douceur ou **par** la force.

By gentleness or violence.

Sur terre et **sur** mer.

By land and by sea.

In other cases their repetition is optional (depending on emphasis, euphony, etc.) :

Nous passâmes par Lyon et Marseille.

We passed through Lyons and Marseilles.

Je compte sur vous et votre frère.

I reckon upon you and your brother.

E.—GOVERNMENT OF VERBS BY A PREPOSITION.

§ 514. When a verb is governed by a preposition, it must be in the **Infinitive** :

Il l'a dit **sans y penser**.

He said it without thinking of it.

EXCEPTION.—**En** is the only preposition which may be followed by the **Present Participle** :

On apprend **en vieillissant**.

We learn in growing old.

Obs. **Après** is followed by the **Past Infinitive** :

Après avoir parlé.

{ *After speaking,*
or
After having spoken.

F.—VARIOUS FUNCTIONS OF THE PRINCIPAL PREPOSITIONS.

(Only the most important uses of the principal prepositions are pointed out in the following examples and observations. For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 370-393.)

§ 515. À.—

À mon goût.	According to my taste.	Un ami à moi.	A friend of mine.
À dix heures.	At ten o'clock.	C'est bien aimable à vous.	It is very kind of you.
À l'ouvrage.	At work.	À bord.	On board.
Au galop.	At a gallop.	À pied.	On foot.
Au hasard.	At random.	À cheval.	On horseback.
Peu à peu.	Little by little.	À mon retour.	On my return.
Deux à deux.	Two by two.	À crédit.	On credit.
Vendre au poids.	To sell by weight.	À dessein.	On purpose.
Prendre à l'heure.	To take by the hour.	Du matin au soir.	From morning till evening.
À mes côtés.	By my side.	Corps à corps.	Hand to hand.
À Bordeaux.	In Bordeaux.	La poule aux œufs d'or.	The goose (lit. the hen) with the golden eggs.
Au lit.	In bed.	Une table à tiroirs.	A table with drawers.
À mon avis.	In my opinion.	À grands pas.	With great strides.
À l'anglaise.	In the English fashion.	À portée.	Within reach.
À la hâte.	In haste.		
À temps.	In time.		

Obs. The difference in the meaning of the following sentences, according to the preposition used, should be carefully noticed :

Est-il à la maison ?	<i>Is he at home ?</i>	Être dans la ville.	<i>To be inside the town.</i>
Est-il dans la maison ?	<i>Is he in the house ?</i>	Être en ville, dîner en ville.	<i>To be out, to dine out.</i>
À la campagne.	<i>In the country.</i>	C'est à vous à parler.	<i>It is your turn to speak.</i>
Dans la campagne.	<i>In the fields.</i>	C'est à vous de parler.	<i>It is your duty, it becomes you, to speak.</i>
En campagne.	<i>In campaign ; at work.</i>		
Être à la ville.	<i>To be in town (opposed to the country).</i>		

§ 516. Après and d'après.—

Après tout.	<i>After all.</i>	Arriver après coup.	<i>To arrive too late.</i>
Après vous, c'est lui que je préfère.	<i>Next to you, it is he whom I prefer.</i>	D'après lui.	<i>According to him.</i>
Soupirer après la gloire.	<i>To long for glory.</i>	D'après cela.	<i>From that.</i>
		Peindre d'après nature.	<i>To paint from life.</i>

§ 517. À travers and au travers de (the latter is more emphatic).—

À travers champs.	<i>Across country.</i>	Nous nous frayâmes un chemin au travers des ennemis.	<i>We cut our way through the enemy.</i>
À travers la foule.	<i>Through the crowd.</i>		

§ 518. Avant and devant.—

Avant denotes *time, order, precedence* ; **devant** is used of *place* :

J'aurai fini avant vous.	<i>I shall have finished before you.</i>	L'intérêt public doit passer avant tout autre.	<i>Public interest should pass before any other.</i>
Votre rue vient avant la nôtre.	<i>Your street comes before ours.</i>	Devant l'église.	<i>Before the church.</i>
		Devant la porte.	<i>In front of the door.</i>

§ 519. Chez.—

Est-il chez lui ?	<i>Is he at home ?</i>	C'était une manie chez lui.	<i>It was a mania with him.</i>
Je vais chez moi.	<i>I am going home.</i>	Je n'avais pas de chez moi.	<i>I had no home.</i>
Je viens de chez votre oncle.	<i>I come from your uncle's.</i>		
Chez nous c'est bien différent.	<i>Among us it is very different.</i>		

§ 520. Contre.—

Je n'ai rien à dire	<i>I have nothing to say</i>	Changez votre livre	<i>Exchange your book</i>
contre lui.	against him.	contre le sien.	for his.
Il est fâché contre	<i>He is angry with</i>	Je parie cent contre	<i>I'll bet a hundred to</i>
vous.	you.	un.	one.
Notre maison est	<i>Our house is close</i>		
contre l'église.	to the church.		

§ 521. Dans and en.—

(1) **Dans** is used before a noun preceded by a determinative word, whilst **en** is not, as a rule, followed by any determinative :

Dans le nord de la	<i>In the north of</i>	En France.	<i>In France.</i>
France.	France.	En été.	<i>In summer.</i>
Dans l'été de 1888.	<i>In the summer of 1888.</i>	En danger.	<i>In danger.</i>
Dans un si grand	<i>In such great danger.</i>	En théorie.	<i>In theory.</i>
danger.			
Dans cette théorie.	<i>In that theory.</i>		

(2) **Dans** expresses the time at which a thing is done, whilst **en** denotes the time taken in doing it :

Je le ferai dans un	<i>I shall do it a month</i>	Je l'ai fait en un	<i>I have done it in a</i>
mois.	hence.	mois.	month.

(3) **En** is used in preference to **dans** to denote shape or costume, a division, or a change of state :

Un champ en tri-	<i>A field in the form of</i>	Une comédie en cinq	<i>A comedy in five acts.</i>
angle.	a triangle.	actes.	
Il est toujours en	<i>He is always in black.</i>	Métamorphoser en	<i>To metamorphose into</i>
noir.		oiseau.	a bird.
Diviser en trois	<i>To divide into three</i>	Traduire en français.	<i>To translate into</i>
parties.	parts.	French.	

(4) **En** is further used with personal pronouns and with present participles :

Je n'ai aucune con-	<i>I have no trust in</i>	Elle me l'a dit en	<i>She told it me on goin</i>
fiance en lui.	him.	partant.	away.

(5) Notice also—

Mourir en chrétien.	<i>To die as a Christian.</i>	De porte en porte.	<i>From door to door.</i>
De mieux en mieux.	<i>Better and better.</i>	En plein air, etc.	<i>In the open air, etc.</i>

§ 522. De.—

La maison du coin.	The house at the corner.	De la tempérance (as a title).	On temperance.
Connaître de vue.	To know by sight.	Être de garde.	To be on duty.
De jour et de nuit.	By day and by night.	De vingt il n'en reste que deux.	Out of twenty, only two remain.
De pied en cap.	From head to foot.	Muet de colère.	Dumb with anger.
De cette manière.	In that way.	De tout mon cœur.	With all my heart.
D'un ton sec.	In a dry tone.	De toutes mes forces.	With all my might.
De tous côtés.	On all sides.		

§ 523. Entre and parmi.—

Entre, as a rule, refers to two objects only, whilst **parmi** refers to an indefinite number or a collective noun :

Entre vous et lui.	Between you and him.	Parmi tant de dangers.	Amidst so many perils.
Notre drapeau resta entre leurs mains.	Our standard remained in their hands.	On le trouva parmi la foule.	He was found among the crowd.

Notice, however, the following uses of **entre** in the sense of **among** :

Ils causaient entre eux.	They were talking among themselves.	Vous aviez dit, entre autres choses...	You had said, amongst other things...
Plusieurs d'entre vous.	Several from among you.	Le plus noble entre tous.	The noblest among all.
Distribuez ceci entre vos pauvres.	Distribute this among your poor.		

§ 524. Jusque.—

Jusque is always joined to another preposition or to an adverb of time or place :

Allez jusqu'au bout.	Go to the end.	Jusqu'à présent.	Till now.
Jusque sous nos fenêtres.	Under our very windows.	Jusqu'où ?	How far ?

§ 525. Par.—

Apprendre par cœur.	To learn by heart.	Par une froide matinée.	On a cold morning.
Par exemple.	For instance.	Jeter par la fenêtre.	To throw out of the window.
Par pure bonté de cœur.	From pure kindness of heart.	Il l'a fait par orgueil.	He did it out of pride.
Par tous pays.	In all countries.	Courir par monts et par vaux.	To wander over hill and dale.
Par une pluie battante.	In pouring rain.	Passez par le bois.	Pass through the wood.
Par terre.	On the ground.		

§ 526. Pour.—

Pour moi, je le crois.	As for me, I believe it.	Pour lui plaire.	In order to please him.
Pour qui sont ces fleurs?	For whom are these flowers?	Pour affaires.	On business.

§ 527. Près de and auprès de.—

Près de, contrary to **auprès de**, refers to time as well as place, and may be followed by an infinitive :

Près de la porte.	Near the door.	Auprès du théâtre.	Near the theatre.
Près d'ici.	Near by.	Rien ne trouve grâce auprès de lui.	Nothing finds favour in his eyes.
Près de midi.	Near twelve o'clock.	L'ambassadeur au- près de la cour de Russie.	The ambassador to the court of Russia.
Près de dix ans.	Nearly ten years.	La mort n'est rien auprès du dés- honneur.	Death is nothing in comparison with dishonour.
Nous étions près de partir.	We were about to start.		
Notice — Vincennes, près Paris.	Vincennes, near Paris.		

§ 528. Sous, au-dessous de, par-dessous.—

Sous la table.	Under the table.	Au-dessous d'une livre.	Under one pound.
Être sous presse.	To be in the press.	Cela est au-dessous de vous.	That is beneath you.
Sous ce rapport.	In that respect.	Au-dessous de zéro.	Below zero.
Sous le règne d'Élisabeth.	In Elizabeth's reign.	Passez par-dessous cette branche.	Pass underneath this branch.
Sous la main.	Ready at hand.		

§ 529. Sur, au-dessus de, par-dessus.—

Sur la table.	Upon the table.	Au-dessus de nos têtes.	Over our heads.
Sur mon honneur.	Upon my honour.	Au-dessus de zéro.	Above zero.
Sur les neuf heures.	About nine o'clock.	Il avait un courage au-dessus de son âge.	He had a courage be- yond his age.
Il n'a jamais d'argent sur lui.	He has never any money about him.	Par-dessus tout.	Above all.
Une chambre de vingt- cinq pieds de long	A room twenty-five feet long by eighteen	Sautez par-dessus la haie.	Jump over the hedge.
sur dix-huit de large.	wide.	Par-dessus le marché.	Into the bargain.
Deux sur cinq.	Two out of five.		
Qui régnait alors sur eux?	Who was then reign- ing over them?		
Veillez sur cet enfant.	Watch over that child.		

§ 530. Vers and envers.—

Vers is used of time and place, whilst **envers** denotes feeling or disposition :

Vers (les) neuf heures.	<i>Towards nine o'clock.</i>	Sa bonté envers moi.	<i>His kindness towards me.</i>
Nous allâmes vers le rivage.	<i>We went towards the shore.</i>	Soyez charitable envers tous.	<i>Be charitable to all.</i>

§ 531. Voici and voilà.—

Voici refers to a **near** object or to a statement **following**, whilst **voilà** generally refers to a **distant** object or to a **preceding** statement :

Voici votre livre.	<i>Here is your book.</i>	Voilà votre livre.	<i>There is your book.</i>
Les voici qui viennent.	<i>Here they are coming.</i>	Les voilà qui s'en vont.	<i>There they are going away.</i>
Voici ce qu'il m'a dit, écoutez.	<i>This is what he told me, listen.</i>	Voilà tout ce qu'il m'a dit.	<i>That is all he told me.</i>

THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 532. A conjunction is **co-ordinative** when the sentences it connects are independent of each other, and **subordinative** when the sentence it introduces depends on some other sentence.

A.—CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 533. The principal co-ordinative conjunctions are—

✓ Ainsi (L. sic)	so, thus, therefore.	✓ Néanmoins (O.F. nevertheless.	
✓ Ainsi que	as, as well as.	néanmoins, L.L.	
Au moins	at least.	necentem minus)	
Du moins	at any rate, however.	✓ Ni (L. nec)	nor.
✓ Aussi	therefore, hence.	✓ Ni . . . ni	neither . . . nor.
✓ Aussi bien	besides, moreover.	✓ Non-seulement	not only . . . , but
✓ Aussi bien que	as, as well as.	. . . mais en-	also . . .
✓ Car (L. quare)	for.	core . . .	
✓ Cependant	however.	Or (L. hora)	now. ✓
✓ C'est-à-dire	that is to say. ✓	✓ Ou (L. aut)	or.
✓ C'est pourquoi	} therefore. ✓	✓ Ou . . . ou	either . . . or.
✓ Voilà pourquoi		✓ Ou bien	or else.
D'ailleurs	besides, however.	✓ Partant (L. per tan-	hence, consequently.
De même que	as, as well as.	tum)	
✓ De plus	moreover.	✓ Pourtant (L. pro	still, yet.
✓ Donc (L. tunc)	then, therefore.	tantum)	
✓ Encore	still, yet, even than.	✓ Sinon	if not, or else.
✓ En effet	in fact, indeed.	✓ Soit . . . , soit . . .	be it . . . or . . . ,
✓ Et (L. et)	and.	whether . . . or . . .	
✓ Et . . . et	both . . . and.	✓ Tant . . . que	both . . . and.
✓ Mais (L. magis)	but.	✓ Toutefois	however.

OBSERVATIONS.

- (1)
- Ni**
- is, as a rule, preceded or followed by
- ne**
- :
- ¹

Je **ne** connais **ni** lui **ni** son frère.*I know neither him nor his brother.***Ni** lui **ni** son frère **ne** viendront.*Neither he nor his brother will come.*EXCEPTIONS.—**Ne** is omitted when the verb is understood, and after **sans, sans que** :Est-il grand?—**Ni** grand **ni** petit.*Is he tall?—Neither tall nor short.***Sans** qu'il nous voie **ni** qu'il nous entende.*Without his seeing or hearing us.*

- (2)
- Partant**
- (=
- hence*
-) should not be confounded with
- pourtant**
- (=
- yet*
-), nor
- toutefois**
- (=
- however*
-) with
- toutes les fois**
- (=
- every time*
-) :

Plus d'amour, **partant** plus de joie.*No more love, hence no more joy.*Je le respecte, et **pourtant** je ne puis l'aimer.*I respect him, and yet I cannot love him.***Toutefois** je ne le crois pas.*However, I do not believe it.*Je le rencontrais **toutes les fois**.*I met him every time.***Toutes les fois** que je le rencontrais.*Whenever I met him.*(For more details see *Syntax*, §§ 394-401.)

B.—SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

I.—Requiring the *INDICATIVE* or *CONDITIONAL*.

§ 534. The principal conjunctions requiring the Indicative or Conditional are—

✓ Ainsi que	as.	✓ Attendu que	considering that, inasmuch as.
✓ Alors que	when, even though.	✓ Aussitôt que	as soon as.
✓ À mesure que	as, according as.	✓ Comme	as.
✓ À peine . . . que	scarcely . . . when.	✓ De même que	just as.
✓ Après que	after.	✓ Depuis que	since.
✓ À proportion que	in proportion as.		

¹ It is both preceded and followed by **ne** when it joins two verbs :Je **ne** l'aime **ni ne** le hais.*I neither love nor hate him.***Ne** l'aimant **ni ne** le haïssant.*Neither loving nor hating him.*

✓ Dès que	as soon as.	✓ Selon que	according as.
✓ Lorsque	when.	✓ Si	if, whether.
✓ Outre que	besides that.	✓ Suivant que	according as.
✓ Parce que	because.	✓ Tandis que	while, whilst.
✓ Pendant que	while, whilst.	✓ Tant que	so long as.
✓ Puisque	since.	✓ Vu que	inasmuch as, seeing that.
✓ Quand	when, even though.		

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Both **depuis que** and **puisque** mean *since*, but **depuis que** denotes time, whilst **puisque** precedes the statement of a reason :

Qu'avez-vous fait depuis que vous nous avez quittés ?	<i>What have you been doing since you left us ?</i>
Je lui écrirai, puisque vous le voulez.	<i>I will write to him since you wish it.</i>

(2) **Parce que** (in two words) means *because* ; **par ce que** (in three) signifies *by what, from what* :

Je ne sors pas, parce que j'ai beaucoup à faire.	<i>I do not go out, because I have a great deal to do.</i>
Je suis retenu ici par ce que j'ai à faire.	<i>I am kept here by what I have to do.</i>

(3) Both **pendant que** and **tandis que** mean *while, whilst* ; but **pendant que** simply marks *simultaneousness*, whereas **tandis que** expresses also *contrast* :

Pendant que nous l'attendions, il commença à pleuvoir.	<i>Whilst we were waiting for him, it began to rain.</i>
Son frère est pauvre, tandis que lui est fort riche.	<i>His brother is poor, whilst he, on the contrary, is very rich.</i>

(4) **Quand** should not be confounded with **quant**, which, followed by *à*, is used in the sense of *as for, with respect to* :

Quant à moi, j'accepte.	<i>As for me, I accept.</i>
--------------------------------	-----------------------------

(5) **Si** (= *if*) may be followed by the Subjunctive when the verb is in the Pluperfect :

S'il avait or s'il eût	} osé.	<i>If he had dared.</i>
------------------------------	--------	-------------------------

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 404-406.)

II.—Requiring the Subjunctive.

§ 535. The conjunctions requiring the Subjunctive are--

[a] FINAL :

- ✓ Afin que } *in order that.*
 ✓ Pour que }
 ✓ De crainte que }
 ... ne }
 ✓ De peur que } *lest.*
 ... ne }

[b] CONCESSIVE :

- ✓ Bien que }
 ✓ Encore que (rare) }
 ✓ Malgré que (rare) } *although*
 ✓ Nonobstant que (rare) }
 ✓ Quoique¹ }
 ✓ Pour } *if ever so little.*
 peu que }
 ✓ Si }
 ✓ Si tant est que } *if it be true that.*

[c] CONDITIONAL :

- À moins que...ne *unless.*
 Au }
 En } *cas que in case that.*
 ✓ Pourvu que *provided that.*
 Sans que (also used *without.*
 with a consecutive meaning)
 Soit que *whether, be it that.*
 ✓ Supposé que *supposing that.*

[d] TEMPORAL :

- Avant que *before.*
 ✓ En attendant que }
 Jusqu'à ce que² } *until.*

[e] NEGATIVE :

- Loin que *far from.*
 Non que }
 Non pas que } *not that.*

EXAMPLES.

Dieu nous punit **afin** (or **pour**) que nous nous **repentions**.

God punishes us in order that we should repent.

Il m'a accompagné, **de crainte** (or **de peur**) que je ne perdisse mon chemin.

He has accompanied me, lest I should lose my way.

Bien qu'il (or **quoiqu'il**) ait promis de venir, je doute que nous le voyions aujourd'hui.

Although he has promised to come, I doubt whether we shall see him to-day.

Pour (or **si**) **peu** qu'on le **connaisse**, ou ne peut s'empêcher de l'aimer.

If you know him ever so little, you cannot help loving him.

¹ Notice that **quoique** is the only conjunction written in one word which always governs the Subjunctive.

² The Indicative is sometimes found after **jusqu'à ce que**, but only when speaking of an accomplished and positive fact :

Il resta **jusqu'à ce que** tout le monde fut (or **fût**) parti.

He remained until everybody was gone.

Il nous le dira, si tant est qu'il le sache.

Vous pouvez compter sur nous, à moins qu'il ne survienne quelque chose.

Que tout soit prêt, au (or en) cas qu'il vienne.

Pourvu que nous arrivions à temps.

Je ne partirai pas sans que vous m'écriviez.

Soit qu'il le voulût ou non, il donna sa démission.

Supposé qu'il vous le dise, que répondrez-vous?

La victoire était certaine avant que la bataille eût commencé.

Allons au jardin en attendant qu'il (or jusqu'à ce qu'il) ait fini sa lettre.

Loin qu'il vous nuise, soyez certain qu'il vous aidera.

Je vous le répète, non (or non pas) que je le croie, mais pour que vous sachiez tout.

He will tell us, if it be true that he knows it.

You may rely upon us, unless something should happen.

Let everything be ready, in case he should come.

Provided we arrive in time.

I will not start without your writing to me.

Whether he wished it or not, he gave his resignation.

Supposing that he says it to you, what will you answer?

The victory was certain before the battle had begun.

Let us go in the garden until he has finished his letter.

Far from injuring you, be sure that he will help you.

I repeat it to you, not that I believe it, but in order that you should know everything.

III.—Requiring sometimes the *INDICATIVE*, sometimes the *SUBJUNCTIVE*.

§ 536. After the following consecutive conjunctions, the *Indicative* is used in speaking of a *result* already achieved, or even to be achieved, if there is *certainty*, and the *Subjunctive*, in speaking of an *aim* to be attained, when there is some degree of *uncertainty* :

De façon que	} so that {	De sorte que.
De manière que		En sorte que.

EXAMPLES.

WITH INDICATIVE.

Il a agi de façon que tout le monde est content. *He has acted so that every one is satisfied.*

Ils avaient fortifié la ville, de manière (or de sorte) qu'elle put soutenir un long siège. *They had fortified the town, so that it was able to sustain a long siege.*

WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

Agissez de façon que tout le monde soit content. *Act so that every one may be satisfied.*

Ils avaient fortifié la ville de manière (or de sorte) qu'elle pût soutenir un long siège. *They had fortified the town so that it might sustain a long siege.*

Obs. After à condition que, the Indicative (or Conditional) and the Subjunctive may be used indifferently :

A condition { viendra (or vienne).
qu'il { viendrait (or vint).

On condition that he { will come.
{ would come.

§ 537. As already stated, the conjunction **que** does not require by itself any particular mood, but is followed by the Indicative or Subjunctive, according as there is certainty or uncertainty.

Notice that it is followed by the **Subjunctive**—

(1) When it stands instead of any conjunction which requires that mood :

Parlez plus bas, (**pour**) qu'il
n'entende pas.

*Speak lower, in order that he may not
hear.*

Je n'irai pas (**à moins**) qu'il ne
me le dise.

I will not go unless he tells me.

De peur qu'on ne vous voie
et qu'on ne vous retienne.

*Lest any one should see you and detain
you.*

Quoiqu'il le veuille et que
nous le voulions aussi.

Although he wishes it and we wish it too.

Pourvu qu'il vienne et que
je le voie.

Provided he comes and I see him.

(2) When it is used to avoid the repetition of **si**, although **si** governs the Indicative :

Si vous le désirez et qu'il y
consente.

If you wish it and he consents to it.

(For more details, see *Syntax*, §§ 411-413.)

THE INTERJECTION.

§ 538. The principal interjections and exclamations are—

(1) For admiration, joy, or approbation :

Ah ! oh ! bon ! bien ! à la bonne heure ! (well done !) à merveille ! (capital !) bis ! (encore !) bravo ! bravissimo ! hourra ! vivat ! (hurrah !).

(2) For fear, grief, or pain :

Ah ! oh ! aïe ! ouf ! (ah ! me !) ciel ! juste ciel ! (heavens !) hélas ! [O.F. hé ! las ! fr. L. lassum] (alas !) miséricorde ! (mercy on me !).

(3) For disgust :

Ei ! fi donc ! (fie !) foin de . . . ! (a plague on . . . !).

(4) For derision or indifference :

Oh ! hé ! hum ! bah ! (pshaw ! nonsense !) zest ! (fiddlestick !).

(5) For surprise :

Ah ! oh ! hé ! bah ! par exemple ! vraiment ! (indeed ! really !) comment ! quoi ! (what !) ah bien ! (well !) ouais ! peste ! (bless me !) tiens ! (ah ! halloo !).

(6) For encouraging :

Allons ! (come !) ça ! or ça ! (now then !) courage ! (cheer up !) debout ! (get up ! rise !) en avant ! (forward !) ferme ! (steady !) hardi ! (courage !) preste ! (quick !) sus ! sus donc ! (now then ! come !).

(7) For quieting or stopping :

Chut ! st ! (hush !) paix ! (be quiet !) silence ! halte-là ! - (stop !) la, la ! tout beau ! tout doux ! (gently ! softly !) grâce ! (pity ! pardon !).

(8) For warning :

Hem ! holà ! oh ! gare ! (mind ! look out !).

(9) For calling or asking :

Hé ! hem ! ho ! holà ! st ! hein ? (eh ?) qui vive ! (who goes there ?).

Notice also—

A moi ! au secours ! (help !) à l'assassin ! au meurtre ! (murder !) au voleur ! (stop thief !) au feu ! (fire !).

Printed by T. and A. CONSTABLE, Printers to Her Majesty,
at the Edinburgh University Press.

0



51072

LaF.Gr

P3917ne

re

umar: Accidence.

NAME OF BORROWER.

Vikram (Alexander)

